2017
ANNUAL REPORT TO STOCKHOLDERS

BLUCORA™

NOTICE OF ANNUAL MEETING

2018 PROXY STATEMENT

ANNUAL REPORT ON FORM 10-K
FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2017

BLUCORA™

6333 North State Highway 161, 4th Floor
Irving, Texas 75038

To My Fellow Shareholders,

2017 was a strong year for Blucora, and I am very proud of all that our team has achieved. As you will see in our Proxy Statement, we are asking stockholders for approval on important proposals that are key to our success going forward, such as the approval of our new long-term incentive plan and an amendment to our Certificate of Incorporation that allows our Board to set the size of the Board between six and 15 directors, and I ask for your vote "FOR" each of the proposals in the Proxy.

Before we get to the detail of the Proxy, I wanted to give you some detail about our success in 2017 and why we believe we have earned the trust of your vote in favor of our ballot measures. In my letter last year, I shared my belief that we were well positioned to continue our momentum into 2017. I'm pleased to say that we did just that, and celebrated a series of impressive milestones, including:

- Growing revenue by 12%, net income per share by 137%, and non-GAAP EPS* by 38%;
- Surpassing our net leverage goal by paying down more than $90 million in debt and reducing our net leverage to 2.8 times (vs. 4.0x at end of 2016 and 6.3x at time of the HD Vest acquisition);
- Growing total HD Vest assets under administration, or AUA, by 14% to $44 billion and advisory assets under management, or AUM, by 21% to $12.5 billion - both record levels; and
- Achieving our 20th consecutive year of revenue growth at TaxAct, growing 15%.

We achieved these impressive results thanks in large part to the highly focused Four Ds strategy we established in 2016 to guide us forward after the HD Vest acquisition. That strategy focused our team on:

- Divesting our legacy businesses in Infospace and Monoprice (achieved 2016);
- De-levering and reducing our net leverage ratio from 6.3x to at least 3x (achieved 2017);
- Delivering on our financial commitments (ongoing); and
- Developing long-term business plans to drive growth and maximize value (ongoing).

Achieving our net leverage or 'de-lever' goal in 2017 followed our 'divest' achievement in 2016 when we sold Infospace and Monoprice. While we have been 'driving' growth and 'delivering' on our financial commitments, we consider those to be a constant focus. This enabled us to turn our attention in 2017 to clearly laying out our long-term vision and strategy for the future - unlocking sustained shareholder value creation by better serving our targeted customers and advisors.

Like every effective growth strategy, we began by establishing the core beliefs that set the frame of our long-term strategy. We believe that taxes are the absolute key to better outcomes, since they are such a large expense and optimizing taxes must be more than a once-a-year event. Yet today people remain vastly underserved - often at the peril of their financial futures. The tax preparation industry focuses consumers on maximizing the refund. This reactive approach ignores what should be the most important goals of minimizing taxes, increasing cash flows and enabling better long term after-tax outcomes, so people can do more in their lives. On top of this reactive and outdated approach, the overall wealth management industry virtually ignores taxes and refers clients to another service provider when there is a tax consideration. These approaches have left consumers without a holistic service approach to their financial future … until now.

Blucora bridges the gap between tax and wealth management. We have a unique opportunity before us to disrupt these decades-long outdated approaches. We can leverage the information naturally generated by filing taxes to enable people, over their financial lives, to achieve their goals, uncovering opportunities their advisors would otherwise miss. Make no mistake, Blucora is leading the next major innovation in financial management, maximizing after-tax risk-adjusted financial returns - which is what all of us will live off of - in reality - in our retirement.

After the success of 2017, and as we focus on our vision of unlocking sustained value for shareholders and customers alike, we will focus our 2018 efforts on our new strategic plan. Building on the Four D's approach, our new strategic pillars line up with ABCD.

- *A - Accelerate Growth.* We will execute on our significant organic growth opportunities, create clear competitive differentiation and value in each business, and capture the synergies that exist between the two.
- *B - Build Tax-Smart Leadership.* We are competitively positioned - at the intersection of tax and wealth management - to deliver better outcomes to customers.
- *C - Create One Blucora.* We are no longer a holding company of unrelated businesses. We are one company focused on sharing our expertise and driving efficiencies anchored in a common culture. We are on our way to building a high-performance organization, as part of this culture.
- *D - Deliver Results.* While we have evolved from the Four D's, we will retain our sharp focus on delivering on our commitments to shareholders, customers and advisors.

These pillars will guide us as we work to accelerate growth in 2018. They will also guide how we look to grow the two segments of our business. As I've mentioned, we believe our future sits at the intersection of the tax and wealth management - and that's where our growth opportunity is. We've only scratched the surface on our opportunity, with so much more we can do. This prospect makes us all excited about the future we can create.

Wealth Management

HD Vest is a strong business with what we believe to be a vast amount of organic growth opportunities on the horizon. And as the largest broker-dealer focused on tax-smart investing, we have a competitive advantage in the marketplace. We've leveraged this advantage to grow the business, and I'm proud of the progress we made in 2017.

From a performance standpoint, HD Vest set a number of records in 2017. Total assets under administration increased 14% year-over-year to $44 billion - a new record. Advisory assets under management were up 21% year-over-year to $12.5 billion - also a new record. Net inflows into AUM were about $800 million in 2017, and AUM as a percent of AUA increased to 28.4%, up about 150 basis points from the year ago quarter and also hitting a high-water mark.

Last year, as part of our shift to focus on advisor productivity rather than total number of advisors, we began using predictive models in advisor recruitment. This enabled us to better identify which tax professionals are most likely to be successful as HD Vest wealth management advisors. Additionally, we started a strategic and targeted reduction of non-engaged advisors who account for virtually no clients and assets. This process, which has resulted in the reduction of about 300 advisors, remains an ongoing one as we optimize our advisor base.

2017 also saw great progress in our transition to a new clearing partner, which we expect to complete by the third quarter of 2018. We expect this will be a great win for end-clients, advisors and Blucora. This change will enable us to achieve better capture of interest income in a rising rate cycle, be able to capitalize on new capabilities such as highly-integrated business processing, data aggregation and a world-class client portal, and we'll have the opportunity to bring direct-to-fund (DTF) assets fully on our platform over time. In total, we expect the new clearing arrangement to be accretive to the tune of $60-100 million or more in segment income over 10 years, which can both drop to the bottom line as well as enable acceleration in growth.

Tax Preparation

As we look at the tax side of our business in 2017, we invested in our platform and capabilities to provide more long-term value for our customers. We are enabling speed, efficiency and growth through investing in our technology, infrastructure and people. In 2017, we made great strides in these efforts by:

- Migrating IT infrastructure to the cloud;
- Upgrading our operations and support technology;
- Growing investments in data-driven technologies, tools and platforms to personalize and optimize, as well as being vigilant around cybersecurity; and
- Enhancing our data and analytics, while improving marketing effectiveness.

TaxAct finished the year with revenue of $160.9 million, up 15% versus last year and these investments will help lay the groundwork for continued future growth.

In addition to investing for growth, we're focused on restoring unit momentum in this business by focusing on monetized units, with efforts in four key areas:

- Targeting high potential segments in the growing Digital DIY market, activated through new marketing and improved filer experiences;
- Transparent pricing, with marketable price-value advantages versus the larger players; and
- Diversifying revenue by extending our relationship with filers, leveraging the insight we can gain, with consent, from the tax form - through partners as well as by leveraging our HD Vest unit.

As I mentioned earlier, Blucora uniquely sits at the intersection of tax and wealth management. To that end, we have made significant strides in creating a cross-serve engine within the TaxAct experience for the benefit of our clients. We launched the BluPrint™ financial assessment, developed in partnership with HD Vest, which turns insights from a tax return into actionable recommendations designed to improve the filers' financial situation. We take dozens of data points within the 1040 to offer financial insights and suggestions, all focused on helping customers save on their taxes, lessen their debt burdens and improve their future financial health. We believe we can help the average U.S. filer save thousands of dollars with the insights and solutions we provide. This year, and we believe this is only the beginning, we enabled our customers to access product partnerships where they could reduce their taxes, reduce student debt or get a better deal on consumer debt, manage risk through adding life insurance at a competitive rate or generate more interest on their money through a high-yield deposit account.

We believe we are the only online tax software company that offers this type of insight and guidance into the financial health of our customers and provides comprehensive solutions which can save customers real money now and for years to come. For the nominal cost of using our tax filing software, we can give the customer ways to save thousands of dollars - we believe this is a phenomenal value creation opportunity. While we will look to deepen all our relationships and product integration with our partners, we believe these relationships can become a template for us in future tax seasons.

Conclusion

As I look back at 2017, we have successfully completed an unprecedented multi-year transformation. This includes executing on our 4-D's initiative and the initiatives each of our businesses have undertaken to drive growth and better serve customers. Our financial results clearly show our momentum, with double-digit revenue growth, a strengthened balance sheet, growth in key metrics at HD Vest and continued product development and partnership progress at Tax Act.

I also want to note, and again welcome, our new independent directors. Bill Atwell, the former President of Cigna's international business; Mac Gardner, the former Head of Americas Region and Global Bank Group, Private Client for Merrill Lynch; Georganne Proctor, the former Chief Financial Officer of TIAA-CREF and Steven Aldrich, Chief Product Officer at GoDaddy, Inc., who joined us in 2017. Their experience and knowledge further strengthen our outstanding Board of Directors. I want to thank them all for joining us and thank all the members of our Board for the key role they all play in helping the management team shape the future of Blucora.

With the strong foundation our transformation has created and our talented team, we have the tools and ability to leverage our differentiated business model and capitalize on the significant growth opportunities we see ahead. Simply put, I remain very optimistic about our future.

I'd like to thank our shareholders for the trust and confidence you place in us. And I thank our nearly 500 employees for the hard work they put in every day to serve our customers and advisors, and grow our company.

Sincerely,

John S. Clendening

*See Annex A for a reconciliation of non-GAAP EPS to the nearest GAAP measure.

BLUCORA™

6333 North State Highway 161, 4th Floor
Irving, Texas 75038

NOTICE OF ANNUAL MEETING OF STOCKHOLDERS
To be held on June 7, 2018

TO THE STOCKHOLDERS:

Notice is hereby given that the annual meeting of stockholders of Blucora, Inc., a Delaware corporation, will be held on June 7, 2018 at 2:00 p.m. Central Daylight Time in the Rosetta Room of the Hilton Anatole, 2201 North Stemmons Freeway, Dallas, Texas 75207 for the following purposes:

1. To elect three Class I directors;
2. To ratify the appointment of Ernst & Young LLP as our independent registered public accounting firm for 2018;
3. To approve, on a non-binding advisory basis, the compensation of our Named Executive Officers, as disclosed in this Proxy Statement;
4. To approve the Blucora, Inc. 2018 Long-Term Incentive Plan;
5. To approve an amendment to the Blucora, Inc. Restated Certificate of Incorporation to provide that the number of directors of the Company shall be not less than six nor more than 15 directors; and
6. To transact such other business as may properly come before the meeting or any adjournment, postponement or recess thereof.

The Board of Directors has fixed the close of business on April 9, 2018 as the record date for the determination of stockholders entitled to notice of this meeting and the right to vote.

We have elected to deliver a Notice of Internet Availability of Proxy Materials, rather than sending a full set of proxy materials (including this proxy statement and our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended 2017) in the mail. The Notice of Internet Availability was sent to stockholders on or about April 19, 2018, and the proxy materials were made available on www.proxydocs.com/BCOR on the same day. For specific instructions regarding voting online, by telephone, or by mail, please see the instructions in this Proxy Statement and on the Notice of Internet Availability of Proxy Materials.

This Proxy Statement contains important information for you to consider when deciding how to vote on the matters brought before the meeting. Please read it carefully.

By Order of the Board of Directors,

Ann J. Bruder
Chief Legal Officer and Secretary

Irving, TX
April 19, 2018

YOUR VOTE IS IMPORTANT. WHETHER OR NOT YOU PLAN TO ATTEND THIS MEETING, PLEASE VOTE ONLINE, BY TELEPHONE, OR SIGN, DATE, AND RETURN YOUR PROXY CARD (IF YOU RECEIVED ONE), OR VOTE IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE INSTRUCTIONS SET FORTH ON YOUR VOTING INSTRUCTION CARD.

Important Notice Regarding the Availability of Proxy Materials for the Annual Meeting of Stockholders to be held on June 7, 2018: This Notice of Annual Meeting and Proxy Statement, the Notice of Internet Availability of Proxy Materials and the 2017 Annual Report are available at www.proxydocs.com/BCOR.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PROXY STATEMENT SUMMARY	1
QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS REGARDING VOTING PROCEDURES AND OTHER INFORMATION	
PROPOSAL ONE - ELECTION OF DIRECTORS	12
PROPOSAL TWO – RATIFICATION OF APPOINTMENT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM	14
PROPOSAL THREE – ADVISORY VOTE TO APPROVE THE COMPENSATION OF THE COMPANY'S NAMED EXECUTIVE OFFICERS	15
PROPOSAL FOUR - APPROVAL OF THE BLUCORA, INC. 2018 LONG-TERM INCENTIVE PLAN	16
EQUITY COMPENSATION PLANS	
PROPOSAL FIVE - APPROVAL OF AMENDMENT TO THE BLUCORA, INC. RESTATED CERTIFICATE OF INCORPORATION	28
INFORMATION REGARDING THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS	29
Director Information	30
Independence, Committee and Other Board Information	32
Director Nomination Process	35
Director Compensation	36
AUDIT COMMITTEE REPORT	41
FEES PAID TO INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM	42
TRANSACTIONS WITH RELATED PERSONS	42
COMPENSATION COMMITTEE INTERLOCKS AND INSIDER PARTICIPATION	43
INFORMATION REGARDING EXECUTIVE OFFICERS	43
COMPENSATION DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS	45
Introduction	45
Executive Summary	
Executive Compensation Best Practices	
Compensation Philosophy	
Compensation Decisions Made in 2017	53
Employment Agreements	
2018 Compensation Changes	
Compensation Policies and Practices	62
Risk Considerations in Our Compensation Programs	
COMPENSATION COMMITTEE REPORT	64
COMPENSATION OF NAMED EXECUTIVE OFFICERS	65
Summary Compensation Table	65
2017 Grants of Plan-Based Awards	67
Outstanding Equity Awards at Fiscal Year End	68
2017 Option Exercises and Stock Vested	69
Pension Benefits; Non-Qualified Defined Contribution; and Other Non-Qualified Deferred Compensation Plans	69
Potential Payments upon Termination or Change in Control	
2017 EXECUTIVE PAY RATIO	
BENEFICIAL OWNERSHIP	76

Section 16(a) Beneficial Ownership Reporting Compliance 76
Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management 76
Ownership Limitations 78
TRANSACTION OF OTHER BUSINESS 79
DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT OF STOCKHOLDER PROPOSALS AND DIRECTOR NOMINATIONS 79
ANNUAL REPORT TO STOCKHOLDERS 79
WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION 80
ANNEX A - NON-GAAP RECONCILIATION
APPENDIX A - BLUCORA, INC. 2018 INCENTIVE PLAN
APPENDIX B - AMENDMENT TO RESTATED CERTIFICATE OF INCORPORATION

BLUCORA™

PROXY STATEMENT

for

2018 ANNUAL MEETING OF STOCKHOLDERS OF BLUCORA, INC.

June 7, 2018

PROXY STATEMENT SUMMARY

This summary highlights information contained elsewhere in this proxy statement. This summary does not contain all of the information you should consider, and you should read the entire proxy statement before voting. For more complete information regarding our 2017 performance, please review our Annual Report Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2017.

Information About the Annual Meeting of Stockholders

The Board of Directors (the "Board" or "Board of Directors") of Blucora, Inc. (referred to throughout this proxy statement as “Blucora," the “Company," we," "us," or "our") is soliciting proxies for the 2018 annual meeting of stockholders and any adjournment, postponement or recess of such meeting.

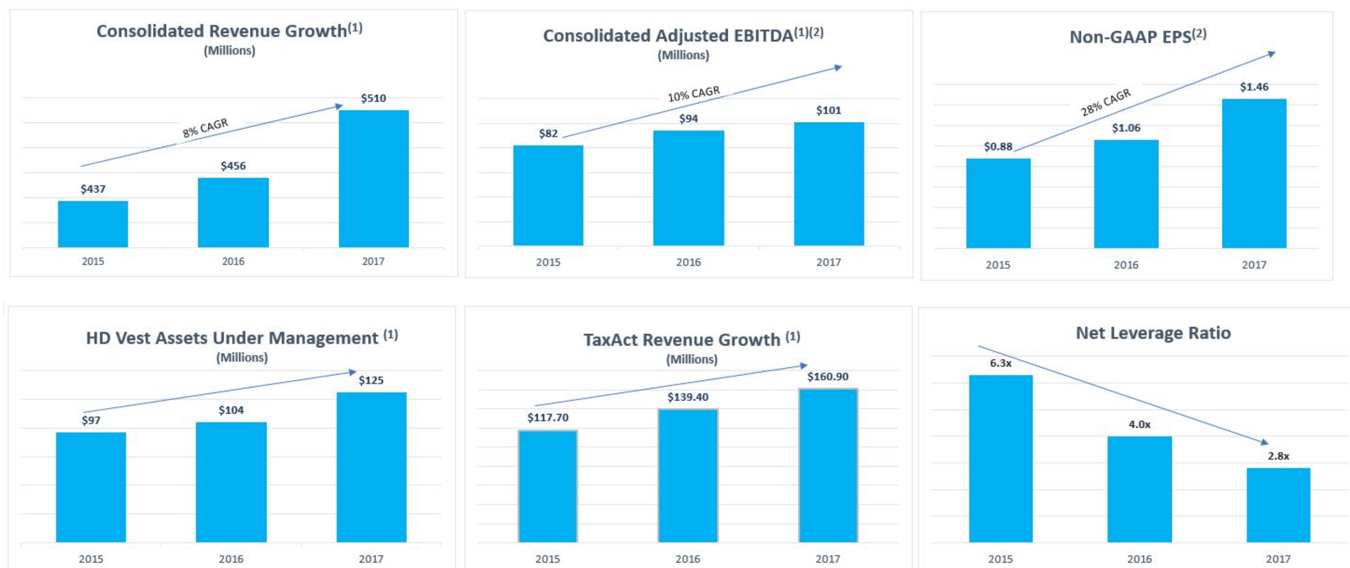
Time and Date:	2:00 p.m., Central Daylight Time, on Thursday, June 7, 2018
Location:	The Rosetta Room of the Hilton Anatole, 2201 North Stemmons Freeway, Dallas, Texas 75207
Record Date:	April 9, 2018
Voting:	Each Share is entitled to one vote at the Annual Meeting

Proposals Included in this Proxy Statement and Recommendations for Voting

Management Proposals:	Board Recommendation	For more detail, see page:
Proposal 1- Election of Directors	"FOR" EACH NOMINEE	12
Proposal 2 - Ratification of Appointment of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm for 2018	FOR	14
Proposal 3 - Advisory vote to approve the compensation of the Company's Named Executive Officers	FOR	15
Proposal 4 - Approval of the Blucora, Inc. 2018 Long-Term Incentive Plan	FOR	16
Proposal 5 - Approval of Amendment to the Blucora, Inc. Restated Certificate of Incorporation	FOR	28

Financial and Business Information

We are a leading provider of technology-enabled financial solutions to consumers, small business owners, and tax professionals. We offer our products and services in wealth management and tax preparation through HDV Holdings, Inc. and its subsidiaries (“HD Vest”) and TaxAct, Inc. and its subsidiary (“TaxAct”), respectively, to help consumers to manage their financial lives in a tax-smart manner.



2017 Financial Highlights
• 2017 was a strong year where we achieved double digit growth in nearly all of our key metrics while significantly strengthening our balance sheet, our platform and our executive leadership team.
• We increased Total Revenue by 12% from 2016.
• We increased Net Income and Net Income per share by 141% and 137%, respectively, from 2016. (2)
• We increased non-GAAP Consolidated Adjusted EBITDA by 7% from 2016. (2)
• We increased non-GAAP EPS by 38% from 2016. (2)
• We grew assets under management by 21% from 2016 to $12.5 billion and total assets under administration by 14% from 2016 to $44.2 billion at HD Vest.
• We achieved the 20th consecutive year of revenue growth at TaxAct, growing 15% from 2016.
• During 2017, we lowered debt by $90 million, reduced net leverage ratio to 2.8x from 4.0x and lowered interest rate by 300 bps.
• We announced a clearing firm transition that is expected to generate $60-$100 million in incremental HD Vest segment income over a 10-year term.
2017 Business Highlights
• Since 2015 we have been successfully undergoing a strategic transformation into a technology-enabled financial solutions company focused on wealth management and comprised of TaxAct and HD Vest and have divested our Search and Content and E-Commerce businesses.
• In connection with our strategic transformation and our operating as “One Company," during 2017, we relocated our corporate headquarters from Bellevue, Washington to Irving, Texas.
• In connection with this relocation and our strategic transformation, we had a leadership transition resulting in a new executive team.

(1) Financial measures used in our annual bonus plan. See "Compensation Discussion and Analysis" for additional information.

(2) See Annex A - Non-GAAP Reconciliation for a reconciliation of Adjusted EBITDA and non-GAAP EPS to Net Income and Net Income per share.

For information concerning risks, uncertainties and other factors that may cause our results to differ from those expressed by any forward-looking statements in this proxy statement, please see “Cautionary Statement Regarding Forward-Looking Statements” and “Risk Factors” in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2017.

Proposal 1 - Election of Class I Directors

We are asking you to vote to elect our three Class I Directors set forth below. At our 2017 annual meeting of stockholders, our stockholders voted to approve the declassification of our Board of Directors over a three-year period beginning with our 2018 annual meeting of stockholders. Each director is currently assigned to one of three classes. The Class I directors up for election at our 2018 annual meeting will be elected for a one-year term. In 2019, the Class II directors will be up for election and will be elected for a one-year term. In 2020, all members of our Board of Directors will be up for election for a one-year term, and thereafter all directors will be elected annually. The Company's Board of Directors has set the size of the Board at eight members, and information about each of our directors, including our Director Nominees for election at the annual meeting, is set forth below.

For additional information concerning this proposal and our Director Nominees, see "Proposal One—Election of Directors" on page 12 of this Proxy Statement, and for additional information regarding our other directors, see "Information Regarding the Board of Directors."

						Board Committees		
Name	**Age**	**Director Since**	**Class of Director**	**Employment Description**	**Indepen-dent**	**Audit**	**Comp-ensation**	**Nominating and Governance**
William L. Atwell, Chair	67	2017	II	Managing Director of Atwell Partners	Y	✓		
Steven Aldrich	48	2017	II	CPO of GoDaddy	Y			✓
John S. Clendening*	55	2016	I	President & CEO Blucora	N			
Lance G. Dunn*	55	2012	I	Former Co-Founder & CEO of TaxAct	Y	✓		
H. McIntyre Gardner*	56	2017	I	Private Investor and former Senior Executive at Merrill Lynch & Co., Inc.	Y		Chair	
Georganne C. Proctor	61	2017	III	Former CFO of TIAA-CREF	Y	Chair	✓	
Christopher W. Walters	44	2014	II	CEO of Encompass Digital Media, Inc.	Y			Chair
Mary S. Zappone	53	2015	III	CEO of Brace Industrial Group	Y		✓	✓

* Class I Directors who are nominated for re-election at the 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders.

Proposal 2 - Auditor Ratification

We are asking you to ratify the appointment of Ernst & Young LLP as our independent registered public accounting firm for 2018. Although a stockholder vote for this appointment is not required by law and is not binding on us, our Audit Committee will take your vote on this proposal into consideration when appointing the independent registered public accounting firm in the future.

For additional information concerning this proposal, see "Proposal Two—Ratification of Appointment of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm for 2018" on page 14 of this Proxy Statement, and for information concerning the fees we paid to Ernst & Young LLP during 2017 and 2016, see "Fees Paid to Independent Registered Public Account Firm for 2017 and 2016" on page 42 of this Proxy Statement.

Proposal 3 - Executive Compensation

We are asking you to approve, on a non-binding, advisory basis, the compensation of our Named Executive Officers for 2017 as disclosed in the "Compensation Discussion and Analysis" and accompanying compensation tables and related narrative discussion beginning on page 45. We believe that our Named Executive Officer compensation program described throughout our "Compensation Discussion and Analysis" reflects an overall pay-for-performance culture that is aligned with the interests of our stockholders. Our compensation programs are designed to provide a competitive level of compensation necessary to attract, motivate and retain talented and experienced executives and reward our named executive officers for the achievement of short- and long-term strategic and operational goals and the achievement of increased total stockholder return, while at the same time avoiding the encouragement of unnecessary or excessive risk-taking. In addition, we have implemented a number of executive compensation best practices and policies over the last few years that we believe reflect sound governance that also promote the long-term interests of our stockholders.

For additional information concerning this proposal, see "Proposal Three—Advisory Vote to Approve the Compensation of the Company's Named Executive Officers" beginning on page 15 of this Proxy Statement. In addition, please read the information included in the Executive Compensation section of this Proxy Statement beginning on page 45, including the highlights of our 2017 executive compensation information included under "Executive Summary."

Proposal 4 - 2018 Long-Term Incentive Plan

We are asking you to approve the Blucora, Inc. 2018 Long-Term Incentive Plan. The Blucora, Inc. 2018 Long-Term Incentive Plan is intended to replace the Blucora, Inc. 2015 Incentive Plan as Amended and Restated. Approval of the Blucora, Inc. 2018 Long-Term Incentive Plan by our stockholders is required under NASDAQ listing rules.

Approval of the Blucora, Inc. 2018 Long-Term Incentive Plan is very important because the Board and Compensation Committee believe that the number of shares of common stock currently available under the Blucora, Inc. 2015 Incentive Plan as Amended and Restated is insufficient to meet the Company's current and future equity compensation needs. Stockholder approval of the 2018 Plan is intended to ensure that the Company has sufficient shares available to attract and retain key employees, key contractors, and outside directors, and to further the Company's growth and development.

For additional information concerning this proposal, see "Proposal Four—Approval of the Blucora, Inc. 2018 Long-Term Incentive Plan" beginning on page 16 of this Proxy Statement, and for additional information concerning awards under the 2018 Plan as components of our executive compensation program, see "Compensation Discussion and Analysis" beginning on page 45 of this Proxy Statement.

Proposal 5 - Amendment to Restated Certificate of Incorporation

We are asking you to approve an amendment to the Blucora, Inc. Restated Certificate of Incorporation to increase both the minimum and maximum number of directors that may serve on the Board of Directors. Currently, the Blucora, Inc. Restated Certificate of Incorporation provides that the Board of Directors shall be composed of not less than five nor more than nine directors, with the specific number to be set by resolution of the Board of Directors. If the amendment is adopted, the Board of Directors will continue to have the authority to set the exact number of directors, but the range of our Board of Directors will be expanded from the current range of five to nine directors to a range of six to 15 directors. Approval of the amendment to the Blucora, Inc. Restated Certificate of Incorporation by our stockholders is required by Delaware law.

We have discussed the need for an amendment to our Restated Certificate of Incorporation with some of our institutional investors and believe that the approval of this amendment is important because it will ensure that the Company has a sufficient number of directors to provide effective oversight of the Company and comply with best corporate governance practices while also preventing the Board from becoming so large that it becomes inefficient and the decision making process is hindered.

For additional information concerning this proposal, see "Proposal Five—Approval of Amendment to the Blucora, Inc. Restated Certificate of Incorporation" beginning on page 28 of this Proxy Statement.

Corporate Governance Highlights

We are committed to good corporate governance, which promotes the long-term interests of our stockholders, strengthens board and management accountability and helps build public trust in our Company. Our governance framework is described throughout this proxy statement and includes the following highlights:

✓ 7 Independent Directors	✓ All Board Committees are Independent
✓ Movement toward a Declassified Board and Annual Election of Board Members	✓ Risk Oversight by Full Board and Committees
✓ Majority Voting for Directors in Uncontested Elections With Resignation Policy	✓ Stockholders can Call Special Meetings
✓ Regular Board and Committee Meetings	✓ Stock Ownership Requirements for Directors and Executive Officers
✓ Regular Board and Committee Self Evaluations	✓ Annual ratification of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm
✓ Separate Chairman and Chief Executive Officer	✓ Hedging and Pledging Prohibitions
✓ Robust Insider Trading Policy	✓ Code of Conduct and Ethics administered by the Board of Directors

In addition, we believe that many of our compensation practices reflect good corporate governance. See our "Executive Compensation Best Practices" on page 50 for additional information.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS REGARDING VOTING PROCEDURES AND OTHER INFORMATION

Questions and Answers about the Annual Meeting

Q. When and where is the annual meeting?

A. We will hold the annual meeting in the Rosetta Room of the Hilton Anatole, 2201 North Stemmons Freeway, Dallas, Texas 75207.

Q. Why did I receive a notice in the mail regarding Internet availability of proxy materials instead of a full set of proxy materials?

A. The Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC") rules allow companies to choose the method for delivery of proxy materials for stockholders. We have elected to deliver a Notice of Internet Availability of Proxy Materials, rather than sending a full set of these materials in the mail. The Notice of Internet Availability was sent to stockholders on or about April 19, 2018, and the proxy materials were made available on www.proxydocs.com/BCOR on the same day. Utilizing this method of proxy delivery expedites receipt of proxy materials by our stockholders and lowers the cost of the annual meeting.

Shares must be voted either by telephone, online or by completing and returning a proxy card. Shares cannot be voted by marking, writing on and/or returning the Notice of Internet Availability. Any Notices of Internet Availability that are returned will not be counted as votes. If you would like to receive a paper or email copy of the proxy materials, you should follow the instructions in the Notice of Internet Availability for requesting copies or follow the procedures set forth below.

Q. How do I request a paper copy of the proxy materials?

A. If you would like to request a paper copy of the proxy materials, including the proxy statement and form of proxy and the Annual Report to Stockholders, please contact our Investor Relations department by mail at the address on the first page of this proxy statement, by telephone at (972) 870-6000 or by e-mail at IR@Blucora.com, and we will promptly deliver a copy to you. You may also request a paper copy of the proxy materials at www.proxydocs.com/BCOR. Our proxy statement and Annual Report on Form 10-K are also available under the "Investor Relations" section of our website at www.blucora.com or at www.proxydocs.com/BCOR.

Questions and Answers About the Proposals Presented at the Annual Meeting

Q. What proposals will be voted on at the annual meeting?

A. There are five proposals scheduled to be voted on at the annual meeting:

Proposal One: Election of the three Class I directors nominated by the Board of Directors of the Company;

Proposal Two: Ratification of the appointment of Ernst & Young LLP as the Company's independent registered public accounting firm for 2018;

Proposal Three: Advisory vote to approve the compensation of the Company's Named Executive Officers;

Proposal Four: Approval of the Blucora, Inc. 2018 Long-Term Incentive Plan; and

Proposal Five: Approval of the amendment to the Blucora, Inc. Restated Certificate of Amendment to increase the range of directors that may serve on the Board of Directors from a range of five to nine to a range of six to 15.

We do not expect any matters other than those described in this Proxy Statement to come before the annual meeting. The accompanying proxy card confers on the persons named as proxies the authority to vote the shares represented by such proxy in their discretion on any other matters that may properly come before the annual meeting.

Q. What are the voting options for each proposal?

A. In the election of directors (Proposal One), you may vote "FOR" or "AGAINST" or "ABSTAIN" with respect to any nominee.

On the ratification of the appointment of Ernst & Young LLP as the Company's independent registered public accounting firm for 2018 (Proposal Two), the approval, on an advisory basis, of the compensation of the Company's Named Executive Officers (Proposal Three), the approval of the Blucora, Inc. 2018 Long-Term Incentive Plan (Proposal 4),

and the approval of the amendment to the Blucora, Inc. Restated Certificate of Incorporation (Proposal Five), you may vote "FOR," "AGAINST," or "ABSTAIN."

Q. What are the Board of Directors' voting recommendations?

A. The Board of Directors recommends that you vote your shares:

- "FOR" each nominee to the Board of Directors listed in this Proxy Statement;
- "FOR" the ratification of Ernst & Young LLP as our independent registered public accounting firm for 2018;
- "FOR" the approval, on an advisory basis, of the compensation of the Company's Named Executive Officers;
- "FOR" the approval of the Blucora, Inc. 2018 Long-Term Incentive Plan; and
- "FOR" the approval of the amendment to the Blucora, Inc. Restated Certificate of Amendment.

Questions and Answers About Voting at the Annual Meeting

Q. How many votes are required to elect the Class I directors (Proposal One)?

A. For the election of directors (Proposal One), the three nominees to the Board of Directors of the Company who receive a greater number of "FOR" votes than "AGAINST" votes from shares present at the meeting will be elected. If the votes cast for any nominees do not exceed the votes cast against the nominee, the Board of Directors will consider whether to accept or reject such directors' resignation, which is tendered to the Board of Directors pursuant to the Company's Amended and Restated Corporate Governance Guidelines. Abstentions and broker non-votes will have no effect on the outcome of the election of directors.

Q. How many votes are required to ratify the appointment of Ernst and Young LLP as the Company's independent registered public accounting firm (Proposal 2), approve the compensation of the Company's Named Executive Officers (Proposal 3) and approve the Blucora, Inc. 2018 Long-Term Incentive Plan (Proposal 4)?

A. The ratification of the appointment of Ernst & Young LLP as our independent registered public accounting firm for 2018 (Proposal Two), the approval, on an advisory basis, of the compensation of the Company's Named Executive Officers (Proposal Three) and the approval of the Blucora, Inc. 2018 Long-Term Incentive Plan (Proposal 4) will each require the affirmative vote of a majority of the shares of common stock present in person or represented by proxy at the annual meeting and entitled to vote on such proposal.

If your shares are represented at the annual meeting but you "ABSTAIN" from voting on any of these matters, your shares will be counted as present and entitled to vote on a particular proposal for purposes of establishing a quorum, and the abstention will have the same effect as a vote against that proposal.

Because your broker does not have discretionary authority to vote your shares with respect to the vote to approve the compensation, on an advisory basis, of the Company's Named Executive Officers (Proposal Three) and the vote to approve the Blucora, Inc. 2018 Long-Term Incentive Plan (Proposal 4), your broker will not be considered "entitled to vote" at the annual meeting. Accordingly, a broker non-vote will have no effect on Proposals Three and Four. Broker non-votes are not applicable to the vote to ratify the appointment of Ernst & Young LLP as our independent registered public accounting firm for 2018 (Proposal Two) because your broker has discretionary authority to vote your common stock with respect to such proposal.

Q. How many votes are required to approve the amendment to the Blucora, Inc. Restated Certificate of Incorporation (Proposal 5)?

A. The approval of the amendment to the Blucora, Inc. Restated Certificate of Incorporation (Proposal 5) will require the affirmative vote of a majority of the total shares of common stock outstanding. Because the total shares of common stock outstanding will be the same no matter how many shares are actually voted, abstentions and broker non-votes will have the same effect as a vote against the proposal.

Q. What is the purpose of the proposal to approve the amendment to the Blucora, Inc. Restated Certificate of Incorporation (Proposal 5)?

A. Currently, the Blucora Inc. Restated Certificate of Incorporation provides that the Board of Directors shall be composed of not less than five nor more than nine directors, with the specific number to be set by resolution of the Board of Directors. If Proposal 5 is approved at the annual meeting, the Board of Directors will continue to have the authority to set the exact number of directors, but the range will be expanded from the current range of five to nine directors to a range of six to 15 directors.

The Board of Directors has determined that it is advisable and in the best interests of the Company and its stockholders to increase both the minimum and maximum number of directors that may serve on the Board of Directors. Although the Board of Directors has no current intention to increase the size of the Board of Directors to more than nine directors, the Board of Directors believes that it is important to have the flexibility to adjust the size of the Board of Directors to meet changing circumstances and the needs of the Company without seeking an amendment to the Certificate of Incorporation. In making this decision, the Board of Directors concluded that fixing a range of between six and 15 directors would ensure that the Company has a sufficient number of directors to provide effective oversight of the Company and comply with best corporate governance practices while also preventing the Board of Directors from becoming so large that it becomes inefficient and the decision making process is hindered.

Q. How many votes do you need at the annual meeting to transact business?

A. A quorum must be present in order for business to be conducted at the annual meeting. A majority of our outstanding shares entitled to vote, present in person or represented by proxy at the annual meeting, constitutes a quorum. In addition to shares that are voted on any matter, abstentions and broker non-votes will be considered present at the annual meeting for purposes of establishing a quorum.

Q. What is the difference between a Stockholder of Record and a Street Name holder?

A. If your shares are registered directly in your name with Computershare Shareowner Services, our transfer agent, you are considered the "Stockholder of Record" with respect to those shares and we have sent the proxy statement and proxy card directly to you.

If you hold your shares in an account with a broker, bank, or other nominee, the nominee is considered the record holder of that stock. You are considered the beneficial owner of that stock, and your stock is held in "Street Name." The proxy statement and proxy card have been forwarded to you by your broker, bank, or other nominee. As the beneficial owner, you have the right to direct your nominee regarding how to vote your shares.

Q. Who is entitled to vote?

A. All stockholders who owned our common stock at the close of business on the record date of April 9, 2018 are entitled to receive notice of the annual meeting and to vote the shares they own as of the record date. Each stockholder is entitled to one vote for each share of common stock held on all matters properly brought before the annual meeting to be voted on. Our Restated Certificate of Incorporation and our Amended and Restated By-Laws prohibit cumulative voting in the election of directors.

On the record date, 46,912,609 shares of our common stock were outstanding and entitled to vote, and we had 369 stockholders of record. The number of holders of record does not include beneficial owners of our common stock who hold their shares in Street Name.

Q. What is a broker non-vote?

A. A broker non-vote occurs when a broker holding shares for a beneficial owner does not vote on a particular proposal because the broker does not have discretionary voting power with respect to that item and has not received voting instructions from the beneficial owner.

It is important that you instruct your broker, bank, or other nominee to cast your vote if you want it to count in the election of directors (Proposal One), in the advisory vote to approve the compensation of our Named Executive Officers (Proposal Three), in the vote to approve the Blucora, Inc. 2018 Long-Term Incentive Plan (Proposal 4) or in the vote to approve the amendment to the Blucora, Inc. Restated Certificate of Incorporation (Proposal 5). If you hold your shares in Street Name and do not instruct your broker, bank, or other nominee how to vote, your shares will not be voted on these proposals. In such a case, your shares will be considered "broker non-votes" with regard to such proposals because the broker, bank, or other nominee will not have discretionary authority to vote your shares. The only proposal for which brokers and banks have discretionary authority is the ratification of Ernst & Young LLP as our independent registered public accounting firm (Proposal Two).

Q. What if I do not vote for some of the items listed on my proxy card or voting instruction card?

A. If you provide specific voting instructions (either on your proxy card or to your broker, bank, or other nominee), your shares will be voted as you have instructed. If you are a Stockholder of Record and you execute the proxy card and do not provide voting instructions on certain matters, your shares will be voted in accordance with the Board's recommendations. If you hold your shares in Street Name and do not provide voting instructions, your broker, bank, or other nominee will have discretionary authority to vote such shares ONLY on the ratification of the appointment of Ernst & Young LLP as the Company's independent registered public accounting firm for 2018 (Proposal Two) and your shares will not be voted or counted on any of the other proposals.

Q. How can I vote my shares without attending the annual meeting?

A. Whether you are a Stockholder of Record or you hold your shares beneficially through a broker, bank, or other nominee, you may vote without attending the annual meeting. You may vote by granting a proxy or, for shares held in Street Name, by submitting voting instructions to your broker, bank, or other nominee. In most cases, you will be able to do this by telephone, via the Internet, or by mail. For Stockholders of Record, please refer to the summary instructions included on your proxy card. For shares held through a broker, bank, or other nominee, please refer to the voting instruction card that will be provided by your broker, bank, or other nominee.

If your shares are registered under different names, or if they are in more than one account, you may receive more than one proxy card or voting instruction card. Please follow the instructions on each proxy card or voting instruction card to ensure that all of your shares are represented at the annual meeting. Please sign each proxy card exactly as your name or names appear on the proxy card. For joint accounts, each owner should sign the proxy card. When signing as an executor, administrator, attorney, trustee, guardian, or other representative, please print your full name and title on the proxy card.

BY TELEPHONE OR THE INTERNET - If you have telephone or Internet access, you may submit your vote by following the instructions on the proxy card or voting instruction card. Blucora, Inc. is incorporated under Delaware law, which specifically permits electronically transmitted proxies, provided that each such proxy contains or is submitted with information from which the inspector of election can determine that such proxy was authorized by the stockholder. The electronic voting procedures provided for the annual meeting are designed to authenticate each stockholder by the use of a control number to allow stockholders to vote their shares and to confirm that their instructions have been properly recorded.

BY MAIL - You may submit your proxy by mail by signing your proxy card if you requested and received one or, for shares held through a broker, bank, or other nominee, by following the voting instruction card provided by your broker, bank, or other nominee and mailing it in the enclosed, postage-paid envelope. Shares cannot be voted by marking, writing on and/or returning the Notice. Any Notices that are returned will not be counted as votes.

Q. How may I vote my shares in person at the annual meeting?

A. Shares held directly in your name as the Stockholder of Record may be voted in person at the annual meeting. If you hold your shares in Street Name, and you wish to vote at the meeting, you must present a legal proxy from your broker, bank, or other nominee in order to vote at the meeting. If you choose to attend the annual meeting, please bring proof of identification for entrance to the meeting. If you hold your shares in Street Name, please also bring your proof of beneficial ownership from your bank, broker, or other nominee, such as a brokerage statement.

Even if you currently plan to attend the annual meeting, the Company recommends that you submit your proxy card or voting instruction card as described above so that your vote will be counted if you later decide not to attend the annual meeting.

Q. Can I change my vote?

A. Yes. If you are a Stockholder of Record, you may revoke your proxy by any of the following means:

- signing and submitting a new proxy card with a later date;
- voting by telephone or via the Internet as instructed above (only your latest telephone or Internet proxy is counted); or
- attending the meeting and voting in person (as described above).

Attending the annual meeting will not revoke your proxy unless you specifically request it.

If you are a Street Name holder, your broker, bank, or other nominee should provide instructions explaining how you may change or revoke your voting instructions. In general, Street Name holders may change their vote at any time prior to 5:00 p.m. Eastern Time on the day before the annual meeting date.

Q. Do I have any dissenters' or appraisal rights with respect to any of the matters to be voted on at the annual meeting?

A. No. Delaware law does not provide stockholders any dissenters' or appraisal rights with respect to the matters to be voted on at the annual meeting.

Q. Where can I find the voting results of the annual meeting?

A. The preliminary voting results will be announced at the annual meeting. The final results will be published in a Current Report on Form 8-K within four business days of the end of the annual meeting, which will be filed with the SEC and will also be available at www.blucora.com. If final results are not available within four business days of the end of the annual meeting, preliminary results will be published in a Current Report on Form 8-K at that time, and the final results will be published in an amended Current Report on Form 8-K/A when they are available.

Q. Who will count the votes?

A. Votes will be counted and certified by the Inspector of Election.

Questions and Answers About the Procedures of the Annual Meeting

Q. Is a list of registered stockholders available?

A. The Company's list of stockholders as of the record date, April 9, 2018, will be available for inspection for 10 days prior to the 2018 annual meeting and at the annual meeting for any purpose germane to the annual meeting. If you want to inspect the stockholder list, please call the office of the Chief Legal Officer at (972) 870-6000 to schedule an appointment.

Q. What is "householding" and how does it affect me?

A. The Company has adopted a procedure approved by the SEC called "householding." Under this procedure, Stockholders of Record who have the same address and last name and who do not participate in electronic delivery of proxy materials will receive only one set of the proxy materials, unless one or more of these stockholders notifies the Company that they wish to continue receiving individual copies. The Company believes this will provide greater convenience for stockholders, as well as cost savings for the Company by reducing the number of duplicate documents that are mailed. Stockholders who participate in householding will continue to receive separate proxy cards. Householding will not in any way affect your rights as a stockholder.

If you are eligible for householding, but you and other Stockholders of Record with whom you share an address currently receive multiple copies of our proxy materials, or if you hold stock in more than one account, and in either case you wish to receive only a single copy of each of these documents for your household, please contact Mediant

Communications Inc. at 1-866-648-8133 or contact them by email at paper@investorelections.com or using the internet at www.investorelections.com/BCOR.

If you participate in householding and wish to receive a separate copy of our proxy materials, including the Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2017 or this Proxy Statement, or if you do not wish to participate in householding and prefer to receive separate copies of these documents in the future, please contact Mediant Communications Inc. as indicated above.

Street Name holders can request information about householding from their banks, brokers, or other Stockholders of Record.

Q. Who is making this proxy solicitation and who will bear the expenses of the proxy solicitation?

A. This solicitation of proxies is made on behalf of the Company. We will bear all expenses incurred in connection with the solicitation of proxies. We have engaged D.F. King & Co., Inc. to assist with the solicitation of proxies for an estimated fee of $10,000 plus expenses. We will bear the reasonable expenses incurred by banks, brokerage firms, custodians, nominees and fiduciaries in forwarding proxy material to beneficial owners. Our directors, officers and employees may also solicit proxies by mail, telephone and personal contact. They will not receive any additional compensation for these activities.

Q. Who can help answer my questions?

A. The information provided above in this “Question and Answer” format is for your convenience only and is merely a summary of certain information contained in this Proxy Statement. We urge you to carefully read this entire Proxy Statement, including the documents referred to in this Proxy Statement. If you have any questions or need additional material, please feel free to contact Investor Relations at (972) 870-6000 or IR@Blucora.com.

PROPOSAL ONE
ELECTION OF DIRECTORS

General

At our 2017 annual meeting of stockholders, our stockholders voted to approve the declassification of our Board of Directors over a three-year period beginning with our 2018 annual meeting of stockholders. Each director is currently assigned to one of three classes. The Class I directors up for election at our 2018 annual meeting will be elected for a one-year term. In 2019, the Class II directors will be up for election and will be elected for a one-year term. In 2020, all members of our Board of Directors will be up for election for a one-year term, and thereafter all directors will be elected annually. The Company's Board of Directors has set the size of the Board at eight members.

A director serves in office until his or her successor is duly elected and qualified unless the director resigns, dies, or is unable to serve in the capacity of director due to disability or other cause. If a director resigns or is otherwise unable to serve before the end of his or her term, the Board may appoint a director to fill the remainder of that term, reduce the size of the Board, or leave the position vacant.

Director Nominee Information and Qualifications

The three directors set forth below have been nominated by the Board of Directors at the recommendation of the Nominating and Governance Committee for election at the 2018 annual meeting of stockholders to serve for a one-year term ending in 2019. The Board of Directors has affirmatively determined that each Director Nominee, excluding Mr. Clendening who also serves as our Chief Executive Officer ("CEO") and President, qualifies as an independent director under the NASDAQ listing rules. No Director Nominee is being elected pursuant to any arrangement or understanding between the Director Nominee and any other person or persons. For further information on the process of director nominations and criteria for selection of Director Nominees, see "Director Nomination Process" below.

Name of Director Nominee	Age	Positions with Blucora	Director Since
John S. Clendening	55	Director, President and CEO	2016
Lance G. Dunn	55	Director	2012
H. McIntyre Gardner	56	Director	2017

John S. Clendening was appointed to serve as the Company's President and CEO on April 4, 2016, and he was also appointed as a member of the Board on the same date. Prior to being appointed President and Chief Executive Officer, Mr. Clendening served as Executive Vice President and Co-Head, Investor Services Division at The Charles Schwab Corporation in San Francisco from 2012 to 2015. He served as Executive Vice President, Shared Strategic Services from 2007 to 2011 and as Chief Executive Officer and Executive Vice President of Charles Schwab Bank from 2007 to 2009. From 2004 to 2007, Mr. Clendening served in executive roles with the Investor Services Division and Independent Investor Business Unit with The Charles Schwab Corporation. Prior to joining The Charles Schwab Corporation, he served in various leadership roles at eMac Digital LLC and Living.Com. He was also Chief Marketing Officer and Senior Vice President, Consumer Banking Group and Senior Vice President, Marketing and Strategy, Credit Card Division for First Union Corporation. Earlier in his career, he served at The Coca-Cola Company, the Frito-Lay, Inc. Division of PepsiCo, SEARS Specialty Merchandising Group and Booz-Allen & Hamilton, Inc. Mr. Clendening previously served on the board of directors of Betterment Holdings, Inc. and currently serves on the board of directors of SVB Financial Group. He received a B.A. in Economics from Northwestern University and an M.B.A. from Harvard Graduate School of Business Administration.

Relevant Qualifications and Experience: Mr. Clendening has relevant experience as an executive in the financial services and consumer goods industries, leading both Fortune 500 companies and entrepreneurial businesses. The Board believes that Mr. Clendening's experience as an executive in the financial services industry brings important perspective to the Board as the Company continues its transformation to a technology enabled financial solutions company. As President and CEO, Mr. Clendening brings insight into the Company's operations and strategic plan and facilitates the Board's ability to perform its critical oversight function.

Lance G. Dunn has served as a director of Blucora since 2012. Mr. Dunn was a co-founder and Chief Executive Officer of TaxAct (formerly 2nd Story Software, Inc.) until January 31, 2012, when the Company acquired TaxAct. From the closing of the acquisition until August 2012, he served as TaxAct's Vice President, Development. Prior to co-founding TaxAct in 1998, Mr. Dunn was Vice President of Software Development at Parsons Technology, Inc., where he played a significant role in the development and growth of Parson's tax software. Mr. Dunn received a B.A. in Accounting from Coe College and is a Certified Public Accountant.

Relevant Qualifications and Experience: As the co-founder and former CEO of the Company's TaxAct business, Mr. Dunn brings significant experience and background to the Board with respect to an industry and business that is important to the Company's success. The Board also believes that Mr. Dunn's extensive experience as a technology executive provides insight and guidance that assists the Board in its oversight and strategy roles.

H. McIntyre Gardner was appointed to the Board of Directors on March 1, 2017. Mr. Gardner has been a private investor since 2008. From July 2000 to January 2008, Mr. Gardner held senior executive positions at Merrill Lynch & Co., Inc., a global financial services company, most recently as Senior Vice President, Head of Americas Region and Global Bank Group, Global Private Client. Prior to 2000, Mr. Gardner served in senior executive positions with Helen of Troy Limited and Appliance Corporation of America and as an investment banker with Merrill Lynch. Mr. Gardner has been a director of Spirit Airlines, Inc., a NYSE listed transportation company, since 2010 and a director of TeamSnap, Inc. since April 2017. Mr. Gardner earned a B.A. in Religion from Dartmouth College in 1983.

Relevant Qualifications and Experience: Mr. Gardner brings relevant industry experience to the Board from his decades of leadership and operating experience in the wealth and consumer products industries. The Board believes that Mr. Gardner's experience as an executive in the wealth and consumer products industries brings an important perspective to the Board and the Company as it continues its transformation into a technology enabled financial solutions company and seeks to meet its strategic growth initiatives.

Additional Information

Unless otherwise instructed, the proxy holders will vote the proxies received by them "*FOR*" the nominees listed in this Proxy Statement. The Director Nominees have consented to be named in this Proxy Statement and agreed to serve as directors if elected by the stockholders. In the event that any nominee to the Board is unable or declines to serve as a director at the time of the annual meeting, the proxies will be voted for a nominee who may be designated by the present Board of Directors to fill the vacancy. It is not expected that any nominees will be unable or will decline to serve as a director. Alternatively, the Board of Directors may reduce the size of the Board or maintain such vacancy.

Pursuant to our Corporate Governance Guidelines, each of the Director Nominees has tendered an irrevocable resignation that becomes effective if such Director Nominee fails to receive the required vote at the annual meeting. The Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee must consider the resignation and recommend to the Board the action to be taken with respect to the resignation. The director whose resignation is under consideration shall not participate in the Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee's recommendation with respect to the resignation. The Board of Directors is required to consider and act on the recommendation within ninety (90) days following certification of the election results and will publicly disclose its decision whether to accept the resignation offer.

A copy of our Corporate Governance Guidelines is available on the investor relations section of our website at www.blucora.com/governance.

Vote Required

A Director Nominee will be elected to the Board of Directors if the votes cast "FOR" such Director Nominee's election exceed the votes cast "AGAINST" such Director Nominee's election (with abstentions and broker non-votes not counted as a vote cast either "FOR" or "AGAINST" that Director Nominee's election).

THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS UNANIMOUSLY RECOMMENDS A VOTE "FOR" THE NOMINEES NAMED HEREIN

PROPOSAL TWO
RATIFICATION OF APPOINTMENT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM FOR 2018

The Audit Committee of the Board of Directors has appointed Ernst & Young LLP as the Company's independent registered public accounting firm for 2018 and recommends that stockholders vote *"FOR"* ratification of this appointment. Although stockholder approval of this appointment is not required by law and is not binding on the Company, the Audit Committee will take your vote on this proposal into consideration when appointing the independent registered public accounting firm in the future. Even if you ratify the appointment of Ernst & Young LLP, the Audit Committee may, in its sole discretion, terminate such engagement and direct the appointment of another independent registered public accounting firm at any time during the year, although it has no current intention to do so.

Ernst & Young LLP was initially appointed by the Audit Committee in March 2012. Representatives of Ernst & Young LLP are expected to be present at the meeting, with the opportunity to make a statement if they desire to do so, and are expected to be available to respond to appropriate questions.

Vote Required

The proposal to ratify the appointment of Ernst & Young LLP as the Company's independent registered public accounting firm for 2018 requires the affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the shares of common stock present, in person or by proxy, and entitled to vote on the proposal.

THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS UNANIMOUSLY RECOMMENDS A VOTE "FOR" PROPOSAL TWO

PROPOSAL THREE
ADVISORY VOTE TO APPROVE THE COMPENSATION OF THE COMPANY'S NAMED EXECUTIVE OFFICERS

What You are Being Asked to Approve

We hold advisory votes on the compensation of our Named Executive Officers, which is referred to as say-on-pay, at every annual meeting of stockholders. Our Board of Directors values the opinions of our stockholders and believes an annual advisory vote allows our stockholders to provide us with their input on our executive compensation program. We conducted an advisory vote on the frequency of the advisory say-on-pay vote at our 2017 Annual Meeting. Following the recommendation of our stockholders in 2017, we will continue to hold our advisory Say on Pay vote on an annual basis. We received very strong approval of our say-on-pay vote at our annual meeting of stockholders in 2017, with 97.5% of our stockholders who voted at the meeting voting "FOR" approval.

We are asking you to approve, on a non-binding, advisory basis, the compensation of our Named Executive Officers for 2017 as disclosed in the "Compensation Discussion and Analysis" and accompanying compensation tables and related narrative discussion beginning on page 45. This vote is not intended to address any specific item of compensation, but rather the overall compensation of our Named Executive Officers and the compensation philosophy, policies and practices described in this proxy statement.

Our Compensation Program

We believe that our Named Executive Officer compensation program described throughout the "Compensation Discussion and Analysis" is aligned with the interests of our stockholders. Our compensation programs are designed to provide a competitive level of compensation necessary to attract, motivate and retain talented and experienced executives and reward our Named Executive Officers for the achievement of short- and long-term strategic and operational goals and the achievement of increased total stockholder return, while at the same time avoiding the encouragement of unnecessary or excessive risk-taking. In addition, we have implemented a number of executive compensation best practices and policies over the last few years that we believe reflect sound governance that also promote the long-term interests of our stockholders.

Resolution for Advisory Vote to Approve Executive Compensation

The Board of Directors and its committees value the opinions of our stockholders and will carefully consider the outcome of the advisory vote to approve executive compensation. Because this vote is advisory, it is not binding on the Board of Directors and/or its committees. The resolution below is required by Section 14A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (the "Exchange Act"). We ask our stockholders to vote FOR the following resolution at the Annual Meeting:

> "RESOLVED, that the compensation of our Named Executive Officers, as disclosed in the proxy statement for our 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders pursuant to the compensation disclosure rules of the Securities and Exchange Commission, including the Compensation Discussion and Analysis, the compensation tables and the narrative discussion, is hereby APPROVED on an advisory basis."

Vote Required

The proposal to approve, on a non-binding basis, the compensation of our Named Executive Officers requires the affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the shares of common stock present, in person or by proxy, and entitled to vote on the proposal.

THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS UNANIMOUSLY RECOMMENDS THAT YOU VOTE "FOR" PROPOSAL THREE

PROPOSAL FOUR
APPROVAL OF THE BLUCORA, INC. 2018 LONG-TERM INCENTIVE PLAN

Proposed Plan

We are asking stockholders to approve the Blucora, Inc. 2018 Long-Term Incentive Plan (the "2018 Plan"). The Board of Directors of the Company has adopted the 2018 Plan upon the recommendation of the Compensation Committee of the Board of Directors (the "Compensation Committee"), subject to stockholder approval. The 2018 Plan is intended to replace the Blucora, Inc. 2015 Incentive Plan as Amended and Restated (the "2015 Plan"), which was originally approved by stockholders in 2015 and subsequently approved by stockholders as amended and restated in 2016. If the 2018 Plan is approved by stockholders, the 2015 Plan will terminate and no further awards will be made under the 2015 Plan on or after the date of such stockholder approval (the "Effective Date"), provided that the terms of the 2015 Plan will continue to apply to awards previously granted under the 2015 Plan. It is the judgment of the Board that the 2018 Plan is in the best interest of the Company and its stockholders.

Reasons for the Proposal

The Board and the Compensation Committee believe that to enhance long-term stockholder value, the Company needs to maintain competitive employee compensation, incentive, and retention programs. Providing employees and other key contributors an equity stake in the Company's success is a vital component of these programs. The purpose of the 2018 Plan is to attract and retain the services of key employees, key contractors, and outside directors of the Company and its related companies and to provide such persons with a proprietary interest in the Company through the granting of incentive stock options, nonqualified stock options, stock appreciation rights ("SARs"), restricted stock, restricted stock units ("RSUs"), performance awards, dividend equivalent rights, and other awards, whether granted singly, or in combination, or in tandem, that will increase the interest of such persons in the Company's welfare, furnish an incentive to such persons to continue their services for the Company or its related companies and provide a means through which the Company may attract able persons as employees, contractors, and outside directors.

The Board and Compensation Committee further believe that the number of shares of common stock currently available under the 2015 Plan is insufficient to meet the Company's current and future equity compensation needs. Stockholder approval of the 2018 Plan is intended to ensure that the Company has sufficient shares available to attract and retain key employees, key contractors, and outside directors, and to further the Company's growth and development. For a discussion of awards under the 2018 Plan as components of the Company's executive compensation program, please refer to the "Compensation Discussion and Analysis" section.

Background for Requested Share Authorization

The 2018 Plan newly authorizes the issuance of an additional 2,600,000 shares. If the 2018 Plan is approved, the number of shares of the Company's common stock authorized for grant under the 2018 Plan will be equal to the sum of (i) 5,563,134 shares (which reflects the newly authorized shares, plus the 2,963,134 reserved but unissued shares available as of April 2, 2018 under the 2015 Plan), plus (ii) the number of shares subject to awards granted under the 2015 Plan and the Company's Restated 1996 Flexible Stock Incentive Plan (the "1996 Plan") as of April 4, 2016 (collectively, the "Prior Plans") that are outstanding on the Effective Date, and that on or after the Effective Date, are forfeited, expire or are canceled; and (iii) the number of shares subject to awards relating to common stock under the Prior Plans that, on or after the Effective Date are settled in cash ((ii) and (iii) collectively, the "Prior Plan Awards"). If the 2018 Plan is approved by stockholders, the 2015 Plan will terminate and no further awards will be made under the 2015 Plan on or after the Effective Date. As of April 2, 2018, we had the following:

Total shares underlying outstanding options / SARs (including 1996 Plan, 2015 Plan and Inducement Plan (defined below))		3,697,810
Weighted-average exercise price of outstanding options / SARs (including 1996 Plan, 2015 Plan and Inducement Plan)	$	14.54
Weighted-average remaining term of outstanding options / SARs (including 1996 Plan, 2015 Plan and Inducement Plan)		5.18 years
Total shares underlying outstanding unvested full value awards (including 1996 Plan, 2015 Plan and Inducement Plan)		1,159,137
Total shares available for grant (under the 2015 Plan only)		2,963,134
Total shares available under all equity plans (including 2015 Plan and Inducement Plan)		4,134,190

In setting the number of shares authorized for issuance under the 2018 Plan, the Compensation Committee and the Board considered the number of outstanding equity awards and shares available for grant under the 2015 Plan, the Company's historical granting practices and burn rate, and the level of potential dilution that will result from adoption of the 2018 Plan.

In 2015, 2016 and 2017, the Company granted equity awards representing a total of 2,632,182, 6,534,378, and 1,847,795 shares, respectively, as follows:

	2015	2016 [1]	2017
Stock options granted	1,794,763	4,955,954	1,474,266
RSUs granted / performance stock units earned	837,419	1,578,424	373,529
Weighted-average common stock outstanding during the year	40,959,000	41,494,000	44,370,000
Gross burn rate (unadjusted)	6.43%	15.75%	4.16%
Gross burn rate (adjusted) [2]	8.47%	19.55%	5.01%

(1) Includes grants made under our 2016 Inducement Plan (the "Inducement Plan"), which was adopted by our Board of Directors on January 29, 2016 and did not require stockholder approval.

(2) For the purposes of calculating Gross Burn Rate (adjusted), RSU grants are converted to option equivalents at a 2/1 ratio based on the Company's stock price volatility.

The Company's three-year average annual gross burn rate for the period from January 1, 2015 through December 31, 2017 was 11.01% on an adjusted basis and 8.78% on an unadjusted basis. As of April 2, 2018, the number of shares subject to outstanding equity awards plus the number of the shares available for grant under the 2015 Plan, represent 19.8% of the Company's outstanding common stock on a fully diluted basis, which was 46,827,171 shares outstanding as of April 2, 2018. If the 2018 Plan is approved, the potential dilution will be 24.8% based on the shares outstanding as of April 2, 2018. We believe our three-year average annual burn rate and level of potential dilution, assuming the 2018 Plan is approved by stockholders, compare favorably to the Company's industry peers and are lower than the industry thresholds established by certain major proxy advisory firms.

Based on a review of the Company's historical practice, the recent trading price of our common stock, and advice from the Compensation Committee's independent compensation consultant, Meridian Compensation Partners, LLC, the Compensation Committee and the Board currently believe the amounts authorized for issuance under the 2018 Plan will be sufficient to cover awards for at least three years. The Company's future burn rate will depend on a number of factors, including the number of participants in the 2018 Plan, the price per share of our common stock, any changes to our compensation strategy, changes in business practices or industry standards, changes in the compensation practices of our competitors, or changes in compensation practices in the market generally, and the methodology used to establish the equity award mix.

Highlights of the Plan

The 2018 Plan includes several features that are consistent with the interests of the Company's stockholders and sound corporate governance practices, including the following:

- ✓ ***Fungible share pool.*** Shares issued as RSUs and other full-value awards count as 2.0 shares against the number of shares authorized for issuance under the 2018 Plan.
- ✓ ***No recycling of shares or "liberal share counting" practices.*** Shares tendered to the Company or retained by the Company in the exercise or settlement of an award or for tax withholding may not become available again for issuance under the 2018 Plan.
- ✓ ***Minimum Vesting Requirements.*** No Award will vest prior to one-year from its date of grant (subject to a 5% carve-out as described below for "Exempt Shares" and subject to an exception for shares granted directors that vest at the Company's next annual meeting as described below).
- ✓ ***No automatic share replenishment or "evergreen" provision.*** There is no evergreen feature pursuant to which the shares authorized for issuance under the 2018 Plan can be automatically replenished.
- ✓ ***No liberal change in control definition.*** Change in control is triggered only by the occurrence, rather than stockholder approval, of a merger or other change in control event.
- ✓ ***No discounted stock options or SARs.*** All stock options and SARs must be issued with an exercise or grant price at fair market value or above.
- ✓ ***No repricing of stock options or SARs.*** Repricing or other exchanges or buyouts of stock options and SARs are prohibited.
- ✓ ***Awards subject to clawback.*** Awards under the Plan are subject to recoupment as provided in the Company's clawback policy.
- ✓ ***No dividends on stock options, SARs or unvested awards.*** No dividends or dividend equivalents accrue or are payable on stock options or SARs. Dividends and dividend equivalent rights accrue and are payable only when the underlying awards become vested.
- ✓ ***Limit on outside director awards.*** The 2018 Plan establishes a maximum amount of shares (by dollar value) that may be granted to any outside director in any calendar year.
- ✓ ***No tax gross ups.*** The 2018 Plan does not provide for the gross-up of any excise tax liability on 2018 Plan awards.
- ✓ ***No reload options.*** The 2018 Plan does not provide for the grant of reload stock options.

Description of the 2018 Plan

The following is a brief description of the 2018 Plan. A copy of the 2018 Plan is attached as **Appendix A** to this Proxy Statement, and the following description is qualified in its entirety by reference to the 2018 Plan.

Effective Date and Expiration. The 2018 Plan was adopted by the Board of Directors on April 6, 2018, subject to and conditioned upon stockholder approval of the 2018 Plan and to be effective as of the date of stockholder approval. Unless sooner terminated by action of the Board, the 2018 Plan will terminate and expire on the tenth anniversary of the Effective Date, but awards granted before that date will continue to be effective in accordance with their terms and conditions. The 2018 Plan replaces and supersedes the 2015 Plan in its entirety. The 2015 Plan will terminate on the Effective Date, but will continue to apply to awards granted under the 2015 Plan prior to the Effective Date.

Share Authorization. Subject to certain adjustments, the maximum number of shares of common stock that may be delivered pursuant to awards granted under the 2018 Plan is equal to the sum of (i) 5,563,134 shares (which reflects the newly authorized shares, plus the 2,963,134 reserved but unissued shares currently available under the 2015 Plan), plus (ii) the number of shares subject to the Prior Plan Awards. Of the shares of common stock reserved under the 2018 Plan, up to 5,000,000 shares may be delivered pursuant to incentive stock options qualifying under Section 422 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the "IRC"). Shares to be issued may be made available from authorized but unissued shares of common stock, shares of common stock held by the Company in its treasury, or shares of common stock purchased by the Company on the open market or otherwise. During the term of the 2018 Plan, the Company will at all times reserve and keep available the number of shares of common stock that shall be sufficient to satisfy the requirements of the 2018 Plan. The 2018 Plan also provides that no more than 5% of the shares of common stock that may be issued pursuant to an award under the 2018 Plan may be designated as "Exempt Shares." "Exempt Shares" are shares subject to awards that are granted with more favorable vesting provisions than the minimum vesting provisions otherwise required by the 2018 Plan (as described below).

Share Counting and Fungible Pool. If an award under the 2018 Plan (or a Prior Plan Award) is cancelled, forfeited, or expires, in whole or in part, the shares subject to such forfeited, expired, or cancelled award may again be awarded under the 2018 Plan. Awards that may be satisfied either by the issuance of shares of common stock or by cash or other consideration will be counted against the maximum number of shares of common stock that may be issued under the 2018 Plan only during the period that the award is outstanding or to the extent the award is ultimately satisfied by the issuance of shares of common stock. Shares of common stock otherwise deliverable pursuant to an award that are withheld upon exercise or vesting of an award for purposes of paying the exercise price or tax withholdings (including, without limitation, any shares withheld in connection with the exercise of stock-settled SARs) will be treated as delivered to the participant and will be counted against the maximum number of shares of common stock that may be issued under the 2018 Plan. However, such awards will not reduce the number of shares of common stock that may be issued if the settlement of the award will not require the issuance of shares, as, for example, a SAR that can be satisfied only by the payment of cash. Only shares forfeited back to the Company or shares cancelled on account of termination, expiration or lapse of an award will again be available for grant of incentive stock options under the 2018 Plan, but will not increase the maximum number of shares described above as the maximum number of shares of common stock that may be delivered pursuant to incentive stock options.

The aggregate number of shares of common stock available for issuance under the 2018 Plan will be reduced by 2.0 shares for each share delivered in settlement of awards other than stock options or SARs and one share for each share delivered in settlement of stock options or SARs. Any shares of common stock that again become available for issuance under the 2018 Plan will be added back to the 2018 Plan as 2.0 shares if such shares were subject to awards other than stock options or SARs and one share if such shares were subject to stock options or SARs.

Director Award Limits. No outside director may be granted any award or awards which would permit the aggregate fair market value (determined on the date of grant) of awards granted to the outside director during any calendar year to exceed $700,000 plus an additional $700,000 in fair market value (determined on the date of grant) for one-time awards to a newly appointed or elected director. This limit does not apply to any award made pursuant to deferred compensation arrangements in lieu of all or a portion of cash retainers.

Administration. The 2018 Plan will be administered by the Board or such committee of the Board of Directors as is designated by the Board of Directors (the “Committee”). The Committee shall consist of not fewer than two persons. Any member of the Committee may be removed at any time, with or without cause, by resolution of the Board of Directors. Any vacancy occurring in the membership of the Committee may be filled by appointment by the Board of Directors. Membership on the Committee shall be limited to those members of the Board who are “non-employee directors” as defined in Rule 16b-3 promulgated under the Exchange Act. As of the Effective Date, the Board intends for the Compensation Committee to administer the 2018 Plan.

The Board or the Committee may delegate certain duties to one or more officers of the Company as provided in the 2018 Plan. The Committee will interpret the 2018 Plan and award agreements, prescribe, amend, and rescind any rules and regulations, as necessary or appropriate for the administration of the 2018 Plan, establish performance goals for an award and certify the extent of their achievement, and make such other determinations or certifications and take such other action as it deems necessary or advisable in the administration of the 2018 Plan. Any interpretation, determination, or other action made or taken by the Committee shall be final, binding, and conclusive on all interested parties.

Eligibility. Employees (including any employee who is also a director or an officer), contractors, and outside directors of the Company or its related companies whose judgment, initiative and efforts contributed to or may be expected to contribute to the successful performance of the Company and its related companies are eligible to participate in the 2018 Plan. As of April 2, 2018, the Company and its related companies had approximately 493 employees, 4,011 contractors, and 7 outside directors. The Committee is empowered, in its sole discretion, to select the employees, contractors, and directors who will participate in the 2018 Plan.

Financial Effect of Awards. The Company will receive no monetary consideration for the granting of awards under the 2018 Plan, unless otherwise provided when granting restricted stock or RSUs. The Company will receive no monetary consideration other than the option price for shares of common stock issued to participants upon the exercise of their stock options and the Company will receive no monetary consideration upon the exercise of stock appreciation rights.

Stock Options. The Committee may grant either incentive stock options qualifying under IRC Section 422 or non-qualified stock options, provided that only employees of the Company and its subsidiaries (excluding subsidiaries that

are not corporations) are eligible to receive incentive stock options. Stock options may not be granted with an option price less than 100% of the fair market value of a share of common stock on the date the stock option is granted. If an incentive stock option is granted to an employee who owns or is deemed to own more than 10% of the combined voting power of all classes of stock of the Company (or any parent or subsidiary), the option price must be at least 110% of the fair market value of a share of common stock on the date of grant. The Committee will determine the terms of each stock option at the time of grant, including, without limitation, the methods by or forms in which shares will be delivered to participants. The maximum term of each option, the times at which each option will be exercisable, and provisions requiring forfeiture of unexercised options at or following termination of employment or service generally are fixed by the Committee, except that the Committee may not grant stock options with a term exceeding 10 years or, in the case of an incentive stock option granted to an employee who owns or is deemed to own more than 10% of the combined voting power of all classes of stock of the Company (or any parent or subsidiary), five years. In addition, no dividends or dividend equivalent rights may be paid or granted with respect to any stock options granted under the 2018 Plan.

Recipients of stock options may pay the option exercise price (i) in cash; (ii) by wire transfer or check acceptable to the Company; (iii) if permitted by the Committee, having the Company withhold shares of common stock that would otherwise be issued on exercise of the stock option that have an aggregate fair market value equal to the aggregate option price of the shares being purchased; (iv) if permitted by the Committee, tendering (either actually or, so long as the shares are registered under Section 12(b) or 12(g) of the Exchange Act, by attestation) shares of common stock owned by the participant that have an aggregate fair market value equal to the aggregate option price of the shares being purchased; (v) unless the Committee determines otherwise and so long as the shares are registered under Section 12(b) or 12(g) of the Exchange Act, and to the extent permitted by law, by delivery of irrevocable instructions to a brokerage firm designated or approved by the Company to sell certain of the shares of common stock purchased upon the exercise of the option and to promptly deliver to the Company the amount of proceeds to pay the aggregate option price of the shares being purchased; or (vi) such other consideration as the Committee may permit, in its sole discretion.

Stock Appreciation Rights. The Committee is authorized to grant SARs as a stand-alone award, or freestanding SARs, or in conjunction with stock options granted under the 2018 Plan, or tandem SARs. A SAR is the right to receive an amount equal to the excess of the fair market value of a share of common stock on the date of exercise over the exercise price. The exercise price may be equal to or greater than the fair market value of a share of common stock on the date of grant. The Committee, in its sole discretion, may place a ceiling on the amount payable on the exercise of a SAR, but any such limitation shall be specified at the time the SAR is granted. A SAR granted in tandem with a stock option will require the holder, upon exercise, to surrender the related stock option with respect to the number of shares as to which the SAR is exercised. The Committee will determine the terms of each SAR at the time of the grant, including, without limitation, the methods by or forms in which the value will be delivered to participants (whether made in shares of common stock, in cash or in a combination of both). The maximum term of each SAR, the times at which each SAR will be exercisable, and provisions requiring forfeiture of unexercised SARs at or following termination of employment or service generally are fixed by the Committee, except that no freestanding SAR may have a term exceeding 10 years and no tandem SAR may have a term exceeding the term of the option granted in conjunction with the tandem SAR. In addition, no dividends or dividend equivalent rights may be paid or granted with respect to any SARs granted under the 2018 Plan.

Restricted Stock and RSUs. The Committee is authorized to grant restricted stock and RSUs. Restricted stock consists of shares that are transferred or sold by the Company to a participant, but are subject to substantial risk of forfeiture and to restrictions on their sale or other transfer by the participant. RSUs are the right to receive shares of common stock at a future date in accordance with the terms of such grant upon the attainment of certain conditions specified by the Committee, which include substantial risk of forfeiture and restrictions on their sale or other transfer by the participant. The Committee determines the eligible participants to whom, and the time or times at which, grants of restricted stock or restricted stock units will be made, the number of shares or units to be granted, the price to be paid, if any, the time or times within which the shares covered by such grants will be subject to forfeiture, the time or times at which the restrictions will terminate, and all other terms and conditions of the grants. Restrictions or conditions could include, but are not limited to, the attainment of performance goals (as described below), continuous service with the Company, the passage of time or other restrictions or conditions; provided that, if the right to receive dividends is awarded, then (A) any cash dividends and stock dividends with respect to a restricted stock award shall be withheld by the Company for the participant's account, and interest may be credited on the amount of the cash dividends withheld at a rate and subject to such terms as determined by the Committee; and (B) such cash dividends or stock dividends so withheld by the Company and attributable to any particular share of restricted stock (and earnings thereon, if applicable) shall be distributed to such participant in cash or, at the discretion of the Committee, in shares of common

stock having a fair market value equal to the amount of such dividends, if applicable, upon the release of restrictions on such share and, if such share is forfeited, the participant shall will also forfeit the right to dividends attributable to such forfeited share. The value of the RSUs may be paid in shares of common stock, cash, or a combination of both, as determined by the Committee.

Performance Awards. The Committee may grant performance awards payable in cash, shares of common stock, or a combination thereof at the end of a specified performance period. Payment will be contingent upon achieving pre-established performance goals (as discussed below) by the end of the performance period. The Committee will determine the length of the performance period, the maximum payment value of an award, and the minimum performance goals required before payment will be made, so long as such provisions are not inconsistent with the terms of the 2018 Plan, and to the extent an award is subject to IRC Section 409A, are in compliance with the applicable requirements of IRC Section 409A and any applicable regulations or guidance. If the Committee determines in its sole discretion that the established performance measures or objectives are no longer suitable because of a change in the Company's business, operations, corporate structure, or for other reasons that the Committee deems satisfactory, the Committee may modify the performance measures or objectives and/or the performance period. Subject to Committee discretion, a performance award will terminate for all purposes if the participant is not continuously employed by the Company at all times during the applicable performance period.

Other Awards. The Committee may grant other forms of awards payable in cash or shares of common stock if the Committee determines that another form of award is consistent with the purpose and restrictions of the 2018 Plan. The terms and conditions of such other form of award will be specified by the grant. Such other awards may be granted for no cash consideration, for such minimum consideration as may be required by applicable law or for such other consideration as may be specified by the grant.

Dividend Equivalent Rights. The Committee may grant a dividend equivalent right either as a component of another award (to the extent permitted under the 2018 Plan) or as a separate award. The terms and conditions of the dividend equivalent right will be specified by the grant and, when granted as a component of another award, may have terms and conditions different from such other award; provided, however, that (i) any dividend equivalent rights with respect to such other award will be withheld by the Company for a participant's account until such other award is vested, subject to such terms as determined by the Committee; and (ii) such dividend equivalent rights so withheld and attributable to another award will be distributed to such participant in cash or, at the discretion of the Committee, in shares of common stock having a fair market value equal to the amount of such dividend equivalent rights, if applicable, upon vesting of the other award and, if such other award is forfeited, the right to dividend equivalent rights attributable to such forfeited award will also be forfeited. No dividend equivalent right may be paid or granted with respect to any stock option or SAR. Dividend equivalents granted as a separate award may also be paid currently or may be deemed to be reinvested in additional shares of common stock. Any such reinvestment will be at the fair market value at the time thereof. Dividend equivalent rights may be settled in cash or shares of common stock.

Performance Goals. Awards of restricted stock, RSUs, performance awards, and other awards (whether relating to cash or shares of common stock) under the 2018 Plan may be made subject to the attainment of performance goals relating to one or more business criteria which, where applicable, may consist of one or more or any combination of the following criteria: cash flow (including, but not limited to, operating cash flow, free cash flow or cash flow return on capital); cost; working capital; earnings (and any variations thereon, including, without limitation, earnings before interest and taxes; earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation and amortization; earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation, amortization, and stock-based compensation or other similar expenses; operating earnings); earnings per share; book value per share; share price; operating income (including or excluding depreciation, amortization, extraordinary items, restructuring charges or other expenses); revenues (and any variations thereon, including, without limitation, gross revenues; net revenues; revenues from products); expenses (and any variations thereon); assets under management; fees based on assets under management; monetized units or products; sales (and any variations thereon); operating margins; gross margins; return on assets; return on equity; debt; debt plus equity; credit quality or debt ratings; profit (and any variations thereon) market or economic value added; stock price appreciation; total stockholder return; cost control; strategic initiatives; market share; net income; return on invested capital; improvements in capital structure; capital expenditures; operational improvements; or customer satisfaction, employee satisfaction, services performance, subscriber, cash management or asset management metrics; the accomplishment of mergers, acquisitions, dispositions, public offerings or similar extraordinary business transactions; inventory levels, inventory turn or shrinkage; or total return to stockholders ("Performance Criteria"). Any Performance Criteria may include or exclude (i) events that are of an unusual nature or indicate infrequency of occurrence; (ii) gains or losses acquisitions or divestitures, (iii) asset write-downs; (iv) litigation or claim judgments or settlements; (v) foreign exchange gains and losses; (vi) impairments; (vi) changes in tax or accounting regulations or laws, (vii) the effect of a merger or acquisition,

any reorganization or restructuring programs; or (viii) other similar occurrences. In all other respects, Performance Criteria are to be calculated in accordance with the Company's financial statements, under generally accepted accounting principles, or under a methodology established by the Committee prior to the issuance of an award which is consistently applied and identified in the audited financial statements, including footnotes, or the Compensation Discussion and Analysis section of the Company's proxy statement as incorporated by reference to the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K.

Vesting of Awards; Forfeiture; Assignment. Except as otherwise provided below, the Committee, in its sole discretion, may determine that an award will be immediately vested in whole or in part, or that all or any portion may not be vested until a date, or dates, subsequent to its date of grant, or until the occurrence of one or more specified events, subject in any case to the terms of the 2018 Plan. Except to the extent an award is for Exempt Shares, no awards granted by the Committee nor any portion of an award (even on a pro rata basis) may vest earlier than one (1) year after the date of grant; provided, however, with respect to grants of awards made on the date of an annual stockholders meeting to outside directors, such one (1) year vesting period shall be deemed satisfied if such awards vest on the earlier of the first anniversary of the date of grant of such award or the first annual stockholders meeting following the date of grant. The Committee may not accelerate the date on which all or any portion of an award may be vested or waive the period an award is restricted on a full value award except upon the participant's death, "total and permanent disability," retirement, or a "change in control" (as such terms are defined in the 2018 Plan). Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Committee may, in its sole discretion, grant awards with more favorable vesting provisions at any time, provided that the shares of common stock subject to such awards will be designated as Exempt Shares. As discussed above, only 5% of the shares of common stock that may be issued pursuant to an award under the 2018 Plan may be designated as Exempt Shares.

The Committee may impose on any award, at the time of grant or thereafter, such additional terms and conditions as the Committee determines, including terms requiring forfeiture of awards in the event of a participant's termination of service. The Committee will specify the circumstances under which performance awards may be forfeited in the event of a termination of service by a participant prior to the end of a performance period or settlement of awards. Except as otherwise determined by the Committee, restricted stock will be forfeited upon a participant's termination of service during the applicable restriction period.

Awards granted under the 2018 Plan generally are not assignable or transferable except by will or by the laws of descent and distribution, except that the Committee may, in its discretion and pursuant to the terms of an award agreement, permit certain transfers of nonqualified stock options or SARs to: (i) the spouse (or former spouse), children, or grandchildren of the participant ("Immediate Family Members"); (ii) a trust or trusts for the exclusive benefit of such Immediate Family Members; (iii) a partnership in which the only partners are (1) such Immediate Family Members and/or (2) entities which are controlled by Immediate Family Members; (iv) an entity exempt from federal income tax pursuant to IRC Section 501(c)(3) or any successor provision; or (v) a split interest trust or pooled income fund described in IRC Section 2522(c)(2) or any successor provision, provided that (x) there is no consideration for any such transfer, (y) the applicable award agreement pursuant to which such award is granted must be approved by the Committee and must expressly provide for such transferability, and (z) subsequent transfers of transferred awards will be prohibited except those by will or the laws of descent and distribution.

Adjustments Upon Changes in Capitalization. In the event that any dividend or other distribution, recapitalization, stock split, reverse stock split, rights offering, reorganization, merger, consolidation, split-up, spin-off, split-off, combination, subdivision, repurchase, or exchange of the shares of common stock or other securities of the Company, issuance of warrants or other rights to purchase shares of common stock or other securities of the Company, or other similar corporate transaction or event affects the fair value of an award, then the Committee will adjust any or all of the following so that the fair value of the award immediately after the transaction or event is equal to the fair value of the award immediately prior to the transaction or event (i) the number of shares and type of common stock (or the securities or property) which thereafter may be made the subject of awards, (ii) the number of shares and type of shares of common stock (or other securities or property) subject to outstanding awards, (iii) the option price of each outstanding award, (iv) the amount, if any, the Company pays for forfeited shares of common stock in accordance with the terms of the 2018 Plan, and (v) the number of or exercise price of shares of common stock then subject to outstanding SARs previously granted and unexercised under the 2018 Plan, to the end that the same proportion of the Company's issued and outstanding shares of common stock in each instance will remain subject to exercise at the same aggregate exercise price; provided however, that the number of shares of common stock (or other securities or property) subject to any award will always be a whole number. Notwithstanding the foregoing, no such adjustment will be made or authorized to the extent that such adjustment would cause the 2018 Plan or any stock option to violate IRC Section

422 or IRC Section 409A. All such adjustments must be made in accordance with the rules of any securities exchange, stock market, or stock quotation system to which the Company is subject.

Amendment or Discontinuance of the 2018 Plan. The Board may, at any time and from time to time, without the consent of the participants, alter, amend, revise, suspend, or discontinue the 2018 Plan in whole or in part; provided, however, that (i) no amendment that requires stockholder approval in order for the 2018 Plan and any awards under the 2018 Plan to continue to comply with IRC Sections 421 and 422 (including any successors to such sections, or other applicable law) or any applicable requirements of any securities exchange or inter-dealer quotation system on which the Company's stock is listed or traded, will be effective unless such amendment is approved by the requisite vote of the Company's stockholders entitled to vote on the amendment; and (ii) unless required by law, no action by the Board regarding amendment or discontinuance of the 2018 Plan may adversely affect any rights of any participants or obligations of the Company to any participants with respect to any outstanding award under the 2018 Plan without the consent of the affected participant.

No Repricing of Stock Options or SARs. The Committee may not "reprice" any stock option or SAR. For purposes of the 2018 Plan, "reprice" means any of the following or any other action that has the same effect: (i) amending a stock option or SAR to reduce its exercise price or base price, (ii) canceling a stock option or SAR at a time when its exercise price or base price exceeds the fair market value of a share of common stock in exchange for cash or a stock option, SAR, award of restricted stock or other equity award, or (iii) taking any other action that is treated as a repricing under generally accepted accounting principles, provided that nothing will prevent the Committee from (x) making adjustments to awards upon changes in capitalization, (y) exchanging or cancelling awards upon a merger, consolidation, or recapitalization, or (z) substituting awards for awards granted by other entities, to the extent permitted by the 2018 Plan.

Recoupment for Restatements. The Committee may recoup all or any portion of any shares or cash paid to a participant in connection with an award, as set forth in the Company's clawback policy, if any, approved by the Board from time to time.

Federal Income Tax Consequences

The following is a brief summary of certain federal income tax consequences relating to the transactions described under the 2018 Plan as set forth below. This summary does not purport to address all aspects of federal income taxation and does not describe state, local, or foreign tax consequences. This discussion is based upon provisions of the IRC and the treasury regulations issued thereunder, and judicial and administrative interpretations under the IRC and treasury regulations, all as in effect as of the date hereof, and all of which are subject to change (possibly on a retroactive basis) or different interpretation.

Law Affecting Deferred Compensation. In 2004, IRC Section 409A was added to regulate all types of deferred compensation. If the requirements of IRC Section 409A are not satisfied, deferred compensation and earnings thereon will be subject to tax as they vest, plus an interest charge at the underpayment rate plus 1% and a 20% penalty tax. Certain performance awards, stock options, stock appreciation rights, RSUs, and certain types of restricted stock are subject to IRC Section 409A. The Company intends that awards granted under the 2018 Plan comply with, or otherwise be exempt from, IRC Section 409A, but make no representation or warranty to that effect.

Incentive Stock Options. A participant will not recognize income at the time an incentive stock option is granted. When a participant exercises an incentive stock option, a participant also generally will not be required to recognize income (either as ordinary income or capital gain). However, to the extent that the fair market value (determined as of the date of grant) of the shares of common stock with respect to which the participant's incentive stock options are exercisable for the first time during any year exceeds $100,000, the incentive stock options for the shares of common stock over $100,000 will be treated as non-qualified stock options, and not incentive stock options, for federal tax purposes, and the participant will recognize income as if the incentive stock options were non-qualified stock options. In addition to the foregoing, if the fair market value of the shares of common stock received upon exercise of an incentive stock option exceeds the exercise price, then the excess may be deemed a tax preference adjustment for purposes of the federal alternative minimum tax calculation. The federal alternative minimum tax may produce significant tax repercussions depending upon the participant's particular tax status.

The tax treatment of any shares of common stock acquired by exercise of an incentive stock option will depend upon whether the participant disposes of his or her shares prior to two years after the date the incentive stock option was granted or one year after the shares of common stock were transferred to the participant (referred to as the "Holding

Period"). If a participant disposes of shares of common stock acquired by exercise of an incentive stock option after the expiration of the Holding Period, any amount received in excess of the participant's tax basis for such shares will be treated as short-term or long-term capital gain, depending upon how long the participant has held the shares of common stock. If the amount received is less than the participant's tax basis for such shares, the loss will be treated as short-term or long-term capital loss, depending upon how long the participant has held the shares.

If the participant disposes of shares of common stock acquired by exercise of an incentive stock option prior to the expiration of the Holding Period, the disposition will be considered a "disqualifying disposition." If the amount received for the shares of common stock is greater than the fair market value of the shares of common stock on the exercise date, then the difference between the incentive stock option's exercise price and the fair market value of the shares of common stock at the time of exercise will be treated as ordinary income for the tax year in which the "disqualifying disposition" occurs. The participant's basis in the shares of common stock will be increased by an amount equal to the amount treated as ordinary income due to such "disqualifying disposition." In addition, the amount received in such "disqualifying disposition" over the participant's increased basis in the shares of common stock will be treated as capital gain. However, if the price received for shares of common stock acquired by exercise of an incentive stock option is less than the fair market value of the shares of common stock on the exercise date and the disposition is a transaction in which the participant sustains a loss which otherwise would be recognizable under the IRC, then the amount of ordinary income that the participant will recognize is the excess, if any, of the amount realized on the "disqualifying disposition" over the basis of the shares of common stock.

Non-qualified Stock Options. A participant generally will not recognize income at the time a non-qualified stock option is granted. When a participant exercises a non-qualified stock option, the difference between the option price and any higher market value of the shares of common stock on the date of exercise will be treated as compensation taxable as ordinary income to the participant. The participant's tax basis for shares of common stock acquired under a non-qualified stock option will be equal to the option price paid for such shares of common stock, plus any amounts included in the participant's income as compensation. When a participant disposes of shares of common stock acquired by exercise of a non-qualified stock option, any amount received in excess of the participant's tax basis for such shares will be treated as short-term or long-term capital gain, depending upon how long the participant has held the shares of common stock. If the amount received is less than the participant's tax basis for such shares, the loss will be treated as short-term or long-term capital loss, depending upon how long the participant has held the shares.

Special Rule if Option Price is Paid for in Shares of Common Stock. If a participant pays the option price of a non-qualified stock option with previously-owned shares of common stock and the transaction is not a disqualifying disposition of shares previously acquired under an incentive stock option, the shares of common stock received equal to the number of shares surrendered are treated as having been received in a tax-free exchange. The participant's tax basis and holding period for these shares received will be equal to the participant's tax basis and holding period for the shares surrendered. The shares of common stock received in excess of the number of shares surrendered will be treated as compensation taxable as ordinary income to the participant to the extent of their fair market value. The participant's tax basis in these shares will be equal to their fair market value on the date of exercise, and the participant's holding period for such shares will begin on the date of exercise.

If the use of previously acquired shares of common stock to pay the exercise price of a non-qualified stock option constitutes a disqualifying disposition of shares previously acquired under an incentive stock option, the participant will have ordinary income as a result of the disqualifying disposition in an amount equal to the excess of the fair market value of the shares of common stock surrendered, determined at the time such shares were originally acquired on exercise of the incentive stock option, over the aggregate option price paid for such shares. As discussed above, a disqualifying disposition of shares of common stock previously acquired under an incentive stock option occurs when the participant disposes of such shares before the end of the Holding Period. The other tax results from paying the exercise price with previously-owned shares are as described above, except that the participant's tax basis in the shares that are treated as having been received in a tax-free exchange will be increased by the amount of ordinary income recognized by the participant as a result of the disqualifying disposition.

Restricted Stock. A participant who receives restricted stock generally will recognize as ordinary income the excess, if any, of the fair market value of the shares of common stock granted as restricted stock at such time as the shares are no longer subject to forfeiture or restrictions, over the amount paid, if any, by the participant for such shares. However, a participant who receives restricted stock may make an election under IRC Section 83(b) within 30 days of the date of transfer of the shares of common stock to recognize ordinary income on the date of transfer of the shares equal to the excess of the fair market value of such shares (determined without regard to the restrictions on such shares) over the purchase price, if any, of such shares. If a participant does not make an election under IRC Section

83(b), then the participant will recognize as ordinary income any dividends received with respect to such shares. At the time of sale of such shares, any gain or loss realized by the participant will be treated as either short-term or long-term capital gain (or loss) depending on the holding period. For purposes of determining any gain or loss realized, the participant's tax basis will be the amount previously taxable as ordinary income, plus the purchase price paid by the participant, if any, for such shares.

Stock Appreciation Rights. Generally, a participant who receives a stand-alone SAR will not recognize taxable income at the time the stand-alone SAR is granted, provided that the SAR is exempt from or complies with IRC Section 409A. If a participant receives the appreciation inherent in the SARs in cash, the cash will be taxed as ordinary income to the recipient at the time it is received. If a participant receives the appreciation inherent in the SARs in stock, the spread between the then current market value and the grant price, if any, will be taxed as ordinary income to the participant at the time it is received. In general, there will be no federal income tax deduction allowed to the Company upon the grant or termination of SARs. However, upon the exercise of a SAR, the Company will be entitled to a deduction equal to the amount of ordinary income the recipient is required to recognize as a result of the exercise.

Other Awards. In the case of an award of RSUs, performance awards, dividend equivalent rights or other stock or cash awards, the recipient will generally recognize ordinary income in an amount equal to any cash received and the fair market value of any shares received on the date of payment or delivery, provided that the award is exempt from or complies with IRC Section 409A. In that taxable year, the Company will receive a federal income tax deduction in an amount equal to the ordinary income which the participant has recognized.

Federal Tax Withholding. Any ordinary income realized by a participant upon the exercise of an award under the 2018 Plan is subject to withholding of federal, state, and local income tax and to withholding of the participant's share of tax under the Federal Insurance Contribution Act and the Federal Unemployment Tax Act. To satisfy federal income tax withholding requirements, the Company and its related companies will have the right to require that, as a condition to the issuance of any shares of common stock, the participant remit to the Company an amount sufficient to satisfy the withholding requirements. Alternatively, the Company may withhold a portion of the shares of common stock (valued at fair market value) that otherwise would be issued to the participant to satisfy all or part of the withholding tax obligations or may, if the Company consents, accept delivery of shares of common stock with an aggregate fair market value that equals or exceeds the required tax withholding payment.

Withholding does not represent an increase in the participant's total income tax obligation, since it is fully credited toward his or her tax liability for the year. Additionally, withholding does not affect the participant's tax basis in the shares of common stock. Compensation income realized and tax withheld will be reflected on Forms W-2 supplied by the Company to employees by January 31 of the succeeding year. Deferred compensation that is subject to IRC Section 409A will be subject to certain federal income tax withholding and reporting requirements.

Tax Consequences to the Company. To the extent that a participant recognizes ordinary income in the circumstances described above, the Company will be entitled to a corresponding deduction provided that, among other things, the income meets the test of reasonableness, is an ordinary and necessary business expense, is not an "excess parachute payment" within the meaning of IRC Section 280G and is not disallowed by the $1,000,000 limitation on certain executive compensation under IRC Section 162(m).

Million Dollar Deduction Limit and Other Tax Matters. Following the recent enactment of the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act in late 2017, the Company may not deduct compensation of more than $1,000,000 (including performance-based compensation, unless grandfathered as described below) that is paid to "covered employees" (as defined in IRC Section 162(m)), which include an individual (or, in certain circumstances, his or her beneficiaries) who, at any time during the taxable year, is the Company's principal executive officer, principal financial officer, an individual who is among the three highest compensated officers for the taxable year (other than an individual who was either the Company's principal executive officer or its principal financial officer at any time during the taxable year), or anyone who was a covered employee for purposes of IRC Section 162(m) for any tax year beginning on or after January 1, 2017. This limitation on deductions only applies to compensation paid by a publicly-traded corporation (and not compensation paid by non-corporate entities) and may not apply to certain types of compensation, such as qualified performance-based compensation, that is payable pursuant to a written, binding contract (such as an award agreement corresponding to a Prior Plan Award) that was in place as of November 2, 2017, so long as the contract is not materially modified after that date. To the extent that compensation is payable pursuant to a Prior Plan Award on or before November 2, 2017, and if the Company determines that IRC Section 162(m) will apply to any such awards, the Company intends that the terms of those awards will not be materially modified and will be constructed so as to constitute qualified

performance-based compensation and, as such, will be exempt from the $1,000,000 limitation on deductible compensation.

If an individual's rights under the 2018 Plan are accelerated as a result of a change in control and the individual is a "disqualified individual" under IRC Section 280G, the value of any such accelerated rights received by such individual may be included in determining whether or not such individual has received an "excess parachute payment" under IRC Section 280G, which could result in (i) the imposition of a 20% federal excise tax (in addition to federal income tax) payable by the individual on the value of such accelerated rights, and (ii) the loss by the Company of a compensation deduction.

Interest of Directors and Executive Officers

All members of the Board and all executive officers of the Company are eligible for awards under the 2018 Plan and thus, have a personal interest in the approval of the 2018 Plan.

Plan Benefits

All awards to employees, officers, contractors and outside directors under the 2018 Plan are made at the discretion of the Committee. No awards may be made under the 2018 Plan until on or after the Effective Date. Therefore, the future benefits and amounts that will be received or allocated to such individuals under the 2018 Plan are not determinable at this time.

The closing sale price of a share of the Company's common stock on the NASDAQ Global Select Market ("NASDAQ") on April 2, 2018 was $24.50 per share.

Vote Required

The proposal to approve the Blucora, Inc. 2018 Long-Term Incentive Plan requires the affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the shares of common stock present, in person or by proxy, and entitled to vote on the proposal.

THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS UNANIMOUSLY RECOMMENDS A VOTE "FOR" PROPOSAL FOUR

EQUITY COMPENSATION PLANS

Our stockholders have approved the 2015 Plan, the 1996 Plan, and the Blucora, Inc. 2016 Employee Stock Purchase Plan (the "2016 ESPP"). Our Board of Directors adopted the Inducement Plan on January 29, 2016, which did not require stockholder approval under NASDAQ rules. The terms and conditions of the Inducement Plan are substantially similar to those of the 2015 Plan, except that under the Inducement Plan, 2,400,000 shares are authorized for issuance, eligibility is limited to newly hired employees, incentive stock options may not be granted, and the Inducement Plan is not subject to stockholder approval. The 1996 Plan is now terminated and no additional equity grants may be made under that plan.

Each plan is described under "Note 11: Stockholders' Equity" in the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements included in Part II, Item 8 of our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2017.

The table below sets forth information regarding outstanding awards and shares available for future issuance under the Company's equity compensation plans as of December 31, 2017.

Plan category	(a) Number of securities to be issued upon exercise of outstanding options, warrants, and rights	(b) Weighted-average exercise price of outstanding options, warrants, and rights [1]	(c) Number of securities remaining available for future issuance under equity compensation plans (excluding securities reflected in column (a))
Equity compensation plans approved by stockholders	3,747,116 [2]	$ 14.08	4,889,450 [3]
Equity compensation plans not approved by stockholders	972,983 [4]	$ 9.46	1,132,776 [5]
Total	4,720,099	$ 13.13	6,022,226

(1) Consists of the weighted-average exercise price of outstanding options, as outstanding RSUs do not have an exercise price.

(2) Consists of 3,023,516 shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of outstanding options and 723,600 shares of common stock issuable upon vesting of RSUs under the 2015 Plan and 1996 Plan.

(3) Includes 4,027,730 shares available for future grant under the 2015 Plan and 861,599 shares available for future grant under the 2016 ESPP. For the most current offering period that ended on January 31, 2018, 36,314 shares were issued under the 2016 ESPP. The 1996 Plan was terminated for purposes of future grants in May 2015. Does not include shares available for grant under the 2016 Inducement Plan.

(4) Consists of 782,406 shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of outstanding options and 190,577 shares of common stock issuable upon vesting of RSUs under the 2016 Inducement Plan.

(5) Includes shares available for future grant under the 2016 Inducement Plan.

PROPOSAL FIVE
APPROVAL OF AMENDMENT TO THE BLUCORA, INC. RESTATED CERTIFICATE OF INCORPORATION

Currently, our Restated Certificate of Incorporation, dated August 10, 2012 (as amended, the "Certificate of Incorporation"), provides that the Board shall be composed of not less than five nor more than nine directors, with the specific number to be set by resolution of the Board. If Proposal Five is approved by the Company's stockholders at the annual meeting, the Board will continue to have the authority to set the exact number of directors, but the range will be expanded from the current range of five to nine directors to a range of six to 15 directors (the "Charter Amendment").

The general description of the proposed Charter Amendment set forth in these Proposals is qualified in its entirety by reference to the text of the Charter Amendment, which is attached as **Appendix B** to this Proxy Statement. Additions to our Certificate of Incorporation are indicated by bolded underlined text and deletions are indicated by strike-outs.

Reasons for the Charter Amendment

The Board determined that it was advisable and in the best interests of the Company and its stockholders to increase both the minimum and maximum number of directors that may serve on the Board. Although the Board has no current intention to increase the size of the Board to more than nine directors, the Board believes that it is important to have the flexibility to adjust the size of the Board to meet changing circumstances and the needs of the Company without seeking an amendment to the Certificate of Incorporation. In making this decision, the Board concluded that fixing a range of between six and 15 directors would ensure that the Company has a sufficient number of directors to provide effective oversight of the Company and comply with best corporate governance practices while also preventing the Board from becoming so large that it becomes inefficient and the decision making process is hindered.

Effective Time of the Charter Amendment

If Proposal Five is approved by our stockholders, it will become effective when the Company files the Charter Amendment with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware, which the Company intends to do promptly following the annual meeting. However, notwithstanding the approval of the Charter Amendment, the Board will have the sole authority to elect whether and when to amend the Certificate of Incorporation. If the Company's stockholders do not approve Proposal Five, the current limitations on Board size contained in the Certificate of Incorporation will be maintained.

Vote Required

The approval of the Charter Amendment will require the affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the outstanding shares entitled to vote at the annual meeting.

THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS UNANIMOUSLY RECOMMENDS A VOTE "FOR" PROPOSAL FIVE

INFORMATION REGARDING THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS

Director Information

Our Board of Directors is currently comprised of eight members. In addition, the Board of Directors' committee structure currently consists of three principal committees that are all comprised of independent directors: the Audit Committee, the Compensation Committee and the Nominating and Governance Committee. The Board may also convene other ad hoc or sub-committees, the composition, number, and membership of which the Board of Directors may revise from time to time, as appropriate.

The following table lists each of our current directors and sets forth the information about each of the committees of the Board of Directors:

Directors and Board Committees as of April 9, 2018
(M = Committee Member; C = Committee Chair)

Director	Audit Committee	Compensation Committee	Nominating and Governance Committee
Steven Aldrich			M
William L. Atwell (Chair)	M		
John S. Clendening*			
Lance G. Dunn	M		
H. McIntyre Gardner		C	
Georganne C. Proctor	C	M	
Christopher W. Walters			C
Mary S. Zappone		M	M

* Mr. Clendening is our only director who is not independent because he serves as our President and CEO.

The Board of Directors has general oversight responsibility for the Company's affairs and, in exercising its fiduciary duties, the Board represents and acts on behalf of the stockholders. Although the Board does not have responsibility for the Company's day-to-day management, it stays regularly informed about the Company's business and provides oversight and guidance to management through periodic meetings and other communications. The Board is significantly involved in, among other things, the Company's strategic planning process, leadership development, and succession planning, as well as other functions carried out through the Board committees as described below.

2017 Board of Directors Transition

During 2017, our Board underwent the following membership changes. Effective February 28, 2017, the Board appointed William L. Atwell (Chair) and H. McIntyre Gardner as Class I and Class II directors, respectively, to fill the vacancies created as a result of the retirement of John Cunningham and David Chung. Steven Hooper retired from the Board following our 2017 annual meeting of stockholders and Andrew Snyder did not to stand for re-election at the 2017 annual meeting. Georganne C. Proctor was elected as a Class III director to fill the vacancy left by Andrew Snyder, and Steven Aldrich was appointed as a Class II director in order to fill the vacancy created by Mr. Hooper. When Ms. Huebner retired from our Board on August 10, 2017, the Board reduced the Board size from nine to eight members rather than filling the vacancy at that time. The Company and the Board express their deepest gratitude to Messrs. Cunningham, Chung, Hooper and Snyder and Ms. Huebner for their years of dedicated service.

We believe that the experience and qualifications of each of our new Board members will provide valuable assistance to the Board and the Company as it continues its transformation into a technology-enabled financial solutions company and seeks to meet its strategic growth initiatives.

Director Nominees and Continuing Directors

Information regarding our Director Nominees is included under "Proposal One—Election of Directors." Information regarding our Class II and Class III directors who are not up for election is described below.

Qualifications

The descriptions below and the information under "Proposal One—Election of Directors" includes a brief discussion of the specific experience, qualifications, attributes, and skills that led to the conclusion that each of the directors and nominees should continue to serve on the Board of Directors.

The Board of Directors nominates candidates for election after receiving recommendations from the Nominating and Governance Committee, which bases its recommendations on the criteria set forth in the Director Nomination Policy described below under "Director Nomination Process." The Board of Directors believes that the directors and nominees have an appropriate balance of knowledge, experience, attributes, skills, and expertise as a whole to ensure the Board of Directors appropriately satisfies its oversight responsibilities and acts in the best interests of stockholders. In light of the Company's transformation into a technology enabled financial solutions company, the Board of Directors will continue to assess the skills and qualifications of its members.

Class II Directors - Terms expiring in 2019

The names of the continuing Class II directors whose terms expire in 2019, and certain information about them are set forth below:

Name of Director	Age	Positions with Blucora	Director Since
Steven Aldrich	48	Director	2017
William L. Atwell	67	Chairman	2017
Christopher W. Walters	44	Director	2014

Steven Aldrich was appointed to the Board of Directors on June 1, 2017. Mr. Aldrich has served as the Chief Product Officer at GoDaddy, Inc. ("GoDaddy") since January 2016, and he previously served as Senior Vice President, Business Applications beginning in July 2012. Before joining GoDaddy in 2012, Mr. Aldrich served in various senior management roles at Intuit, Inc., a business and financial software company, from 1996 through 2008, including Vice President of Strategy and Innovation for the small business division. Mr. Aldrich also served as Chief Executive Officer of Outright Inc., a bookkeeping and accounting service, from 2011 to 2012, when it was acquired by GoDaddy, and as Chief Executive Officer of Posit Science Corporation, a software and services company, from 2008 to 2011. Mr. Aldrich holds a Bachelor of Arts in Physics from the University of North Carolina and an M.B.A. from Stanford University.

Relevant Qualifications and Experience: Mr. Aldrich has extensive product management experience from his years of serving in senior management positions that provides him with unique experience in operations, strategy, company growth, and management. He also has significant experience with consumer and small business software-as-a-service businesses, which the Board believes will provide valuable assistance to the Board and the Company as it continues its transformation into a technology enabled financial solutions company and seeks to meet its strategic growth initiatives.

William L. Atwell was appointed as Chairman of the Board on March 1, 2017. Mr. Atwell has been Managing Director of Atwell Partners, LLC, a financial services consulting firm, since June 2012. From September 2008 to May 2012, Mr. Atwell was President of Cigna International, a global financial services company. Prior to 2008, Mr. Atwell held senior executive positions with Charles Schwab & Co., Inc. and Citigroup, Inc. Mr. Atwell currently serves as a director of Webster Financial Corporation, a NYSE listed commercial banking company, as an independent trustee of AQR Mutual Funds (AQR Capital Management, LLC) and as a Trustee at Fairfield University. Previously, he served as a dIrector of USI Holdings, which was formerly listed on the NASDAQ, until it was sold to Goldman Sachs Capital Partners in 2007. Mr. Atwell holds a B.S. and an M.B.A. from Long Island University.

Relevant Qualifications and Experience: Mr. Atwell brings extensive relevant industry experience and knowledge to the Board, having spent more than 40 years in the financial services industry as an executive at Cigna International, Charles Schwab & Co., Inc. and Citigroup, Inc. The Board believes Mr. Atwell's extensive financial services industry experience will provide valuable assistance to the Board and the Company as it continues its transformation into a technology enabled financial solutions company and seeks to meet its strategic growth initiatives.

Christopher W. Walters was appointed to the Board of Directors in 2014. Mr. Walters is currently the Chief Executive Officer of Encompass Digital Media, Inc. ("Encompass"), a technology services business that captures, processes and delivers more than 25,000 hours of video across platforms for over 850 leading global content companies every day, which he joined in January 2015. As Chief Executive Officer, Mr. Walters oversees Encompass's day-to-day operations on a worldwide basis. Mr. Walters joined Encompass from The Weather Company, a weather focused media information services company that owned and operated The Weather Channel, weather.com, intellicast.com, Weather Underground and WSI, where he served as the Chief Operating Officer from March 2012 to December 2014. Prior to The Weather Company, he served in a variety of leadership roles at Bloomberg L.P. between 2008 and 2012, most recently as the Chief Operating Officer of the Bloomberg Industry Verticals Group, responsible for operations, strategy, business development, and expansion of the premium web-based subscription businesses. Previously, Mr. Walters was a partner at McKinsey & Co., advising media, entertainment, and investment companies. Mr. Walters holds a Bachelor of Science from The University of Vermont and an M.B.A from the University of Chicago.

Relevant Qualifications and Experience: Mr. Walters has extensive operational and management experience from his work as an executive and an advisor to a variety of companies. Mr. Walters' experience also includes work with technology businesses that are relevant to the Company's current operations. The Board believes this experience and knowledge provides valuable guidance in its oversight obligations as it continues its transformation into a technology enabled financial solutions company and seeks to meet its strategic growth initiatives.

Class III Directors - Terms Expiring in 2020

Name of Director	Age	Positions with Blucora	Director Since
Georganne C. Proctor	61	Director Nominee	2017
Mary S. Zappone	53	Director	2015

Georganne C. Proctor was elected to the Board on June 1, 2017. Ms. Proctor is the former Chief Financial Officer of TIAA-CREF, a national financial services organization, a position she held from 2006 to 2010. From 2003 to 2005, Ms. Proctor was Executive Vice President, Finance of Golden West Financial Corporation. She served as Chief Financial Officer of Bechtel Group, Inc. from 1997 to 2002 and as a director of Bechtel from 1999 to 2002. Since 2006, Ms. Proctor has been a director of Redwood Trust, Inc., a NYSE listed company, where she currently is Chair of the Compensation Committee and a member of the Audit Committee. From 2013 until 2017, she was a director of SunEdison, Inc., a NYSE listed company. Since 2011, Ms. Proctor has also served on the Board of Directors of Och-Ziff Capital Management Group, a NYSE listed company, where she is the Chair of the Audit Committee. Ms. Proctor holds a B.S. in Business Management from the University of South Dakota and an M.B.A. from California State University at Hayward.

Relevant Qualifications and Experience: Ms. Proctor has significant financial and accounting experience and has worked closely with boards and board committees throughout her career, including as the chief financial officer of large financial institutions. This experience provides her with a thorough understanding of public company reporting obligations, Sarbanes-Oxley compliance and planning, and treasury and liquidity management. Furthermore, her service on the audit and compensation committees of other public companies gives her a strong background in the oversight of financial and corporate governance matters.

Mary S. Zappone has served as a director of Blucora since March 2015. Ms. Zappone has extensive experience as an executive, including her current tenure as Chief Executive Officer of Brace Industrial Group, an industrial services company. Prior to joining Brace in October 2017, she served as President and Chief Executive Officer of Service Champ, a specialty distributor of consumable automotive aftermarket maintenance parts and accessories, from November 2015 to September 2017. Prior to joining Service Champ, she served as President and Chief Executive Officer of RecoverCare, a supplier of healthcare equipment, from May 2011 to February 2015. Ms. Zappone worked at Alcoa, Inc. from 2006 to 2011, serving in a variety of roles, most recently as President of the Alcoa Oil & Gas Group, where she was responsible for operations, strategy, business development, and expansion of the aluminum alloy product systems business. During her career, she has also held other senior-level positions at Tyco International, General Electric, and Exxon, and worked at McKinsey & Co., where she advised companies in improving operating performance, capital investment, and merger and acquisition strategies. She earned her undergraduate degree from Johns Hopkins University, and her M.B.A. in Finance at Columbia Business School.

Relevant Qualifications and Experience: Ms. Zappone has significant operational and management experience from her career as an executive and advisor. This experience includes high-level roles at companies that are renowned for their operational excellence, and the Board believes Ms. Zappone is a valuable resource for both the Board and management as the Company seeks to optimize its current operations and seeks to meet its strategic growth initiatives.

Independence, Committee and Other Board Information

Independence

NASDAQ listing rules require that a majority of the members of the Board of Directors be independent directors. The Board of Directors recently undertook its annual review of director independence in accordance with the applicable rules of NASDAQ. The independence rules include a series of objective tests, including that the director is not employed by the Company and has not engaged in various types of business dealings with the Company. In addition, the Board of Directors is required to make a subjective determination as to each independent director that no relationships exist that, in the opinion of the Board of Directors, would interfere with the exercise of independent judgment in carrying out the responsibilities of a director.

The Board of Directors has affirmatively determined that each of our directors, excluding Mr. Clendening, is independent as defined in the NASDAQ rules. Mr. Clendening is not considered independent because he is an employee of the Company.

Each of the members of the Audit Committee, Compensation Committee, and Nominating and Governance Committee are independent under the NASDAQ rules. In addition, the Board of Directors has affirmatively determined that each of the members of the Audit Committee qualifies as independent under the audit committee independence rules established by the SEC.

There are no family relationships between any of our directors, Director Nominees or executive officers.

Board Committees

The Board of Directors' committee structure currently consists of three principal committees: the Audit Committee, the Compensation Committee and the Nominating and Governance Committee. Our Board has adopted a written charter for each of its committees.

The Audit Committee

The Audit Committee currently consists of the following independent directors: Georganne C. Proctor (Chair), William L. Atwell and Lance Dunn. The Audit Committee is responsible for providing independent and objective oversight and review of the Company's auditing, accounting, and financial reporting processes. Among other functions, the Audit Committee's duties include the following:

- Reviewing and approving the appointment, compensation, oversight, and retention of the independent registered public accounting firm;
- Pre-approving all services (audit and non-audit) to be performed by the independent registered public accounting firm;
- Monitoring the adequacy and effectiveness of accounting and financial controls, including internal control over financial reporting;
- Reviewing the audited financial statements and quarterly unaudited financial information and discussing them with management and the independent registered public accounting firm;
- Establishing procedures for receiving and reviewing accounting-related complaints and concerns by whistle blowers;
- Reviewing and monitoring compliance with risk management and investment policies;
- Reviewing and pre-approving related person transactions; and

- Reviewing and monitoring compliance with the Code of Ethics and Conduct and recommending changes to the Code of Ethics and Conduct to the Board as appropriate.

The Board of Directors has determined that each Audit Committee member has sufficient knowledge in reading and understanding financial statements to serve on the Audit Committee. The Board of Directors has further determined that Ms. Proctor and Mr. Atwell each qualify as an "audit committee financial expert" in accordance with SEC rules and the professional experience requirements of NASDAQ. The designation of an "audit committee financial expert" does not impose upon such person any duties, obligations, or liabilities that are greater than those that are generally imposed on him or her as a member of the Audit Committee and the Board of Directors, and such designation does not affect the duties, obligations, or liability of any other member of the Audit Committee or the Board of Directors.

Under the terms of the Audit Committee Charter, the Audit Committee is authorized to engage independent advisors, at the Company's expense, to advise the Audit Committee on any matters within the scope of the Audit Committee's duties. The Audit Committee may also form subcommittees and delegate its authority to those subcommittees as it deems appropriate.

The Compensation Committee

The Compensation Committee currently consists of the following independent directors: H. McIntyre Gardner (Chair), Georganne C. Proctor and Mary Zappone. The Compensation Committee's duties include the following:

- Evaluating the performance of, and reviewing and approving (or recommending to the Board) the compensation of, our CEO and other executive officers;
- Reviewing and making recommendations to management regarding general compensation goals and guidelines for employees and criteria by which employee bonuses are determined;
- Monitoring compensation trends;
- Overseeing the independent compensation consultant;
- Reviewing the Company's compensation policies and practices for all employees, including a review of the interaction between compensation incentives that could encourage risk-taking and the Company's risk management policies and practices; and
- Acting as administrator of our stock plans.

Under the terms of the Compensation Committee Charter, the Compensation Committee is authorized to engage independent advisors, at the Company's expense, to advise the Compensation Committee on any matters within the scope of the Committee's duties. The Compensation Committee may also form subcommittees and delegate its authority to those subcommittees as it deems appropriate. A description of the considerations and determinations of the Compensation Committee regarding the compensation of our Named Executive Officers is contained in "Compensation Discussion and Analysis" below.

The Nominating and Governance Committee

The Nominating and Governance Committee currently consists of the following independent directors: Christopher Walters (Chair), Steven Aldrich and Mary Zappone. The Nominating and Governance Committee's duties include:

- Assisting the Board of Directors by identifying prospective director nominees to fill vacancies and recommending to the Board of Directors the director nominees for the next annual meeting of stockholders;
- Reviewing, and recommending to the Board of Directors any appropriate changes to, the Company's Corporate Governance Guidelines and Director Nomination Policy;
- Reviewing proposed changes to the Company's Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws and making recommendations for any such changes to the Board of Directors;
- Evaluating the performance and effectiveness of the committees and the Board of Directors as a whole;
- Recommending to the Board of Directors membership for each committee;

- Recommending to the full Board of Directors any changes to the non-employee director compensation program;
- Overseeing director orientation and education;
- Evaluating committee structure and recommending changes to the Board of Directors;
- Monitoring compliance with independence standards by the directors;
- Monitoring, and periodically reporting to the Board of Directors, any significant developments in the law and practice of corporate governance; and
- Considering stockholder nominees for election to the Board of Directors as described below under "Director Nomination Process."

As part of each Committee's annual review of their charters, in November 2017, oversight of director compensation was moved from the Compensation Committee to the Nominating and Governance Committee. A description of the compensation program for our non-employee directors for 2017 is set forth in "Director Compensation" below.

Meeting Attendance

The Board of Directors and each of its committees held the following meetings during 2017:

- Board of Directors - 9 meetings;
- Audit Committee - 9 meetings;
- Compensation Committee -12 meetings; and
- Nominating and Governance Committee - 9 meetings.

For 2017, each director attended at least 75% of the aggregate number of meetings of the Board of Directors and committees thereof, if any, on which such director served during the period for which he or she was a director or committee member. The Board of Directors has not adopted a formal policy regarding directors' attendance at the annual meetings of stockholders. In 2017, all of the Company's Board members attended the annual meeting of stockholders, excluding Mr. Hooper who retired from the Board on the date of the annual meeting.

Leadership Structure

The leadership structure of the Board of Directors consists of Chairman, William L. Atwell, and the chairs of each of the principal committees of the Board of Directors. The Company's Bylaws require that the Chairman be an independent director, and thus the Chairman position is not combined with the Chief Executive Officer position, which is currently filled by John S. Clendening. The Board of Directors believes that the current leadership structure is appropriate for the Company because it balances the operational and day-to-day management leadership of the Chief Executive Officer with the independent oversight provided by the independent Chairman of the Board and the independent chairs of each of the principal committees. This structure ensures that oversight of risk management and the Company's management is distributed among multiple independent directors. The Board of Directors currently believes that this distribution of oversight is the best method of ensuring optimal Company performance and risk management.

Risk Management

Management is responsible for our day-to-day enterprise risk management activities, and the Board of Directors has oversight responsibility for managing risk, focusing on the adequacy of the Company's risk management and mitigation processes. The Board of Directors has an active role, as a whole and also at the committee level, in overseeing our risk management. The Board of Directors regularly receives reports from senior management on areas of our material risk, including our credit, liquidity, operational, cybersecurity, compliance and legal and regulatory risks, and regularly devotes time during its meetings to review and discuss our most significant risks, management's responses to those risks and the mitigation of those risks.

- The Audit Committee reviews our major financial risk exposures and the steps management has taken to monitor and control such exposures, and it also oversees our compliance, legal and regulatory risks. The Audit Committee also oversees and discusses with management our policies and practices with respect to risk assessment and risk management.

- The Compensation Committee oversees the management of risks relating to our executive and non-executive compensation plans and arrangements and succession planning.
- The Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee manages risks associated with general corporate governance.

While each committee oversees certain risks and the management of such risks, the entire Board of Directors is regularly informed through committee reports and management presentations about such risks. In addition, the Board believes that our CEO and Chairman provide the appropriate leadership to help ensure effective risk oversight along with the Board of Directors and its committees.

Communication with the Board of Directors

The Board of Directors believes that management speaks for the Company. Individual Board members may occasionally meet or otherwise communicate with our stockholders and other constituencies that are involved with the Company, but it is expected that Board members will do this with the advance knowledge of management or at the request of management, absent unusual circumstances or as contemplated by Board committee charters or policy. Stockholders who wish to communicate with the Board of Directors, or with any individual member of the Board of Directors, may do so by sending such communication in writing to the attention of the Corporate Secretary at the address of our principal executive office with a request to forward the communication to the intended recipient. The Corporate Secretary will generally forward such communication to the Board of Directors or the specific Board member. However, the Corporate Secretary reserves the right to not forward any material that is inappropriate. In addition, employees may communicate with the Board through, among other processes, the Company's internal whistleblower hotline process administered under the Code of Ethics and Conduct.

Corporate Website

The Company's corporate website, located at www.blucora.com, contains information regarding the Company, including information regarding directors, executive officers, and corporate governance documents. That information includes the Certificate of Incorporation, Bylaws, Committee Charters, Director Nomination Policy, Code of Ethics and Conduct (which is applicable to all employees, executive officers, and members of the Board of Directors), and the Corporate Governance Guidelines. The Company uses the corporate website to provide current information to investors, including information on recent developments and upcoming events. You may also request copies of these documents and other corporate governance documents available on the website from the Company's investor relations department at (972) 870-6000.

Director Nomination Process

The Nominating and Governance Committee is responsible for reviewing and recommending nominees to the Board of Directors for election at the annual meeting and for reviewing and recommending director appointments to fill any vacancies on the Board of Directors. The Nominating and Governance Committee's objective, pursuant to its charter, is to ensure that the Board of Directors is properly constituted to meet its fiduciary obligations to the Company and its stockholders.

In considering director candidates, the Nominating and Governance Committee seeks the following minimum qualifications, as set forth in the Company's Corporate Governance Guidelines and Director Nomination Policy:

- Commitment to our business success while maintaining the highest standards of responsibility and ethics;
- Representation of the best interests of all of our stockholders and not any particular constituency;
- Conscientious preparation for, attendance at, and participation in Board of Directors and applicable committee meetings;
- No personal or professional commitments that would interfere or conflict with a director's obligations to the Company and its stockholders;
- An established record of professional accomplishment in the director's chosen field; and
- No material personal, financial, or professional interest in any of our competitors that would interfere or conflict with the director's obligations to the Company and its stockholders.

The Nominating and Governance Committee also considers the professional and personal experience of each nominee and whether that nominee has expertise relevant to our business objectives. Although the Board of Directors does not have a formal diversity policy, the Board of Directors desires candidates that contribute to the Board of Directors' overall diversity, with diversity being broadly construed to mean a variety of personal and professional experiences, opinions, perspectives, and backgrounds. During the nomination process, the Board of Directors and the Nominating and Governance Committee carefully consider this goal with respect to both new nominees and incumbent directors in accordance with the Company's Director Nomination Policy. The Board assesses its effectiveness in achieving this goal during its annual self-assessment process.

The Nominating and Governance Committee generally re-nominates incumbent directors who continue to satisfy the Nominating and Governance Committee's criteria for membership on the Board of Directors, continue to make important contributions to the Board of Directors, and consent to continue their service on the Board of Directors. However, the Committee regularly considers the needs of the Company and the Board with respect to directors, particularly in light of the Company's strategic transformation, and if appropriate, the Committee will nominate new directors that best fit those needs. When nominating new directors, the Committee actively seeks individuals who satisfy its criteria for membership on the Board of Directors, and the Nominating and Governance Committee may solicit ideas for possible Board of Directors candidates from a variety of sources, including members of the Board of Directors, Company executives, stockholders, or individuals known to the members of the Board of Directors or Company executives through personal or professional relationships. The Nominating and Governance Committee also has the authority to retain a search firm, at the Company's expense, to identify or evaluate director candidates at its discretion.

Any stockholder may nominate candidates for election as directors by following the procedures set forth in our Bylaws and Director Nomination Policy, including the applicable notice, information, and consent provisions. For further information regarding these procedures, see "Deadline for Receipt of Stockholder Proposals and Director Nominations" below. Copies of our Bylaws and Director Nomination Policy are available on our corporate website at www.blucora.com.

In addition, pursuant to our Director Nomination Policy, any single stockholder, or group of stockholders, that has beneficially owned more than 5% of our outstanding common stock for at least one year may propose a director candidate for evaluation by the Nominating and Governance Committee by delivering a written notice to the Nominating and Governance Committee that satisfies the notice, information, and consent requirements of our Bylaws and the Director Nomination Policy. The Committee will evaluate such recommended nominees using the same criteria that it uses to evaluate other nominees. Any such Board of Directors candidate must be independent of the stockholder in all respects and must also qualify as an independent director under applicable NASDAQ rules. The notice must be received by the Nominating and Governance Committee no later than the date that is 120 calendar days before the anniversary of the date that our Proxy Statement was released to stockholders in connection with the previous year's annual meeting. The notice must include, among other things, proof of the required stock ownership, proof of identification of the stockholder(s) submitting the proposal, and information regarding the proposed Board of Directors candidate. The notice should be sent to the following address:

Chair, Nominating and Governance Committee
Blucora, Inc.
c/o Corporate Secretary
6333 North State Highway 161
Irving, Texas 75038

The Nominating and Governance Committee did not receive any recommendations for director candidates for the 2018 annual meeting from any non-management stockholder or group of stockholders that beneficially owns more than 5% of our common stock.

Director Compensation

Non-employee director compensation consists of a mix of cash and equity. The combination of cash and equity compensation is intended to provide incentives for non-employee directors to continue to serve on the Board of Directors, to align the interests of the Board of Directors and stockholders, and to attract new non-employee directors with outstanding qualifications. The CEO, as an employee of the Company, does not receive any compensation for serving on the Board of Directors and therefore is excluded from the director compensation table below. His compensation as an employee is included in the Summary Compensation Table.

2017 Review

Prior to November 2017, the Compensation Committee, pursuant to its charter, was responsible for overseeing director compensation. As part of each Committee's annual review of their charters, in November 2017, oversight of director compensation was moved from the Compensation Committee to the Nominating and Governance Committee.

In early 2017, as part of its review of the non-employee director compensation program, the Compensation Committee engaged Compensia, Inc. ("Compensia") as its independent compensation consultant to provide advice with respect to non-employee director compensation matters. In the first half of 2017, Compensia reviewed the Company's peer group (as discussed under "Compensation Discussion and Analysis—Compensation Philosophy and Practices") and provided related advice with respect to director compensation. Compensia also provided advice and information on material compensation trends to provide a general understanding of current compensation practices. See "Compensation Discussion and Analysis—Compensation Philosophy and Goals—Role of Compensation Consultant" for additional information about Compensia.

As a result of this review, in May 2017, the Compensation Committee approved certain changes to its non-employee director compensation program, including the changes to the cash retainers shown below and a change in the grant value and mix of equity grants made to our non-employee directors to transition from granting a mix of options and RSUs to granting solely RSUs, as further described below. Generally, the cash retainers increased and the equity grant amounts decreased.

Non-Employee Director Compensation Program for 2017

The Company's non-employee director compensation program for 2017 consisted of annual cash retainers for board, committee, and chair service, and equity grants, as described further below.

The following table sets forth the changes to the annual cash retainers during 2017:

Groups	Annual Retainer Paid to all Non-Employee Directors (including Chair) Prior to May 2017	Annual Retainer Paid to all Non-Employee Directors (including Chair) After May 2017	Percent Change	Annual Chair Retainer Prior to May 2017	Annual Chair Retainer After May 2017	Percent Change
Board of Directors	$20,000	$40,000	100%	$25,000	$15,000	(40)%
Audit Committee	$4,000	$10,000	150%	$14,000	$22,500	61%
Compensation Committee	$3,000	$7,500	150%	$8,000	$15,000	88%
Nominating and Governance Committee	$2,000	$4,000	100%	$5,000	$8,000	60%

The 2017 equity grants consisted of an initial grant to all newly elected or appointed directors and an annual grant. Each grant made prior to May 2017 consisted of 30% stock options and 70% RSUs, and each grant made following May 2017, which included the annual grant made to our directors following our annual stockholders' meeting on June 1, 2017, consisted solely of RSUs. The number of shares granted is based on a set dollar amount, with the specific number of shares granted based on the Company's standard option valuation methodology in the case of stock options and on the price of our common stock at the time of the grant in the case of RSUs. The following table sets forth the changes to the equity grants during 2017 (in dollars):

	Value of RSUs Prior to May 2017	Value of Options Prior to May 2017	Total Grant Amount Prior to May 2017	Value of RSUs After May 2017	Total Grant Amount After May 2017	Percent Change From Prior to May 2017
Initial equity grants to all newly elected or appointed non-employee directors, including Board Chair [1]	$ 105,000	$ 45,000	**$150,000**	$ 150,000	**$ 150,000**	**— %**
Annual equity grants to all non-employee directors, including Board Chair and newly elected or appointed directors [2]	$ 105,000	$ 45,000	**$150,000**	$ 125,000	**$ 125,000**	**(16.67)%**
Additional annual equity grant to Board Chair [2]	$ 35,000	$ 15,000	**$50,000**	$ 35,000	**$ 35,000**	**(30.00)%**

(1) Initial equity grants vest in three equal annual installments beginning on the first anniversary of the election or appointment date.

(2) Annual grants are made on the date of the annual meeting of stockholders and vest in full on the first anniversary of the grant date provided that the grantee continues to be a member of the Board or the Chairperson, as applicable, on such date. In the case of a newly appointed director who is not appointed on the date of the annual meeting of stockholders, a pro rata portion of this annual grant will be awarded based on the date of appointment.

The Company reimburses all directors for expenses incurred in attending meetings or performing their duties as directors. The Company does not provide any perquisites to directors.

The following table sets forth information concerning the value of compensation paid or awarded to each non-employee director (including our current and former directors) for the year ended December 31, 2017 pursuant to the director compensation program described above:

Current Directors	**Annual Retainer Fees (Paid in Cash)**	**Stock Awards [(1)(2)]**	**Option Awards [(1)(2)]**	**Total**
Steven Aldrich	$25,667	$274,975	—	$300,642
William L. Atwell	$43,167	$297,175	$55,060	$395,402
Lance G. Dunn	$38,000	$124,994	—	$162,994
H. McIntyre Gardner	$35,167	$254,151	$52,393	$341,711
Georganne C. Proctor	$38,390	$274,975	—	$313,365
Christopher W. Walters	$38,000	$124,994	—	$162,994
Mary S. Zappone	$38,250	$124,994	—	$163,244
Former Directors				
David Chung (3)	$5,000	—	—	$5,000
John E. Cunningham (4)	$11,250	—	—	$11,250
Steven W. Hooper (5)	$16,000	—	—	$16,000
Elizabeth J. Huebner (6)	$34,125	$124,994	—	$159,119
Andrew M. Snyder (7)	$10,000	—	—	$10,000

(1) The dollar amount for stock awards (which consists of RSUs) and option awards is the grant date fair value computed in accordance with Accounting Standards Board Accounting Standards Codification Topic 718, *Compensation - Stock*

Compensation ("ASC 718"), excluding the effect of any estimated forfeitures. These amounts reflect the Company's accounting expense and do not correspond to the actual value that will be realized by the director. Assumptions used in the valuation of stock and option awards granted in 2017 are discussed in "Note 12: Stock-Based Compensation" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (Part II, Item 8) in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2017.

(2) For Messrs. Aldrich, Atwell, Gardner and Ms. Proctor, includes an initial grant of equity that was made in 2017, as well as a 2017 annual grant that was made to all non-employee directors following our 2017 annual meeting of stockholders. Messrs. Atwell and Gardner also received a pro-rated annual grant for their service prior to the 2017 annual meeting of stockholders. The initial grants and pro-rated annual grants made to Messrs. Atwell and McIntyre were made prior to the director compensation changes described above and consisted of 30% options and 70% RSUs. The initial grants made to Mr. Aldrich and Ms. Proctor consisted solely of RSUs. Initial non-employee director grants vest in three equal annual installments beginning on the first anniversary of each director's the election or appointment date. The vesting for the annual RSU grants is described above.

(3) Mr. Chung retired from the Board on February 28, 2017.

(4) Mr. Cunningham retired from the Board on February 28, 2017.

(5) Mr. Hooper did not stand for re-election and retired from the Board on June 1, 2017.

(6) Ms. Huebner retired from the Board on August 11, 2017. When Ms. Huebner retired from the Board of Directors, this grant was forfeited.

(7) Mr. Snyder retired from the Board on May 25, 2017.

All equity grants that were made in 2017 were awarded under the 2015 Plan. Stock awards consist of RSUs, with each RSU representing the right to receive one share of our common stock upon vesting. Option awards consist of options to purchase shares of our common stock. The Company does not coordinate the timing of equity grants with the release of material non-public information, as grants are made as of the annual meeting date or election or appointment date.

The following table sets forth information concerning the aggregate number of equity awards outstanding for each of our current non-employee directors as of December 31, 2017.

Current Directors [1]	Aggregate number of unvested RSUs	Aggregate number of options	
		Unvested	Vested
Steven Aldrich	13,316	—	—
William L. Atwell	14,091	8,157	2,502
Lance G. Dunn	6,053	—	71,863
H. McIntyre Gardner	12,397	8,157	1,877
Georganne C. Proctor	13,316	—	—
Christopher W. Walters	6,053	—	42,388
Mary S. Zappone	8,485	3,648	35,292

(1) Our former directors shown in the previous table did not have any equity outstanding as of December 31, 2017. When each of Messrs. Chung, Cunningham and Snyder retired from the Board, their outstanding unvested equity awards that were granted following our annual meeting in 2016 under the 2015 Plan were accelerated on a pro-rated basis based on the time they served as Board members from the date of grant until their last date of service on the Board.

Director Stock Ownership Guidelines

The Board has adopted stock ownership guidelines that are applicable to all non-employee directors. The guidelines were originally adopted effective as of January 1, 2014 and amended on June 1, 2017. As a result of the non-employee director compensation changes described above, which included an increased cash retainer from $20,000 to $40,000, the Board updated these guidelines such that the ownership multiple decreased from 6X to 4X under the guidelines but the overall ownership requirement amount actually increased from $120,000 to $160,000.

Thus, under the terms of the amended guidelines, all non-employee directors are expected to acquire and hold shares of the Company’s common stock equal in market value to at least 4X the value of the annual retainer paid to non-employee directors (excluding the additional retainers for the Chairman of the Board and the chairs of the Board's committees). As described above, the amount of this retainer was $40,000 for 2017, and non-employee directors will be expected to hold shares with a market value of at least $160,000.

Non-employee directors who were members of the Board on January 1, 2017 are expected to attain the minimum ownership amount by no later than June 1, 2019. Non-employee directors who joined the Board after January 1, 2017 are expected to attain the minimum ownership amount within five years after the date of their initial appointment or election to the Board. The Compensation Committee is responsible for administering and applying these guidelines.

AUDIT COMMITTEE REPORT

The following Report of the Audit Committee shall not be deemed to be "soliciting material" or to be "filed" with the SEC, and the information in this report shall not be incorporated by reference into any future filing under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act"), or the Exchange Act, except to the extent that the Company specifically incorporates it by reference into such filing.

Audit Committee Members

Each member who serves on the Audit Committee is an independent director as defined in the NASDAQ rules, meets the independence criteria in the applicable SEC rules and meets the NASDAQ's financial knowledge requirements set forth in the NASDAQ rules. Our Board of Directors has determined that Ms. Proctor and Mr. Atwell are "audit committee financial experts" under SEC rules and meet the financial sophistication and professional experience requirements set forth in the NASDAQ rules.

Audit Committee Responsibilities

Management is responsible for Blucora's internal control over financial reporting, preparation of financial statements, and the financial reporting process. The Company's independent registered public accounting firm, which for 2017 was Ernst & Young LLP, is responsible for performing an independent audit of Blucora's consolidated financial statements and internal control over financial reporting in accordance with standards set by the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board ("PCAOB"), and to issue reports thereon. The Audit Committee monitors and oversees these processes. The Audit Committee members rely, without independent verification, on the information provided to them, and on the representations made to them, by management and the independent registered public accounting firm.

In this context, during 2017, the Audit Committee:

- Discussed the overall scope and plans for audits with Ernst & Young LLP;
- Met and held discussions with Ernst & Young LLP, both with and without management present, to discuss the results of the audits, management's evaluation of Blucora's internal control over financial reporting, and Ernst & Young LLP's opinion thereof, and the overall quality of Blucora's financial reporting;
- Reviewed and discussed the quarterly and annual financial results prior to the publication of those results and the filing of those results on Form 8-K;
- Discussed the matters required to be discussed with Ernst & Young LLP by the statement on Auditing Standards No. 1031, as amended (AICPA, Professional Standards, Vol. 1 AU section 380), as adopted by the PCAOB in Rule 3200T and SEC S-X Rule 2-07;
- Reviewed and discussed the unaudited and audited financial statements with management and Ernst & Young LLP, including Ernst & Young LLP's opinion on the audited financial statements; and
- Received the written disclosures and letter from Ernst & Young LLP required by applicable requirements of the PCAOB regarding the independent registered public accounting firm's communications with the Audit Committee concerning independence and discussed with Ernst & Young LLP its independence.

Based on the reviews and discussions referred to above, the Audit Committee recommended to the Board of Directors that the audited financial statements be included in the Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2017, filed with the SEC.

Members of the Audit Committee

Georganne C. Proctor, Chair

William L. Atwell

Lance Dunn

FEES PAID TO INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM FOR 2017 AND 2016

Fees

The aggregate fees billed by the Company's current independent registered public accounting firm, Ernst & Young LLP, to the Company and its subsidiaries during 2017 and 2016 were as follows:

	2017	2016
Audit fees	$ 1,480,116	$ 1,583,186
Tax fees	—	5,000
All other fees	2,160	1,995
Total fees	$ 1,482,276	$ 1,590,181

Audit fees reflect fees billed for the annual audits of the Company's consolidated financial statements, the review of interim financial statements and internal control over financial reporting for the year indicated. Tax fees were for state tax services in 2016. All other fees consist of fees for our annual subscription to Ernst & Young LLP's Global Accounting & Auditing Information Tool, which the Company's staff used when performing technical accounting research.

Pre-approval Policy

The Audit Committee pre-approves all audit and non-audit services to be performed by our independent registered public accounting firm. As part of its pre-approval procedures, the Audit Committee considers whether the provision of any proposed non-audit services is consistent with the SEC's rules on auditor independence. The Audit Committee has considered whether the provision by Ernst & Young LLP of the non-audit services described above is compatible with Ernst & Young LLP's independence. After consideration, the Audit Committee has determined that Ernst & Young's independence as an auditor has not been compromised by its provision of these services. All audit and non-audit services provided by Ernst & Young in 2016 and 2017 were pre-approved by the Audit Committee in accordance with the foregoing policy.

TRANSACTIONS WITH RELATED PERSONS

Policies and Procedures

Under our Related Party Transaction Policy, proposed related person transactions (which generally include any transactions by the Company or any subsidiary with an employee or director of the Company, a relative of an employee or director, or any entity with which an employee or director has a material interest) must be disclosed to our Chief Financial Officer. If the Chief Financial Officer determines that the transaction is material, or otherwise of such a nature that it should be reviewed and approved by the Audit Committee under the guidance provided in our Related Party Transaction Policy, the Audit Committee must review and approve such related person transactions in advance. In determining whether to approve a related person transaction, the Audit Committee considers whether the terms of the related person transaction are fair to the Company at the time of authorization; the business reasons for the Company to enter into the related person transaction; whether other comparable transactions with non-related parties were considered, and if so, the terms of such transactions and the reason for the selection of the related person transaction; the value of the transaction to the Company and to the related person; whether the related person transaction would impair the independence of a previously independent director; and any other factors that are relevant to a determination of whether the terms of the transaction, and the process that led to it, are fair to the Company.

Related Person Transactions

In December 2017, the Company fully repaid $3.2 million of a note payable with the former President and Chief Executive Officer of HD Vest, Roger Ochs, that arose in connection with the acquisition of HD Vest. (Roger Ochs ceased serving as the President and Chief Executive Officer of HD Vest on February 28, 2017.) The note was scheduled to be paid over a three-year period, with 50% paid in year one ($3.2 million paid in December 2016), 40% to be paid in 2017, and 10% to be paid in 2018. Certain members of HD Vest management rolled over a portion of the proceeds they would have otherwise received when we acquired HD Vest into shares of the acquisition subsidiary through which

the Company consummated the purchase of HD Vest. The former President of HD Vest sold a portion of his shares to the Company in exchange for the note. The note bore interest at a rate of 5% per year.

COMPENSATION COMMITTEE INTERLOCKS AND INSIDER PARTICIPATION

Each of the following directors served on the Compensation Committee for all or a portion of 2017: H. McIntyre Gardner (Chair), Georganne C. Proctor, Chris Walters and Mary Zappone. Each of the following former directors served on the Compensation Committee for a portion of 2017 prior to leaving the Board of Directors: Steven Hooper and Elizabeth Huebner. None of the current or former members of the Compensation Committee who served during 2017 is or has been an officer or an employee of the Company. During 2017, none of our executive officers served on the board of directors or compensation committee (or a committee performing similar functions) of any other company that had one or more executive officers serving on our Board of Directors or our Compensation Committee.

INFORMATION REGARDING EXECUTIVE OFFICERS

Executive Officers

The following table sets forth certain information as of April 9, 2018 with respect to our current executive officers:

Name	Age	Position
John S. Clendening	55	President, CEO and Director
Davinder Athwal	50	Chief Financial Officer
Sanjay Baskaran	44	President, TaxAct, Inc.
Ann J. Bruder	52	Chief Legal Officer & Secretary
Robert D. Oros	52	Chief Executive Officer, HD Vest
Mathieu Stevenson	39	Chief Marketing Officer

John Clendening was appointed to serve as the Company's President and CEO on April 4, 2016, and he was also appointed as a member of the Board on the same date. See "Proposal One—Election of Directors on page 12 for a discussion of his experience and qualifications.

Davinder S. Athwal was appointed to serve as the Company's Chief Financial Officer ("CFO") in February 2018. Prior to joining the Company, Mr. Athwal, served as Vice President Finance and Chief Financial Officer of UGI International, which is a business segment of UGI Corporation through which it conducts its foreign operations, from 2015 to February 2018, and he served as Vice President, Chief Accounting Officer and Chief Risk Officer of UGI Corporation, a holding company that is traded on the New York Stock Exchange that distributes, stores, transports and markets energy products and related services, from 2008 through 2015. Mr. Athwal holds a bachelor's degree in Accounting and Finance from Kingston University in London, a master's degree in Accounting from Long Island University and is a certified public accountant.

Sanjay Baskaran was appointed President of TaxAct in January 2017. Prior to joining the Company, Mr. Baskaran, served as General Manager, North America Credit Cards at Amazon, one of the world's largest online retailers, from June 2015 through January 2017. Prior to that, Mr. Baskaran was employed by Visa, Inc. from 2011 through 2013 where he served as Vice President, Analytics and Insights, North America from 2013 through 2015 and the Lead for Consumer Credit & Merchant Analytics, North America from 2011 through 2013. Prior to that he was employed by HSBC from 2002 through 2011 in roles with progressively increasing responsibility, the most recent of which were Director, Global Cross Sell Marketing Strategy from 2009 through 2011 and Director, Head of Operations Strategy & Business Transformation, HSBC Finance, Canada from 2007 through 2009. He also held positions at Deloitte & Touche as a management consultant and Dr. Reddy's Group as an executive in the company's Latin America International Marketing group. Mr. Baskaran received a Bachelor of Technology in chemical engineering from Osmania University India and earned an M.B.A. with a concentration in Supply Chain Management and Marketing from Michigan State University.

Ann J. Bruder was appointed to serve as the Company's Chief Legal Officer and Secretary in June 2017. Prior to joining Blucora, Ms. Bruder served as the Vice President, General Counsel, Chief Compliance Officer and Corporate Secretary at Airlines Reporting Corporation, or ARC, which is a leading provider of data, products and services to the travel industry, from 2015 through 2017. She served as the President of Global Strategic Services, LLC, a boutique strategic advisory firm, from 2014 through 2015. Prior to that, she was employed by Commercial Metals Company

(“CMC”), a publicly traded global company with sales and operations in more than 40 countries, from 2007 through 2014. At CMC, Ms. Bruder served as the Senior Vice President of Law, Government Affairs and Global Compliance, General Counsel and Corporate Secretary from mid-2009 through 2014 and the Deputy General Counsel from 2007 through mid-2009. Earlier in her career, she served in various legal roles at CARBO Ceramics Inc., American Airlines, Inc., Continental Airlines, Inc. and the law firm of Thompson Coburn LLP. Ms. Bruder has a Juris Doctorate degree from Washington University and Bachelor of Arts degree in Journalism and Public Relations with a minor in Economics from the University of Wyoming.

Robert D. Oros was appointed Chief Executive Officer of HD Vest in February 2017. Prior to joining the Company, Mr. Oros served as Executive Vice President and Head of the Registered Investment Advisors segment at Fidelity Clearing & Custody Solutions, a unit of Fidelity Investments, from 2012 through 2017. He served as a National Sales Manager at Trust Company of America from 2010 through 2012, Executive Vice President and Head of Custom Clearing Services at LPL Financial from 2009 through 2010, and Senior Divisional Manager of Schwab Advisor Services at Charles Schwab from 2002 through 2007. Mr. Oros serves on the Board of Directors of the Invest in Others Charitable Foundation and the Board of Directors of the Foundation for Financial Planning. He has a Bachelor of Science in Finance and Economics from Central Michigan University.

Mathieu Stevenson was appointed as the Company's Chief Marketing Officer in October 2016. Prior to joining the Company, Mr. Stevenson served as Chief Strategy Officer for Catalina Marketing Corporation, a marketing services company from 2015 through 2016. From 2014 through 2015, Mr. Stevenson was an Associate Partner, Market Leader at McKinsey Solutions, part of McKinsey Company, a world-wide management consultant firm, and from 2012 through 2014 he served in various roles of increasing responsibility, the most recent of which was General Manager, Cities, for HomeAway Inc. From 2006 through 2012, Mr. Stevenson served as Engagement Manager, Member of Marketing and Innovation Practices for McKinsey & Company. Mr. Stevenson is a graduate of the University of Texas and the Fuqua School at Duke University.

Principal Accounting Officer

John Palmer**,** 51, became the Company’s Principal Financial and Accounting Officer on November 1, 2017 when our former Chief Financial Officer, Eric M. Emans, who had been serving in those roles left the Company. Mr. Palmer continues to serve as the Company's Principal Accounting Officer, and Mr. Athwal, who joined the Company on February 21, 2018 as the Company's Chief Financial Officer, now serves as the Company's Principal Financial Officer. Mr. Palmer originally joined the Company on February 20, 2017 and is not an executive officer, but pursuant to Item 402 of Regulation S-K he is included as a Named Executive Officer because he served as our Principal Financial Officer for a portion of 2017.

Mr. Palmer has served as the Company’s Vice President - Accounting since February 2017. Prior to joining the Company, Mr. Palmer served as Vice President and Chief Accounting Officer at Sizmek, Inc., a global technology company that provides technology-enabled advertising services, from the time it was spun-off from Digital Generation, Inc. in February 2014 until February 2017. Mr. Palmer served as Vice President and Controller at Digital Generation, Inc. from March 2003 to February 2014. Prior to that, Mr. Palmer held a variety of controller positions for technology companies, including Entrust Technologies, Inc. and Nortel Networks, Inc. He began his career working at each of KPMG and Ernst & Young.

COMPENSATION DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS

Introduction

This Compensation Discussion and Analysis ("CD&A") explains how our Compensation Committee designed and implemented our 2017 compensation programs with respect to our Named Executive Officers who are set forth below and included in our Summary Compensation Table ("NEOs"). This CD&A describes the means through which the alignment of compensation elements to our objectives was achieved and the degree to which our performance affected executive compensation.

Executive Summary

Our executive compensation program is generally designed to attract, motivate and retain highly skilled executives with the business experience that management and our Compensation Committee believe are necessary for achievement of our long-term business objectives to operate and grow our Wealth Management and Tax Preparation businesses that operate under HD Vest and TaxAct, respectively.

In addition, as a result of the move of our corporate headquarters from Washington State to Texas and in connection with our Strategic Transformation (as defined below) into a technology-enabled financial solutions company, our 2017 executive compensation program was focused on recruiting new executive talent during 2017, which resulted in the successful hiring of our Chief Executive Officer of HD Vest, our President of TaxAct, our Chief Legal Officer (collectively, the "New Executive Officers") and our Vice President-Accounting (who served as our Principal Financial and Accounting Officer for part of 2017 but does not serve as an executive officer) (together with the New Executive Officers, the "New NEOs")).

Our NEOs

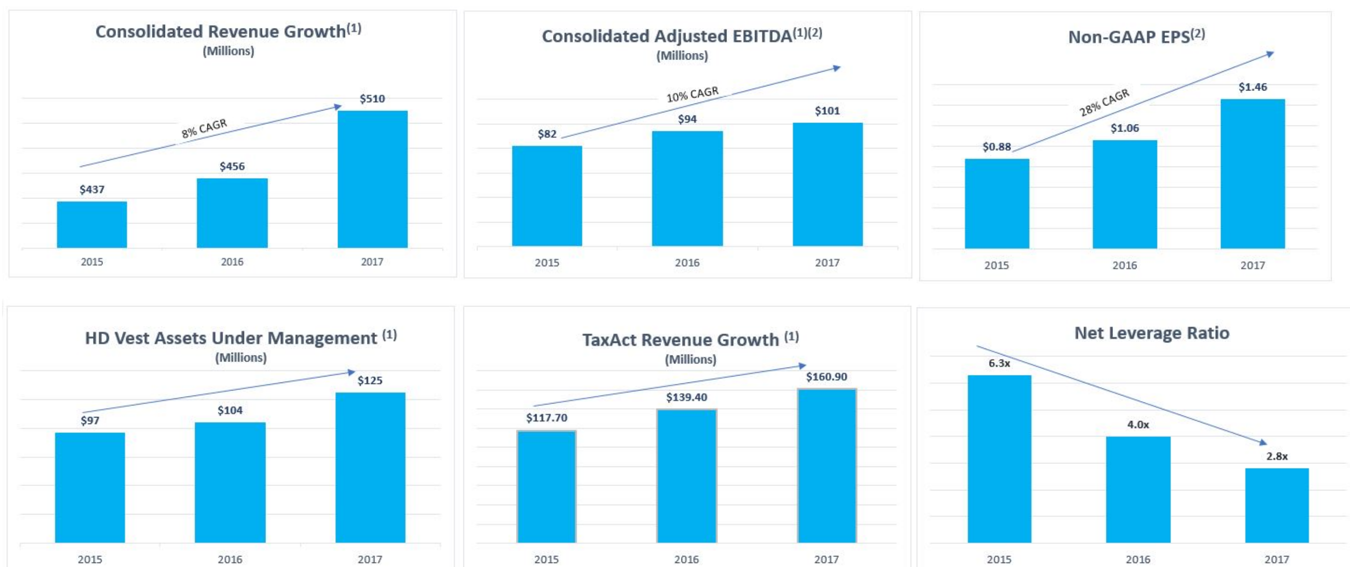
Our NEOs included in our Summary Compensation Table are set forth below. Additional information regarding our current executive officers is set forth on page 43 under "Information Regarding Executive Officers."

Name	Title	Date
John S. Clendening	President, CEO and Director	Joined on April 4, 2016
John D. Palmer (1)(2)	Vice President - Accounting (Principal Financial and Accounting Officer)	Became Principal Financial and Accounting Officer November 1, 2017
Eric M. Emans (1)	Former Chief Financial Officer and Treasurer ("Former CFO")	Ceased Serving as CFO on November 1, 2017
Robert D. Oros	Chief Executive Officer of HD Vest	Joined on February 28, 2017
Sanjay Baskaran	President of TaxAct	Joined on January 30, 2017
Ann J. Bruder	Chief Legal Officer and Secretary	Joined on June 19, 2017

(1) Mr. Emans, who served as the Company's Chief Financial Officer, Principal Financial Officer and Principal Accounting Officer, ceased serving in such roles effective November 1, 2017. Mr. Palmer became the Company's Principal Financial and Accounting Officer on November 1, 2017. Mr. Palmer continues to serve as the Company's Principal Accounting Officer, and Mr. Davinder S. Athwal, who joined the Company on February 21, 2018 as the Company's Chief Financial Officer, now serves as the Company's Principal Financial Officer.

(2) Mr. Palmer originally joined the Company on February 20, 2017 and is not an executive officer, but pursuant to Item 402 of Regulation S-K he is included as a Named Executive Officer because he served as our Principal Financial Officer for a portion of 2017.

Financial and Business Highlights of 2017



2017 Financial Highlights
• 2017 was a strong year where we achieved double digit growth in nearly all of our key metrics while significantly strengthening our balance sheet, our platform and our executive leadership team.
• We increased Total Revenue by 12% from 2016.
• We increased Net Income and Net Income per share by 141% and 137%, respectively, from 2016.(2)
• We increased non-GAAP Consolidated Adjusted EBITDA by 7% from 2016. (2)
• We increased non-GAAP EPS by 38% from 2016. (2)
• We grew assets under management by 21% from 2016 to $12.5 billion and total assets under administration by 14% from 2016 to $44.2 billion at HD Vest.
• We achieved the 20th consecutive year of revenue growth at TaxAct, growing 15% from 2016.
• During 2017, we lowered debt by $90 million, reduced net leverage ratio to 2.8x from 4.0x and lowered interest rate by 300 bps.
• We announced a clearing firm transition that is expected to generate $60-$100 million in incremental HD Vest segment income over a 10-year term.
2017 Business Highlights
• Since 2015 we have been successfully undergoing a strategic transformation into a technology-enabled financial solutions company focused on wealth management and comprised of TaxAct and HD Vest and have divested our Search and Content and E-Commerce businesses (the "Strategic Transformation").
• In connection with our Strategic Transformation and our operating as “One Company,” during 2017, we relocated our corporate headquarters from Bellevue, Washington to Irving, Texas.
• In connection with this relocation and our Strategic Transformation, we had a leadership transition resulting in a new executive team, including the New Executive Officers, who were all hired in 2017.

(1) Financial measures used in our annual bonus plan.

(2) See Annex A - Non-GAAP Reconciliation for a reconciliation of Adjusted EBITDA and non-GAAP EPS to Net Income and Net Income per share.

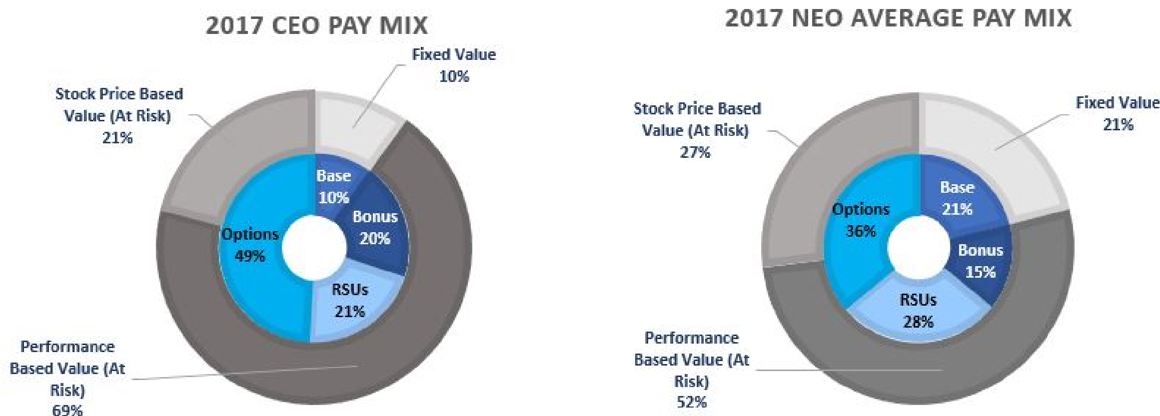
2017 Executive Compensation

2017 Executive Compensation Highlights
• ***At Risk Compensation:*** Our NEOs had a substantial portion of their compensation at risk - 90% of our CEO's total target direct compensation was at risk.
• ***Pay for Performance Alignment:*** A substantial portion of NEO compensation was comprised of annual incentive bonus tied to financial metrics and stock options - 69% of our CEO's total target direct compensation was bonus and stock options.
• ***2017 Annual Bonus Plan is Performance-Based:*** Annual bonus plan was tied to Company financial performance metrics - 20% of our CEO's total target direct compensation was a performance-based bonus.
• ***2017 Equity Grants:*** At least half (and for certain NEOs, including our CEO, 70%) of the 2017 long-term equity awards were comprised of stock options, which are inherently tied to the performance of our stock.
• ***New NEOs:*** Compensation for each New NEO was set at a level to be competitive in the new market and industry where we compete for talent after a review of peer market data and other factors.

2017 Executive Compensation Elements at a Glance

Base Salary	Annual Bonus Plan	Stock Options	Time-Based RSUs
Short-Term Element		**Long-Term Element**	
Fixed	Performance-Based (at risk)		Value Based on Stock Price (at risk)

2017 Mix of Pay: 90% of our CEO's and 79% of our average NEOs'* total target direct compensation for 2017 was at risk



*The Average NEO Pay Mix does not include (i) Mr. Emans because he announced that he would not be relocating with the Company in 2016, and his 2017 compensation reflected the transition, and (ii) Mr. Palmer because he does not serve as an executive officer of the Company and his compensation therefore is not reflective of the compensation structure of our executive officers.

Additional detail regarding the 2017 compensation of our NEOs is provided in the Summary Compensation Table and throughout our CD&A.

2017 Say-on-Pay Vote had 97.5% Approval

We hold advisory votes on the compensation of our NEOs ("say-on-pay") at every annual meeting of stockholders. Our Board of Directors values the opinions of our stockholders and believes an annual advisory vote allows our stockholders to provide us with their input on our executive compensation program. We conducted an advisory vote on the frequency of the advisory say-on-pay vote at our 2017 Annual Meeting. Following the recommendation of our stockholders in 2017, we will continue to hold our advisory say-on-pay vote on an annual basis.

Of the stockholders who cast a vote in 2017 for or against the approval of the Company's compensation of NEOs, 97.5% voted for approval. Although the Compensation Committee did not make any specific changes as a result of such say-on-pay vote for 2017 compensation, the Compensation Committee does monitor and consider the results of say-on-pay votes and will continue to consider results from future advisory votes as appropriate when making compensation decisions.

Realizable 2017 Pay

The table above compares the 2017 target total compensation for our CEO to the actual realizable pay at the end of 2017. The "Target Total Compensation" bonus and equity amounts shown above are the targets set by our Compensation Committee, and the equity amounts approximately reflect the grant date fair values reported in the Summary Compensation Table below. The "Realizable Pay" bonus amount reflects the actual bonus paid to our CEO for 2017, and the equity amounts assume 100% acceleration of the 2017 equity grants as of December 31, 2017 and the closing price of the common stock on the last day of 2017, which was $22.10. Since none of these awards had actually vested at that time, the amount actually realized by Mr. Clendening, if any, upon vesting and exercise may vary from this figure.

The Compensation Committee believes that an NEO's actual compensation should reflect the Company's performance, and the table above illustrates our pay for performance alignment. For example, in 2017, our stock price increased approximately 50%, and Mr. Clendening's realizable pay was approximately 38% higher than his target total compensation shown above.

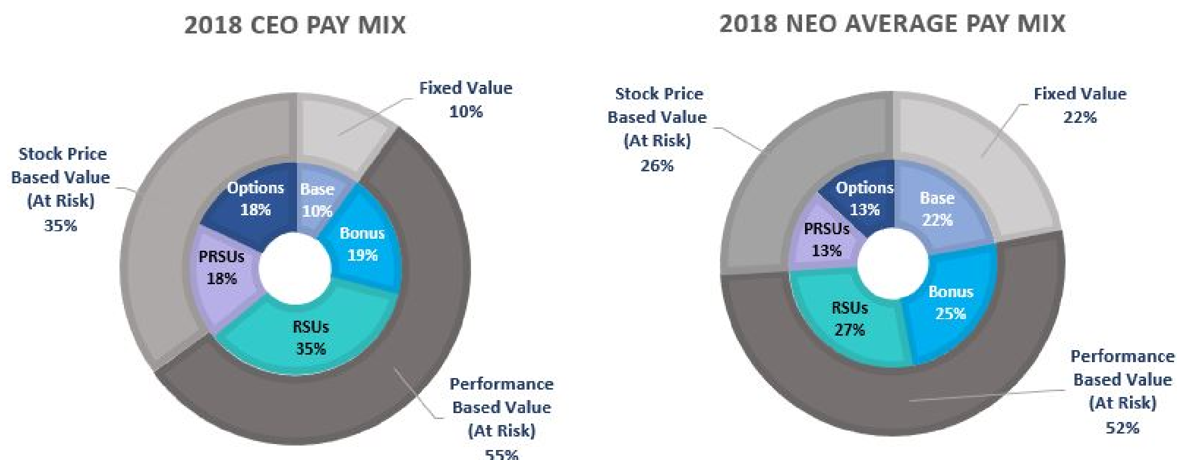
The substantial majority of the CEO's compensation is composed of variable cash bonus awards and equity awards that derive their value based on Company financial performance and the performance of the price of our common stock. As a result, much of our CEO's target total compensation opportunity is "at risk," and there can be no assurance that the target amount of the bonuses will be awarded, that the grant date fair values reported for the equity awards will reflect their actual economic value, or that comparable amounts will ever be realized by our CEO.

2018 Executive Compensation

Our Company and our business have undergone significant changes since late 2015, and as a result of this transition, our Compensation Committee began evolving our executive compensation practices during 2017 to ensure that we are able to attract and retain top caliber executive talent in the new markets and industries in which we now compete for talent. Below is a summary of executive compensation highlights for our 2018 program:

2018 Executive Compensation Highlights
• ***New Peers:*** We updated our peer group in light of the market and industry in which we now compete for talent.
• ***New Philosophy:*** Our Compensation Committee adopted a new philosophy to provide an attractive market-based compensation program tied to performance and aligned with the interests of stockholders. Our executive compensation program is designed to be competitive, aligned, balanced and sound.
• ***2018 Annual Bonus Plan is Performance-Based:*** Annual bonus plan is tied to Company financial performance metrics, as well certain human resources foundation metrics and balanced scorecard metrics in order to help us move toward an increased focus on operational objectives that are key to our growth strategy and operating as "One Company."
• ***2018 Equity Grants included Performance-Based RSUs:*** Equity grants were comprised of 25% performance-based RSUs, 25% stock options and 50% time-based RSUs. We transitioned away from the heavy use of stock options and began granting performance-based RSUs that are based on the achievement of pre-established financial performance metrics and are more in line with our long-term strategy.
• ***Adoption of Executive Stock Ownership Guidelines:*** The Board adopted stock ownership guidelines for our executive officers of 5X base salary for the CEO and 3X base salary for all other NEOs.
• ***Competitive Pay Practices:*** We believe the changes made to our executive compensation program for 2018 allow us to be competitive with companies with whom we compete for talent and to better reflect market expectations for "at-risk" and performance-based compensation.

2018 Mix of Pay: 90% of our CEO's and 78% of our average NEOs'* total target direct compensation for 2018 is at risk



2018 Executive Compensation Elements at a Glance

<table>
<tr><th>Base Salary</th><th>Annual Bonus Plan</th><th>Stock Options</th><th>Performance-Based RSUs</th><th>Time-Based RSUs</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Short-Term Element</td><td colspan="3">Long-Term Element</td></tr>
<tr><td>Fixed</td><td colspan="3">Performance-Based (at risk)</td><td>Value Based on Stock Price (at risk)</td></tr>
</table>

See "2018 Compensation Changes" for additional information regarding our 2018 Executive Compensation program.

Executive Compensation Best Practices

What we do:	What we don't do:
✓ *Pay for Performance:* A significant portion of our NEO compensation is at-risk, performance-based compensation. This helps to align our executive compensation with the interests of our stockholders.	× *Tax Gross-up Provisions for Change-In-Control:* We do not have tax gross-up provisions that would allow for a gross-up payment for excise and other taxes that could become payable as a result of payments made in connection with a change-in-control.
✓ *Pay Determinations:* We engage in a rigorous process to establish total direct compensation and its components, including reviewing market and survey data sourced from our peer group of companies and general industry, and utilizing an independent compensation consultant.	× *No excessive perquisites and personal benefits:* We do not provide significant perquisites and personal benefits that are not available to all other employees.
✓ *Annual Say-on-Pay Vote:* We hold an advisory vote on executive compensation annually and take the results of that vote into account when setting and reviewing our compensation practices and policies. We have had very positive results from our advisory vote on executive compensation each year the vote has been held.	× *No Pledging or Hedging:* Our Insider Trading Policy does not permit margining, pledging, hedging, short sales of or trading options related to our stock by any director, officer or employee.
✓ *Clawback Policy:* We have a clawback policy that would allow us to recoup certain compensation and awards paid to our NEOs in certain circumstances in the event that there is a restatement of our financial results.	× *No dividends on stock options or SARs or unearned awards:* No dividends or dividend equivalents accrue on stock options or SARs or are paid on unearned awards.
✓ *Double Trigger Change-in-Control:* Following a change-in control, our executive officers would only be entitled to severance benefits under their employment agreements if their employment is terminated without cause or if they terminate employment with us for good reason in connection with the change-in-control.	× *No repricing or granting of discounted stock options or SARs:* Our 2015 Plan (and our proposed 2018 Plan) prohibits the repricing of stock options and SARs without stockholder approval and does not permit the granting of stock options or SARs with exercise prices below fair market value.
✓ *Stock Ownership Guidelines:* We have stock ownership guidelines that require stock ownership that is 5X the annual base salary for our CEO, 3X the annual base salaries for our other executive officers and 4X the annual retainer for our directors.	× *No share recycling and minimum vesting:* Our 2015 Plan (and our proposed 2018 Plan) does not permit liberal share recycling or liberal share counting and has minimum vesting requirements for awards (no awards can vest prior to one-year from the date of grant).
✓ *Risk Management:* We perform regular risk management assessments for our compensation and benefit programs related to executive and non-executive compensation practices in order to ensure that our compensation policies and practices are not reasonably likely to have a material adverse effect on us.	

Compensation Philosophy and Practices

2017 Executive Compensation Philosophy and Practices

Our compensation philosophy for 2017 was to have an executive compensation program that is designed to increase stockholder value by attracting and retaining executives who can execute on our goals and by aligning the interests of those executives with the goals and interests of our Company and our stockholders. Our 2017 executive compensation program applied this philosophy as follows:

- ***Align Management to Operational and Financial Goals:*** Align the compensation of both existing and incoming executive management to our key operational and financial goals. Specifically, our 2017 annual performance-based cash bonus plan allocated a significant percentage of overall target compensation for executives to annual variable cash incentive bonuses based on operational and financial targets. In 2017, our CEO and Former CFO had a significant portion of their compensation dependent upon achievement of specific Company goals, and our New NEOs were also able to benefit from the achievement of Company goals in connection with the annual cash bonus plan.

- ***Stockholder-Management Alignment Through Long-Term Equity Grants:*** Ensure stockholder-management alignment through the use of long-term equity grants that have a value that is tied directly to the price of our common stock. In 2017, at least half (and for certain NEOs, including our CEO, 70%) of the long-term equity awards were comprised of stock options, which are inherently tied to the performance of our stock, and the other portion was comprised of RSUs.

- ***Cash and Equity Compensation:*** Our historical philosophy and practices were to set total cash compensation below market with above market equity compensation and a significant portion of equity granted in the form of options. We believe these historical practices were appropriate when we were seeking talent in the Washington State internet-based market. However, in connection with our transition to a Dallas-based technology-enabled financial solutions company, we began evolving our philosophy and practices during 2017 when hiring the New Executive Officers and setting 2018 executive compensation. In connection with this evolution, we began to focus more on having an attractive market-based compensation program in our new market and industry so that we could attract top caliber executive talent. When hiring the New Executive Officers during 2017, we began shifting from our previous cash and equity compensation practices of below market cash compensation with above market equity compensation that has a larger focus on options and began to focus more on market competitive compensation. See "2018 Compensation Changes" for additional information regarding changes to our executive compensation program for 2018.

- ***Attract and Retain Talent:*** Provide compensation that is both fair to the Company and the executive and attracts and retains talented and qualified executives through the use of competitive but reasonable salaries, short-term incentives and equity grants. In 2017 and in connection with hiring the New NEOs, attracting talent was a very important element of our compensation program. In setting compensation for each of these New NEOs, our compensation program had to be competitive in the market and industry where we compete for talent. See "Employment Agreements" for a discussion of how compensation was set for each of our New Executive Officers during 2017.

Compensation Process

The Compensation Committee solicits and receives input from a number of sources, including management and its independent compensation consultant (as further discussed below) when making executive compensation decisions. Although the Compensation Committee considers these sources of information, it uses its own discretion, based on the experience, knowledge, and diligence of its own members, to determine the compensation elements used in the compensation program and the mix of each element for each of the executives. This discretion is, by its nature, subjective. There is no set formula for how the Compensation Committee determines exactly how much value it places on any one element, or how any one element will compare to another element. The Board has selected the Compensation Committee members for their experience and abilities in determining compensation, and the Compensation Committee feels that a subjective determination by its members, after consideration of objective sources, is the most appropriate way for it to exercise its duties to the Board, to the Company and to stockholders.

The Compensation Committee's Role in Establishing Compensation

Our Compensation Committee is composed entirely of independent directors and administers our executive officer compensation program. In 2017, the Compensation Committee consulted regularly with its independent compensation consultant, our CEO, Former CFO, CLO and Chief Human Resources Officer ("CHRO") regarding the design and implementation of the 2017 executive compensation program.

Management's Role in Establishing Compensation

The Compensation Committee believes it is appropriate to consult with management on executive compensation matters because they each have significant involvement in and knowledge of the Company's business goals, strategies, and performance and are able to provide input and feedback. The CEO provides recommendations with respect to the executive officers' compensation, but he does not participate in any deliberations relating to his own compensation. The Compensation Committee considers management's recommendations, but retains full discretion in determining executive compensation.

The CEO, Former CFO, CLO and CHRO were regularly invited to attend Compensation Committee meetings during 2017. The Compensation Committee generally meets in executive session outside the presence of the CEO and other management. In carrying out its oversight responsibilities, the Compensation Committee regularly reports to the Board on the actions it has taken, as well as confers with the Board on compensation matters, as necessary.

The Company's legal advisors, human resources department, and corporate accounting department also support the Compensation Committee in developing and administering the Company's compensation plans and programs.

Role of Compensation Consultant

The Compensation Committee's independent compensation consultants were regularly invited to attend Compensation Committee meetings during 2017.

Compensia: Compensia served as the Compensation Committee's independent compensation consultant during 2016 and for the first half of 2017. During that time, Compensia provided advice to the Compensation Committee with respect to non-employee director and executive officer compensation matters.

During the first half of 2017, Compensia assisted the Compensation Committee with: advice and recommendations regarding the Company's compensation philosophy and strategies; advice on director and executive compensation levels and practices, including review and recommendations on director, CEO and other executive officer compensation, including the compensation of our New Executive Officers; advice on the Company's peer group; guidance on the design of our compensation plans and CEO/director stock ownership guidelines; evaluation of performance metrics and peer performance; recommendations regarding our 2015 Plan; and periodic reports to the Compensation Committee on market and industry compensation trends and regulatory developments.

Meridian: In connection with the Strategic Transition of the Company to a technology-enabled financial services company, in July 2017, the Compensation Committee engaged a new independent compensation consultant, Meridian Compensation Partners, LLC ("Meridian"), to provide advice on executive compensation matters for the remainder of 2017 and for 2018.

Following engagement by the Compensation Committee in July 2017, Meridian assisted the Compensation Committee with: advice on selecting a new peer group for the Company; advice and recommendations regarding proposed changes to Company's compensation philosophy and strategies for 2018 executive compensation matters; advice on executive compensation levels and practices; guidance on the design of our executive compensation plans for 2018; advice on establishing Executive Officer Stock Ownership Guidelines; determination of performance metrics for 2018 executive compensation; recommendations regarding our 2015 Plan and proposed 2018 Plan; and periodic reports to the Compensation Committee on market and industry compensation trends and regulatory developments.

Engagement of Compensia and Meridian: The Compensation Committee solely approved all engagement fees and other retention terms of each of Compensia and Meridian and determined each of their responsibilities for the period for which they served as the independent compensation consultant. Neither Compensia nor Meridian provided any services to the Company during 2017 other than its services as an independent compensation consultant to the Compensation Committee. The Compensation Committee assessed the independence of each of Compensia and

Meridian pursuant to applicable SEC and NASDAQ rules and concluded that each of their work for the Compensation Committee does not raise any conflict of interest.

Benchmarking Against Peers

In late 2016, the Compensation Committee, with the assistance of Compensia, reviewed the Company's peer group and determined that the same peer group that was used in 2016 should be used for 2017 executive compensation decisions. The peer group recommended by Compensia and approved by the Compensation Committee for 2017 consisted of the following 17 companies, which were in the internet software and services, asset management and custody banks, application software and specialized consumer services industries, with a similar revenue range and market cap.

Angie's List*	Cohen & Steers, Inc.	Financial Engines, Inc.	Liquidity Services, Inc.
Bankrate, Inc.	DHI Group, Inc.	GAMCO Investors, Inc.	Monster Worldwide*
Bottomline Technologies	Ebix, Inc.	IntraLinks Holdings*	Virtus Investment Partners, Inc.
Callidus Software, Inc.	Envestnet, Inc.	Lifelock*	Web.com Group, Inc.
			WisdomTree Investments, Inc.

* Each of these companies have been acquired since the peer group was determined.

Compensia provided peer group comparison data for the Company’s executive officers with respect to salary, annual cash incentive bonus, and equity grants, and the Compensation Committee used this data for background and context when setting the amounts of the various compensation elements for executive officers for 2017, but did not tie any compensation decisions directly to this data or set compensation to fall within a certain percentile of our peers.

It is important to note that in determining executive compensation, the Compensation Committee does not solely rely on comparative data from the peer group. Such comparative data provides helpful market information about our peer group, but the Compensation Committee believes in utilizing a number of resources, such as published compensation surveys and other available proxy and compensation data, to ensure that our executive compensation is competitive in the market where we compete for talent. The Compensation Committee also considers pay for performance, individual capability, potential to create value, capabilities, experience, and performance and internal parity objectives in setting compensation. All applicable information is reviewed and considered in aggregate, and the Compensation Committee does not place any particular weighting on any one factor.

Compensation Decisions Made in 2017

In 2017, the key elements of our executive compensation program for the NEOs consisted of base salary, target annual cash incentive bonus, and long-term equity incentive awards that were comprised of options and RSUs.

In designing the executive compensation program, the Compensation Committee took into consideration our financial and business success, the success our Strategic Transformation and the need to attract top caliber executives. In line with this compensation philosophy, the Compensation Committee determined the amounts of each compensation element with the goal of attracting and retaining top caliber executives and with the desire to align the financial interests of those executives with the interests of our Company and our stockholders.

Annual Base Salary

General

Each executive receives an annual base salary that is intended to provide a minimum fixed level of cash compensation that provides security and preserves an employee’s commitment during downturns in the relevant industries and/or equity markets. The Compensation Committee considers a competitive base salary to be an important factor in retaining and attracting key employees in a competitive marketplace, but it also balances the base salary with performance-based compensation elements to ensure that executive incentives are aligned with the Company’s and stockholder's objectives. The base salary is initially established by the Compensation Committee pursuant to employment or other agreements with the executives and are set at a level that the Compensation Committee believes is competitive in the market place. Any annual changes thereafter may be based on an evaluation of many factors, such as our performance and annual cash compensation budget, each executive’s individual performance, criticality of the role, experience of the executive, comparative market data, and internal pay equity.

2017 Annual Base Salaries

The only NEOs who were employed by us at the beginning of 2017 and eligible for an increase in base salary for 2017 were Messrs. Clendening and Emans. In December 2017, the Compensation Committee determined the base salary increases for Messrs. Clendening and Emans for 2017, which are set forth below along with the annual base salaries for our New NEOs for 2017:

Name	2017	2016	% Change
John S. Clendening	$ 550,000	$ 500,000	10.0%
John D. Palmer	$ 220,000	N/A	N/A
Eric M. Emans	$ 367,770	$ 358,800	2.5%
Robert D. Oros	$ 375,000	N/A	N/A
Sanjay Baskaran	$ 350,000	N/A	N/A
Ann J. Bruder	$ 350,000	N/A	N/A

Mr. Clendening's increase in base salary reflects the Compensation Committee's review of his performance for 2016, which included a review of his impact on our successful financial and operational results for the year, leadership within our Company, accomplishments that affected our performance and achievement of our strategic goals throughout the year.

As further described under "Employment Agreements" the annual base salaries for the New NEOs were set at the time they joined our Company at a level believed to be competitive in the market where we compete for talent.

Annual Short-Term Incentive/Bonus Payments

General

Executives are generally provided the opportunity to earn an annual performance-based cash incentive bonus. This bonus provides incentive for the achievement of our operational and financial goals, assists in retaining, attracting, and motivating employees in the near-term, and provides a balance to the volatility of short-term equity prices and the related impact on the value of an executive’s equity holdings. Target annual bonuses, as a percentage of salary, are generally established upon commencement of an executive’s employment and are reviewed each year and updated when the Compensation Committee deems it appropriate. The performance measures for the 2017 bonus plan were tied to important Company financial metrics, such as revenue and Adjusted EBITDA, for all NEOs, and additional operational and financial metrics related to our Wealth Management business and Tax Preparation business for the leaders of those businesses.

2017 Annual Bonus

2017 Executive Bonus Plan: Our 2017 Executive Bonus Plan (the "2017 Executive Bonus Plan"), which was an annual cash incentive bonus plan that our Compensation Committee approved in February 2017, allowed potential

bonus payments to be made to each of our executive officers based on the operational and financial metrics applicable to each executive officer under the 2017 Executive Bonus Plan as described further below.

2017 Bonus Plan for Non-Executive Employees: Because Mr. Palmer is not an executive officer, he was eligible to receive a bonus payment under our 2017 bonus plan for non-executive employees (together with the 2017 Executive Bonus Plan, the "Bonus Plans"), which allowed for Mr. Palmer to receive a potential bonus payment based on our financial metrics set forth in the plan as described further below.

Target Bonus and Metrics: The target bonus for each NEO under the 2017 Bonus Plans was based on a percentage of base salary, which was set forth in the Bonus Plans (and was consistent with the bonus targets set forth in the new employment agreements with each of our New Executive Officers further described under "Employment Agreements" (the "New Executive Officer Employment Agreements").

- ***CEO:*** Mr. Clendening's bonus target under the 2017 Executive Bonus Plan was increased from 100% to 200% of base salary for 2017. This increase was made to ensure Mr. Clendening's compensation was competitive in the market where we compete for talent and was a result of Mr. Clendening's performance during 2016 and his leadership that allowed us to successfully achieve certain financial performance and strategic goals for 2016. Because this element of compensation is at risk, the Compensation Committee believed that the increase would allow us to better compensate Mr. Clendening for results while keeping Mr. Clendening's interest aligned with our stockholders. This increase also reflects the beginning stages of our shift during 2017 away from targeting below market cash compensation and towards setting market competitive compensation levels for our executive officers.

- ***New NEOs:*** As further described under "Employment Agreements" the target bonus for the New NEOs was set at the time they joined our Company at a level believed to be competitive in the market where we compete for talent. In addition, the New Executive Officer Employment Agreements and/ or the 2017 Executive Bonus Plan required that each of the New Executive Officers would receive 2017 bonus payments that are pro-rated to reflect the number of days of the executive's employment in 2017 and will be no lower than the pro-rated amount of the executive's target bonus (such that they were guaranteed their pro-rated target bonus for 2017). Because they were not employed for the full year, which somewhat limited their influence on certain strategies that were in place before they became NEOs, our Compensation Committee believed that guaranteeing this minimum bonus amount for these NEOs was appropriate.

- ***Former CFO:*** When the 2017 bonus targets were set, Mr. Emans had previously announced that he would not be relocating with the Company's headquarters during 2017. As such, Mr. Emans was eligible for a prorated bonus for 2017 for the time he served as our CFO. Mr. Emans' bonus target as a percent of salary did not increase from 2016.

Under the Bonus Plans, the actual bonus to be paid following the end of 2017 varies depending on the percentage of achievement of each element of the bonus plan that is applicable for each NEO for the year. Each element is calculated separately, based upon the performance for the applicable metric, the weighting of that element, and the target bonus amount. The range of possible bonus achievement for each component is 0% to 150% of the target.

For each participating NEO, the target bonus percentage, the financial and/or operational performance metrics used, and the weighting of each metric are set forth in the table below:

		Bonus Performance Metrics (% of total bonus calculation)[1]				
Name	**Target bonus percentage (% of base salary)**	**Blucora Revenue**	**Blucora Adjusted EBITDA**	**Segment Revenue[2]**	**Segment Income[2]**	**Other Segment Metrics [2]**
John S. Clendening	200%	50%	50%	—	—	—
John D. Palmer	30%	50%	50%	—	—	—
Eric M. Emans	60%	50%	50%	—	—	—
Robert D. Oros	100%	—	20%	30%	30%	20%
Sanjay Baskaran	60%	—	20%	30%	30%	20%
Ann J. Bruder	60%	50%	50%	—	—	—

(1) The operational and financial metrics selected by the Compensation Committee for the 2017 Executive Bonus Plan reflect the responsibilities of each NEO. For Messrs. Clendening, Emans, Palmer and Ms. Bruder, the metrics were tied to our overall Company performance, and for Messrs. Oros and Baskaran, a portion of the metrics were tied to our overall Company performance and a portion of the metrics were tied to metrics related to the businesses that they led.

(2) "Other Metrics" includes TaxAct Paid E-Files in our Tax Preparation segment and Wealth Management segment assets under management ("AUM") net inflows. See "2017 Performance Targets vs. Actual Results" below for additional information regarding each of these metrics.

2017 Bonus Performance and Payout Scale: The actual bonus percentages are calculated using the following scale, with the maximum payout being 150% of target:

	Range of Financial Performance in Bonus Payout Scale (% of financial target)	Range of Bonus Payout (% of target bonus)
Applies to all metrics:	Threshold of 80% to Maximum of 120%	50% at Threshold to Cap of 150%

The target payment was set to be challenging and to require significant effort by our NEOs for their achievement. The threshold amount shown above is based on meeting the financial performance goals at the threshold range.

2017 Performance Targets vs. Actual Results (dollars in thousands except the number of TaxAct Paid E-files): The specific Company financial targets for 2017 for each metric used in calculating the NEO bonus payouts are set forth in the table below along with the Company's actual performance for each of those metrics.

Performance Goal	Target	Actual	Achievement % [1]
Blucora Revenue [2]	$ 264,754	$ 274,355	104%
Blucora Adjusted EBITDA [3]	$ 106,075	$ 105,161	100%
Wealth Management Segment Net Revenue[4]	$ 109,662	$ 113,417	104%
Wealth Management Segment Income[4]	$ 48,279	$ 53,446	111%
Wealth Management Segment AUM Net Inflows[5]	$ 570,000	$ 794,185	140%
Tax Preparation Segment Revenue[4]	$ 154,601	$ 160,938	105%
Tax Preparation Segment Income[4]	$ 76,856	$ 75,120	98%
TaxAct Paid E-files(#)[6]	2,981	2,608	88%

(1) Per the terms of the Bonus Plans, the achievement percent is rounded up to the nearest whole percentage point.

(2) Blucora Revenue is comprised of our Tax Preparation Segment Revenue and Wealth Management Segment Net Revenue (which is Wealth Management Segment Revenue net of advisor payout (cost of sales)).

(3) Reflects consolidated externally reported Adjusted EBITDA, adjusted for internally developed software, bonus accruals and other non-operational items. The Compensation Committee uses Adjusted EBITDA (subject to certain adjustments) because it believes it is an important measure of our operating performance. See Annex A - Non-GAAP Reconciliation for a reconciliation of Adjusted EBITDA to Net Income and for additional information regarding this non-GAAP measure.

(4) Reflects externally reported Income or Revenue for each of our Wealth Management segment and our Tax Preparation segment, with Income for each segment adjusted for internally developed software and bonus accruals. In addition, the Tax Preparation segment included an allocation of budgeted growth initiative investments.

(5) Reflects new AUM inflows less outflows for our Wealth Management segment.

(6) Reflects the number of accepted federal tax e-files made through our software and online services for which we received payment.

2017 Target Bonus and Performance Achievement: The following table sets forth, for each of the participating NEOs, the target annual incentive bonus for 2017, the achievement percentage for each element of the 2017 cash incentive bonus plan, and the earned annual bonus for 2017 (in dollars and as a percent target), which is based on the payout scale set forth above.

	Target Annual Bonus (% of Base Salary)		2017 Earned Annual Bonus	
Name	% of Base Salary	Target Dollar Value [(1)]	Actual Dollar Value Earned	Earned Bonus as a % of Target
John S. Clendening	200%	$ 1,100,000	$ 1,122,000	102.0%
John D. Palmer	30%	$ 56,965	$ 58,104	102.0%
Eric M. Emans	60%	$ 184,407	$ 188,095	102.0%
Robert D. Oros	100%	$ 315,413	$ 361,147	114.5%
Sanjay Baskaran [(2)]	60%	$ 193,326	$ 193,326	100.0%
Ann J. Bruder	60%	$ 112,770	$ 115,025	102.0%

(1) The target shown for all NEOs, excluding Mr. Clendening, reflects a pro rata target bonus for 2017. The bonus payments were pro-rated to reflect the number of days of employment during 2017.

(2) The combined Performance Target Achievement of all of Mr. Baskaran's applicable performance metrics under the 2017 Executive Bonus Plan did not meet the target level of achievement for a target bonus payout; however, per the terms of the Executive Bonus Plan and because he was a New NEO who joined the Company in 2017, Mr. Baskaran was guaranteed a minimum payment of his pro-rated target bonus for 2017.

2017 Additional Bonus Payments

Sign-on Bonuses Under Employment Agreements: As further described under "Employment Agreements," each of Mr. Baskaran and Ms. Bruder received an initial signing bonus in the amounts of $210,000 and $200,000, respectively, when they joined our Company in 2017.

Mr. Palmer's Bonus: In connection with his agreement to serve as our Principal Financial and Accounting Officer when Mr. Emans ceased serving in those roles on November 1, 2017, we agreed to pay Mr. Palmer a $50,000 bonus that was paid during 2018.

Annual Long-Term Equity Grants

General

The Company's long-term equity incentive program is designed to be performance-oriented, competitive and flexible, providing incentive for executives to focus on long-term fundamentals and create long-term stockholder value. While the equity program is primarily intended to maintain stockholder-management alignment, the equity awards made under the program also serve to attract highly qualified executives, promote a team environment and maintain the Company's competitive position compared to the compensation programs of companies that are part of our peer group and other companies with whom we compete for talent. The equity awards also have high retention value because they vest over a period of time, typically three years, and unvested awards are generally forfeited when an executive's employment ends.

The 2017 long-term equity incentive program consisted of the following types of grants:

- ***Stock Options:*** Stock options provide incentive for the achievement of stock price growth. They provide a high level of alignment with stockholders because individuals do not realize substantial value from stock options unless our stock price significantly improves following grant. Stock options represent the right to purchase shares of our common stock. Stock options were granted at an exercise price equal to the closing price of our common stock on the relevant date of grant.

- ***RSUs:*** RSUs provide upside incentive when the value of the Company's stock appreciates, but also provides some protection in down markets. Because RSUs vest into shares of the Company's common stock, they serve to create stockholder-management alignment. Each RSU vests over a certain period of time as long as

the employee remains employed by us, and each RSU represents the right to receive one share of our common stock upon vesting.

The volatility and the related potential for incentivizing excessive risk-taking inherent in stock options is partially offset by the relative stability of the RSU grants, which vest into shares of common stock and thus increase or decrease in value in direct proportion to any increase or decrease in the price of the common stock.

The Compensation Committee does not grant equity awards in anticipation of the release of material nonpublic information. Similarly, the Company does not time the release of material nonpublic information based on equity award grant dates.

Grant Practices for 2017

Mr. Clendening: The factors considered by the Compensation Committee in determining the size and mix of Mr. Clendening's equity grant for 2017 included past equity granting practices (including our past practice of having a significant portion of equity in the form of stock options), previous equity awards made to Mr. Clendening, comparative market data with reference to our peer group (see peer group discussion) and the market where we compete for talent, and the Compensation Committee's subjective evaluation of Mr. Clendening's performance and his leadership that allowed us to successfully achieve certain financial performance and strategic goals for 2016. Mr. Clendening's 2017 annual equity grant was approved in December 2016 with a grant date of the first trading day in 2017, which was January 3, 2017.

New NEOs: The equity grants for each of the New NEOs were made at the time they joined our Company at a level believed to be competitive in the market where we compete for talent. In addition, the equity grants received by our New NEOs in 2017 were made as an inducement in order to incentivize each New NEO to join our Company, and these grants were larger than what we expect our annual equity grants to be for each New Executive Officer going forward. See "Employment Agreements" for additional information.

2017 NEO Grant Summary

The 2017 NEO equity grants are set forth in the following table:

		Share Amounts Awarded[1]		Percentage of Total Equity Award	
Name:	**Aggregate Grant Value of Equity Grants**	**RSU (#)**	**Options (#)**	**Options as a % of Total Grant**	**RSUs as a % of Total Grant**
John S. Clendening	$ 3,775,000	76,779	555,372	70%	30%
John D. Palmer	$ 150,000	2,830	19,811	70%	30%
Eric M. Emans [2]	—	—	—	—	—
Robert S. Oros	$ 1,500,000	28,846	201,923	70%	30%
Sanjay Baskaran	$ 1,500,000	49,833	154,485	50%	50%
Ann J. Bruder	$ 700,000	16,129	51,612	50%	50%

(1) These grants vest over a three-year period, with 33.33% vesting on the first anniversary of the date of grant and approximately 16.67% vesting at the end of each six-month period thereafter.

(2) Mr. Emans did not receive an annual equity grant for 2017 because, in connection with the relocation of the Company's headquarters, he had previously announced that he would not be relocating with the Company at the time the 2017 annual equity grants were made.

See "Grants of Plan-Based Awards in 2017" under "Compensation of Named Executive Officers" below for further information regarding the equity grants made to NEOs in 2017.

Employment Agreements

Executive Employment Agreements; Severance Payments

The Company uses employment agreements to retain and attract highly qualified executive officers in a competitive market and currently has employment agreements with all of its executive officers (which includes all of the NEOs, excluding Mr. Palmer who serves as our Principal Accounting Officer but is not an executive officer). We believe that employment agreements ensure continued dedication of executives in case of personal uncertainties or risk of job loss and ensure that compensation and benefits expectations are understood and satisfied. The employment agreements generally include an initial base salary, a target incentive bonus percentage that serves as the basis for the annual cash incentive bonus plan and an equity grant upon hire. The employment agreements also include specific terms regarding severance payments and other benefits, if any, due to the executive under various employment termination circumstances. See "Potential Payments upon Termination or Change in Control" for additional information regarding the severance payments each of our NEOs could receive under their employment agreements.

CEO: When Mr. Clendening joined our Company in April 2016, we entered into an employment agreement with him that was set to expire April 3, 2019. On September 5, 2017, we amended Mr. Clendening's employment agreement so that it will continue in effect until April 3, 2021 and will automatically renew for successive one-year terms thereafter. Mr. Clendening's employment agreement provides that he is entitled to, among other things: (i) an annual base salary of not less than $500,000; (ii) a target bonus of at least 100% of base salary; (iii) an initial grant of equity that he received when he joined our Company in 2016 and he will be eligible to receive additional annual equity grants; (iv) reimbursement for relocation and other related expenses up to a maximum of $135,000; and (vii) reasonable attorneys' fees and expenses related to the negotiation and preparation of the employment agreement up to a maximum of $30,000. Mr. Clendening's employment agreement also provides for certain severance payments and other benefits.

See "Potential Payments upon Termination or Change in Control" for additional information regarding the severance payments Mr. Clendening is eligible to receive under his employment agreement.

New Executive Officer Employment Agreements: When each of our New Executive Officers joined our Company in 2017, we entered into the New Executive Officer Employment Agreements that provided for the following compensation packages that were set at a level that the Compensation Committee believed to be competitive in the market where we compete for talent:

Name	Annual Base	Annual Bonus Target as a % of Base[(1)]	Initial Equity Grant Amount [(2)]	Signing Bonus	Relocation/ Commuting Assistance [(3)]	Total
Robert D. Oros [(4)]	$375,000	100%	$1,500,000	$—	$525,000	$2,410,001
Sanjay Baskaran	$350,000	60%	$1,500,000	$210,000	$150,000	$2,210,001
Ann J. Bruder	$350,000	60%	$700,000	$200,000	$150,000	$1,400,001

(1) The New Executive Employment Agreements state that the 2017 bonus payments are to be pro-rated to reflect the number of days of the executive's employment in 2017 and will be no lower than the pro-rated amount of the executive's target bonus.

(2) Mr. Oros' initial equity grant was comprised of 70% options and 30% RSUs, and Mr. Baskaran and Ms. Bruder's initial equity grants were comprised of 50% options and 50% RSUs.

(3) Reflects the maximum amount to be paid by us (which may be grossed-up for taxes) for relocation-related expenses for the executive.

(4) In addition Mr. Oros may be reimbursed up to $10,000 for any legal expenses incurred as a result of his employment with us.

Determination of Compensation for Each New Executive Officer: When determining the compensation of each of our New Executive Officers in 2017, our Compensation Committee consulted with our independent compensation consultant at the time, which was Compensia, to provide an analysis of each executive officer's proposed compensation package. Compensia provided peer group comparison data (based on the peer group discussed under "Role of Compensation Consultant ") for each of the New Executive Officers with respect to salary, annual cash incentive bonus and equity grants. Our Compensation Committee considered the information provided by Compensia along with other information, such as publicly-available compensation information from the companies with whom we compete for talent, prior compensation of the executive being hired, experience, the type of business or function for which each New Executive Officer would be responsible and internal pay parity. In order to attract and hire the New Executive Officers

in 2017, we had to provide market competitive compensation packages in the new market and industry where we compete for talent and did not establish them to fall within our historical cash and equity compensation guidelines described above. We also did not establish New Executive Officer compensation to fall within a certain percentile of our peer group for 2017. In addition, the equity grants received by our New NEOs in 2017 were made as an inducement in order to incentivize each New NEO to join our Company, and these grants were larger than what we expect our annual equity grants to be going forward. See "2018 Compensation Changes" for additional information regarding the evolution of our executive compensation program and the changes made for 2018 executive compensation.

See "Potential Payments upon Termination or Change in Control" for information regarding the severance payments these New Executive Officers are eligible to receive under the New Executive Employment Agreements.

Mr. Palmer: Because Mr. Palmer is not an executive officer, we have not entered into an employment agreement with him and he is eligible for severance under our severance plan that covers all employees other than executive officers. Mr. Palmer's compensation package was set at a level believed to be competitive for his position. See "Potential Payments upon Termination or Change in Control" for additional information.

Mr. Emans: Mr. Emans entered into a Consulting Agreement (the "Emans Consulting Agreement") with the Company when he ceased serving as our Chief Financial Officer on November 1, 2017. Pursuant to the Emans Consulting Agreement, Mr. Emans agreed to provide transition consulting services to the Company through February 28, 2018. In consideration for such services, the Company agreed to pay Mr. Emans $50,500 per month, or $202,000, and a final lump-sum of $550,000 on or after March 1, 2018. In addition, the Emans Consulting Agreement extended the option exercise period for all outstanding vested stock options to the earlier of the option expiration date or June 30, 2019. See "Potential Payments upon Termination or Change in Control" for additional information regarding the payments Mr. Emans received under his employment agreement with us when he left the Company on November 1, 2017.

2018 Compensation Changes

Changes to Compensation Philosophy and Executive Compensation Practices

- ***Recent Changes to our Business and Company:*** Our Company and our business have undergone significant changes since late 2015, and as a result of this transition, which includes the changes noted below, our Compensation Committee began evolving our executive compensation practices during 2017 to ensure that we are able to attract and retain executive talent in the new markets and industries where we now compete for talent:

    - ***Strategic Transformation:*** Our Strategic Transformation, which was announced in October 2015, has transformed us from a Washington-based company that operated a portfolio of internet businesses to a Dallas, Texas-based technology-enabled financial solutions company through which we offer wealth management and tax preparation products and services through HD Vest and TaxAct, respectively.

    - ***New Executive Officers:*** As a result of our Strategic Transformation and the relocation of our headquarters, we have recently hired a new executive team, which includes the New Executive Officers who were all hired in 2017.

    - ***New Board Members:*** We have four new Board members who began serving in 2017. Our new Board members, two of whom currently serve as members of our Compensation Committee (including our Compensation Committee Chair), have brought new ideas and a fresh perspective to our executive compensation program. See "Information Regarding the Board of Directors" for additional information regarding our new Board members.

- ***Changing Philosophy and Practices During 2017****:* We believe our historical cash and equity compensation philosophy of setting total cash compensation below market with above market equity compensation and a significant portion of equity granted in the form of options was appropriate when we were seeking talent in the Washington internet-based market. However, in connection with our transition to a Dallas-based technology-enabled financial solutions company, we began evolving our philosophy and practices during 2017 when hiring the New Executive Officers. In connection with this evolution we began to focus more on having an attractive

market-based compensation program in our new market and industry so that we could attract top caliber executive talent in the financial and technology industries.

- ***Change in Compensation Consultants:*** In July 2017, our Compensation Committee engaged a new independent compensation consultant to assist in reviewing our executive officer compensation philosophy and practices in light of our new business strategy and in the new market and industry in which we now operate.

- ***New Philosophy:*** The philosophy underlying our executive compensation plans is to provide an attractive and market-based compensation program tied to performance and aligned with the interest of stockholders. We believe our executive compensation program should have the following elements and adhere to the following principles:
  - ***Competitive:*** Enable us to attract, motivate and retain high caliber executive officers who will maximize the potential of the business over time.
  - ***Aligned:*** Clear alignment of executive compensation to the short-term and long-term financial outcomes and value-drivers of the business.
  - ***Balanced:*** Foster sustained growth and alignment through a balanced approach to compensation design.
  - ***Sound:*** Encourage achievement of our strategy and goals through policies and structure that reinforce desired behaviors that are in line with our purpose, vision, ethics and values.

- ***New Peers:*** Our new compensation consultants reviewed our peer group and determined that, in light of our Strategic Transformation and the market and industry in which we now operate, our peer group should be updated. See "2018 Peers for Benchmarking" below for additional information regarding our new peer group that was used for 2018 compensation decisions.

- ***2018 Executive Compensation:*** After we established a new peer group, our Compensation Committee approved changes to our executive compensation program for 2018 that it believes allows us to be competitive with our peer group and with the companies with whom we compete for talent and to reflect market expectations for at-risk compensation so that we are able to retain our New Executive Officers and attract additional executive officers when necessary (including our Chief Financial Officer who was hired in early 2018). In addition, these changes also allowed for an internal calibration of executive compensation, as each of the New Executive Officers hired in 2017 came from different industries with different expectations of compensation. We believe that the executive compensation changes that were made for 2018 will assist us in achieving our strategy of operating as "One Company" and will help us to be competitive with our peers and in the market and industry where we compete for talent while also focusing on internal pay parity.

- ***2018 Compensation Mix:*** The 2018 compensation mix is comprised of the following, with a significant portion continuing to be performance-based and be "at-risk" (the CEO continues to have 90% of his compensation "at-risk" for 2018):
  - ***Base:*** In 2018, our base salaries increased as a result of our review of the peer group and of the market and industries where we compete for talent. For example, our CEO's base salary increased approximately 9% to $600,000.
  - ***Bonus:*** In 2018, we continued to tie a substantial portion of the executive officer's compensation to the Company's short-term bonus plan, which is tied to the achievement of our operational and financial goals as well as specific individual goals and assists in retaining, attracting, and motivating employees in the near-term. Similar to 2017, the operational and financial metrics selected by the Compensation Committee for the 2018 annual bonus plan reflect the responsibilities of each NEO, such that they are tied to our overall Company performance or certain metrics related to the different businesses that the executive oversees or is involved. Our 2018 annual bonus plan metrics are also tied to certain human resources foundation metrics and balanced scorecard metrics, which we believe will help us move toward an increased focus on operational objectives that are key to our growth strategy and also moves toward operating as "One Company." The CEO's target bonus as a percentage of his base salary did not increase in 2018 from 2017, which continues to keep a significant portion of his cash compensation performance-based.

- *Equity:* The most significant change to our executive compensation program for 2018 was with respect to the type and mix of equity granted to our executive officers. For 2018, we shifted from our equity grants being comprised of options and RSUs to the following mix of equity:

    - 25% performance-based RSUs that are eligible to vest on January 1, 2021, subject to the Company achieving a certain level of non-GAAP earnings per share during 2020;

    - 25% stock options that vest equally each year over a three-year period; and

    - 50% time-based RSUs that vest equally each year over a three-year period.

  This transition in equity mix was made in order for our executive compensation to be competitive with peers and to reflect market expectations for "at-risk" and performance-based compensation. We have de-emphasized options, which have a value based on the market, and have moved toward performance-based RSUs, which are based on Company performance metrics that the Compensation Committee believes are in line with our long-term strategy and better align management with long-term stockholder value. In connection with this transition, it is the Compensation Committee's long-term goal to continue to evolve to a higher mix of performance-based RSUs and to transition away from the use of stock options, which we believe is competitive with our peers and in line with our compensation philosophy.

- ***Adoption of Executive Stock Ownership Guidelines:*** In February 2018, the Board adopted stock ownership guidelines that are applicable to all of our executive officers effective as of January 1, 2018. These guidelines require that our executive officers acquire and hold shares of our common stock equal in market value to the multiple of each of their base salaries as follows: 5X for CEO and 3X for all other NEOs.

2018 Peers for Benchmarking

In late 2017, the Compensation Committee, with the assistance of Meridian, reviewed the Company's peer group and determined that, in light of our Strategic Transformation, our peer group should be updated for 2018 executive compensation decisions. The peer group recommended by Meridian and approved by the Compensation Committee for 2018 consisted of the following 17 companies, which are in the asset management and custody banks, investment banking and brokerage and internet software and services industries, with a similar revenue range and market cap.

AllianceBernstein Holding L.P.	Eaton Vance Corp.	Interactive Brokers Group, Inc.	NIC Inc.
Artisan Partners Asset Management Inc.	Envestnet, Inc.	Investment Technology Group, Inc.	Oppenheimer Holdings Inc.
Benefitfocus, Inc.	Federated Investors, Inc.	j2 Global, Inc.	Virtus Investment Partners, Inc.
Cowen Inc.	Financial Engines, Inc.	Ladenburg Thalmann Financial Services Inc.	Waddell & Reed Financial, Inc.
			WisdomTree Investments, Inc.

Compensation Policies and Practices

In addition to the compensation elements and decisions discussed above in this CD&A, the Company has a number of compensation policies that are designed to retain and incent executives and to protect Company and stockholder interests.

Clawback Policy

Pursuant to the Company's Executive Incentive Compensation Recoupment Policy, if the Company is required to prepare an accounting restatement due to its material noncompliance with financial reporting requirements under the U.S. securities laws, then the Company shall, to the extent permitted by law, require reimbursement from current and former executive officers for incentive compensation awarded or received by them at any time during the three-year period preceding the date on which the Company is required to prepare the restatement, to the extent such executive officer is determined to have engaged in fraud or intentional illegal conduct materially contributing to such restatement, as determined by the Board of Directors in its sole discretion. The right to recoupment set forth in the policy includes recoupment of both cash and equity and is in addition to any other rights that the Company may have against any executive officer, including any remedies at law or in equity. The

policy is administered by the Compensation Committee. In addition, our 2015 Plan and our proposed 2018 Plan include provisions that allow us to clawback awards in accordance with this policy.

Prohibition Against Short Selling, Hedging, or Pledging of Company Securities

Our Insider Trading Policy prohibits any director, officer, or other employee from engaging in short sales of, or otherwise hedging, the Company's securities. This prohibition includes any transaction, direct or indirect, involving financial instruments that are designed to hedge or offset any decrease in the market value of our stock. This prohibition applies to all securities issued by the Company, including equity and debt. The Company's Insider Trading Policy also prohibits directors, officers, and employees from pledging the Company's securities as collateral for loans.

Perquisites and Personal Benefits

We have historically maintained a conservative approach to providing perquisites and personal benefits to executive officers. The limited perquisites and personal benefits offered have been carefully selected to ensure that there is an indirect benefit to the Company and that the value provided to employees is not excessive. In addition, most perquisites and personal benefits offered to executives are generally offered to all employees. Our perquisites and personal benefits include 401(k) employer's match, our contribution to the executive's health savings account, mobile communications reimbursement, a health club subsidy, and life insurance premiums. In addition, Messrs. Clendening, Oros and Baskaran and Ms. Bruder, pursuant to their employment agreements, also received reimbursement of their relocation expenses during 2017. A description and the attributed costs of these perquisites and personal benefits for the NEOs for 2017 are included in the "All Other Compensation" column of the Summary Compensation Table and described in the notes to that table.

Executive Officer Stock Ownership Guidelines

In February 2018, the Board adopted stock ownership guidelines that are applicable to all of our executive officers effective as of January 1, 2018. These stock ownership guidelines reflect the Board's belief in the importance of aligning the economic interests of stockholders and management. Under the terms of these guidelines, the executive officers are expected to acquire and hold shares of our common stock equal in market value to the multiple of each of their base salaries set forth below (calculated as of December 31 of each year):

Position	Ownership Requirement
CEO	5x
Other Executive Officers	3x

All executive officers, excluding the CEO, have five years from the date that the guidelines were adopted to attain the minimum level of ownership. In 2017, the Board adopted guidelines applicable to the CEO that had the same ownership requirement shown above, and the CEO had met his ownership requirement at the time the Executive Officer Stock Ownership Guidelines were adopted.

As of December 31, 2017, all of our NEOs were in compliance with the applicable ownership guidelines or otherwise expected to achieve the requisite ownership levels within the designated five-year time-frame.

Limits on Deductibility of Compensation

Prior to the adoption of the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act, Section 162(m) of the IRC limited our deductibility of compensation paid to our CEO and each of the next 3 most highly compensated executive officers (excluding the Chief Financial Officer) in excess of $1,000,000, but excluded "performance-based compensation" from this limit. However, under the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act, effective for taxable years beginning after December 31, 2017, the exemption for "performance-based compensation" has been repealed, such that compensation paid to our covered executive officers (including our Chief Financial Officer) will no longer be deductible to the extent it exceeds $1,000,000, unless it qualifies for transition relief applicable to certain arrangements in place as of November 2, 2017. The 2017 stock options were designed to qualify as "performance-based compensation" for purposes of IRC Section 162(m), but because of the uncertainties relating to the transition relief, no assurances can be given as to whether such awards will qualify as "performance-based compensation" exempt from the $1,000,000 deductibility limit.

Risk Considerations in Our Compensation Programs

The Compensation Committee believes that the mix and design of the elements of executive and non-executive compensation do not encourage management to assume excessive risk taking, and following assessment of our compensation program we do not believe that our compensation program creates risks that are reasonably likely to have a material adverse effect on the Company for the following reasons:

- We structure our pay to consist of both fixed and variable compensation for our employees. The fixed (or salary) portion of compensation is designed to provide a steady income regardless of our financial performance or the performance of our stock price so that executives do not feel pressured to focus exclusively on our financial performance or our stock price performance to the detriment of other important business metrics. The variable (cash short-term incentive and equity-based long-term incentive) portions of compensation are designed to reward both short- and long-term financial performance.

- For short-term performance, our annual Bonus Plans are intended to provide annual cash payments that are awarded based on achievement of earnings goals that are based on the operational and financial metrics applicable to each executive officer and are established by the Compensation Committee. In addition, the 2017 maximum bonus award opportunity for NEOs was subject to a cap of 150% of their target awards.

- For long-term performance, our 2017 equity grants were comprised of stock options and RSUs that vest over a three-year period. We believe these equity grants provide incentive for executives and other employees who receive these grants to focus on long-term fundamentals and create long-term stockholder value. In addition, as discussed under "2018 Compensation Changes," in 2018 we granted performance-based RSUs that are eligible to vest on January 1, 2021, subject to the Company achieving a certain level of non-GAAP earnings per share during 2020. We believe these grants added an additional performance-based component that requires the long-term growth of our Company over a three-year period in order to vest and provides an upside reward for significant long-term growth in EPS.

- We have a Clawback Policy that allows us to recoup certain compensation and awards paid to our Named Executive Officers in certain circumstances in the event that there is a material restatement of our financial results.

- Our Insider Trading Policy does not permit margining, pledging, hedging, short sales of or trading options related to our stock by any director, officer or employee.

- We have stock ownership guidelines that require stock ownership that is 5X the annual base salary for our CEO, 3X the annual base salaries for our other executive officers and 4X the annual retainer for our directors.

COMPENSATION COMMITTEE REPORT

The following Report of the Compensation Committee shall not be deemed to be “soliciting material” or to be “filed” with the SEC, and the information in this report shall not be incorporated by reference into any future filing under the Securities Act, or the Exchange Act, except to the extent that the Company specifically incorporates it by reference into such filing.

The Compensation Committee has reviewed and discussed the Compensation Discussion and Analysis with management. Based on this review and discussion, the Compensation Committee recommended to the Board of Directors that the Compensation Discussion and Analysis be included in this Proxy Statement.

Members of the Compensation Committee

H. McIntyre Gardner

Georganne C. Proctor

Mary Zappone

COMPENSATION OF NAMED EXECUTIVE OFFICERS

Summary Compensation Table

The following table and footnotes discuss the compensation of our NEOs for 2017 and prior years, where applicable. In addition to the footnotes to this table, please see "Compensation Discussion and Analysis" for a detailed description and narrative discussion of the 2017 compensation with respect to each NEO.

Name and principal position	Year	Salary (1)	Bonus (2)	Stock awards (3)(4)	Option awards (3)(4)	Non-equity incentive plan compensation (5)	All other compensation (6)	Total
John S. Clendening	2017	$ 549,039		$ 1,132,490	$ 2,615,802	$ 1,122,000	$ 22,635	$ 5,441,966
President and CEO	2016	$ 375,000	$ 381,695	$ 2,490,000	$ 1,404,101		$ 152,659	$ 4,803,455
John D. Palmer	2017	$ 186,154		$ 44,997	$ 100,244	58,104	$ 8,995	$ 398,494
Principal Financial and Accounting Officer								
Eric M. Emans	2017	$ 315,261				$ 188,095	$ 732,588	$ 1,235,944
Former CFO	2016 [3]	$ 358,800		$ 724,166	$ 1,419,739	$ 221,954	$ 13,000	$ 2,737,659
	2015	$ 350,000		$ 247,494	$ 604,915	$ 131,670	$ 13,009	$ 1,347,088
Robert D. Oros	2017	$ 308,654		$ 449,998	$ 1,001,538	$ 361,147	$ 123,273	$ 2,244,610
Chief Executive Officer of HD Vest								
Sanjay Baskaran	2017	$ 316,346	$ 193,326	$ 749,987	$ 741,528		$ 323,409	$ 2,324,596
President of TaxAct								
Ann J. Bruder	2017	$ 181,731		$ 349,999	$ 350,962	$ 115,025	$ 362,692	$ 1,360,409
Chief Legal Officer and Secretary								

(1) Each NEO, except Mr. Clendening, received a prorated base salary in 2017. The New NEOs joined the Company during 2017, and Mr. Emans ceased serving as our CFO on November 1, 2017.

(2) Mr. Baskaran's bonus consists of a pro-rated target bonus amount, which was guaranteed to be paid to Mr. Baskaran under the Executive Bonus Plan. The combined Performance Target Achievement of all of Mr. Baskaran's applicable performance metrics under the Executive Bonus Plan did not meet the target level of achievement for a target bonus payout; however, per the terms of the Executive Bonus Plan and because he was a New NEO who joined the Company in 2017, Mr. Baskaran was guaranteed a minimum payment of his pro-rated target bonus for 2017. See "Annual Short-Term Incentive/Bonus Payments" for additional information.

(3) The dollar amount for stock (which consists of RSUs) and option awards is the aggregate grant date fair value computed in accordance with ASC 718, excluding the effect of any estimated forfeitures. These amounts reflect the Company's accounting expense and do not correspond to the actual value that will be realized by the NEO. Assumptions used in the valuation of stock and option awards granted in 2017 are discussed in "Note 12: Stock-Based Compensation" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (Part II, Item 8) in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2017.

(4) The Stock Awards and Option Awards column for the year ended December 31, 2016 for Mr. Emans has been updated from the information presented in the Company's 2017 proxy statement to include the incremental fair value associated with the modification of Mr. Emans' awards on January 22, 2016 and October 25, 2016 when his then-current employment agreement was amended. The value shown includes both the aggregate grant date fair value for the awards granted in 2016 and the incremental fair value associated with the modified awards. The incremental fair value shown in the Stock Award column is $179,176 and the incremental fair value shown in the Option Awards column is $433,215.

(5) Includes amounts earned under the Bonus Plans for 2017 and paid in 2018. While Mr. Oros and Ms. Bruder were guaranteed a minimum payment of their pro-rata target bonus pursuant to each of their employment agreements, the actual amounts earned under the Executive Bonus Plan exceeded the target, and the amounts included reflect the achievement of the applicable performance metrics under the Executive Bonus Plan.

(6) All other compensation in 2017 consists of the following:

Name	401(k) Match (a)	HSA (a)	Life Insurance Premiums (a)	Fitness Subsidy (a)	Mobile Subsidy (a)	Signing Bonus (b)	Relocation (c)	Severance (d)	Consulting Fees (e)	Total
John S. Clendening	$ 10,800		$ 288	$ 360	$ 1,800		$ 9,387			$ 22,635
John D. Palmer	$ 7,455		$ 240	$ 300	$ 1,000					$ 8,995
Eric M. Emans	$ 10,800		$ 240	$ 300	$ 1,650			$ 618,568	$ 101,000	$ 732,588
Robert D. Oros	$ 10,800	$ 1,100	$ 160				$ 111,213			$ 123,273
Sanjay Baskaran	$ 10,799	$ 1,166	$ 170	$ 330	$ 1,575	$ 210,000	$ 99,369			$ 323,409
Ann J. Bruder	$ 10,800		$ 155		$ 900	$ 200,000	$ 150,837			$ 362,692

(a) Reflects perquisites and personal benefits that are primarily non-discriminatory fringe benefits generally available to employees, such as the 401(k) employer's match, Health Savings Account Employer contribution ("HSA"), mobile communications reimbursement, health club subsidy, and life insurance premiums.

(b) Pursuant to their employment agreements, each of Mr. Baskaran and Ms. Bruder received the signing bonus shown above when they joined the Company.

(c) Pursuant to their employment agreements, each of Messrs. Clendening, Oros and Baskaran and Ms. Bruder received reimbursement of their relocation expenses during 2017 in the amounts shown above, which included $1,033 and $41,308 paid to Mr. Baskaran and Ms. Bruder, respectively to cover the cost of tax withholding related to such payments.

(d) Mr. Emans decided not to relocate when the Company moved its headquarters from Bellevue, Washington to Irving, Texas during 2017, and his termination triggered the following payments pursuant to his employment agreement that was entered January 6, 2015 and amended on October 25, 2016: (i) a severance payment in the aggregate amount of $618,568, which is comprised of one times his base salary and his annual target bonus ($588,432); (ii) a lump sum equal to 12 months of COBRA insurance premiums ($30,136); and (iii) the immediate vesting of all equity awards granted prior to October 25, 2016 and an extended exercise period with respect to his stock options to the earlier of the option expiration date or June 30, 2019. The value of the accelerated equity awards is reflected in the "2017 Option Exercises and Stock Vested" table.

(e) Reflects payments made to Mr. Emans during 2017 pursuant to the Emans Consulting Agreement. See "Executive Employment Agreements; Severance Payments—Mr. Emans" for additional information regarding the Emans Consulting Agreement.

2017 Grants of Plan-Based Awards

The following table and footnotes provide information about awards granted to our NEO's in 2017, including non-equity incentive plan awards and equity plan awards that were granted under our 2015 Plan. In addition to the footnotes to this table, please see "Compensation Discussion and Analysis—2017 Compensation Decisions" for a detailed description and narrative discussion of these grants.

Name	Grant date	Compensation /Option Committee Approval Date (if different from Grant Date)	Estimated possible payouts under non-equity incentive plan awards (1)			All other stock awards: number of shares of stock or units	All other option awards: number of securities underlying options	Exercise or base price per share of option awards	Grant date fair value of stock and option awards (2)
			Threshold	Target	Maximum				
John S. Clendening			$ 550,000	$ 1,100,000	$ 1,650,000				$ —
	1/3/2017	12/8/16				76,779			$ 1,132,490
	1/3/2017	12/8/16					555,372	$ 14.75	$ 2,615,802
John D. Palmer									
			$ 28,482	$ 56,965	$ 85,447				
	2/20/2017	2/20/17				2,830			$ 44,997
	2/20/2017	2/20/17					19,811	$ 15.90	$ 100,244
Eric M. Emans (3)			$ 92,204	$ 184,407	$ 276,611				
Robert D. Oros				$ 315,413	$ 473,119				
	2/28/2017	12/8/16				28,846			$ 449,998
	2/28/2017	12/8/16					201,923	$ 15.60	$ 1,001,538
Sanjay Baskaran				$ 193,326	$ 289,989				
	1/30/2017	1/2/17				49,833			$ 749,987
	1/30/2017	1/2/17					154,485	$ 15.05	$ 741,528
Ann J. Bruder				$ 112,770	$ 169,155				
	6/19/2017	5/31/17				16,129			$ 349,999
	6/19/2017	5/31/17					51,612	$ 21.70	$ 350,962

(1) Represents the range of possible cash payouts under the 2017 Bonus Plans, with the target amount reflecting a pro-rated target cash bonus for each NEO, excluding Mr. Clendening. Actual amounts earned, as determined by the Compensation Committee in the first quarter of 2018, are reflected in the 2017 Summary Compensation Table under Bonus for Mr. Baskaran and Non-Equity Incentive Plan Compensation for all other NEOs. Because Messrs. Oros, Baskaran and Ms. Bruder were guaranteed payment of their 2017 prorated annual target bonus, the minimum payment they could have received for 2017 is the target amount shown. See "Compensation Decisions Made in 2017—2017 Annual Bonus" for additional information.

(2) The dollar amount for stock (which consists of RSUs) and option awards is the aggregate grant date fair value computed in accordance with ASC 718, excluding the effect of any estimated forfeitures. These amounts reflect the Company's accounting expense and do not correspond to the actual value that will be realized by the NEO. Assumptions used in the valuation of stock and option awards granted in 2017 are discussed in "Note 12: Stock-Based Compensation" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (Part II, Item 8) in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2017. See "Compensation Decisions Made in 2017—Annual Long-Term Equity Grants" for additional information.

(3) Mr. Emans did not receive an annual equity grant for 2017 because, in connection with the relocation of the Company's headquarters, he had previously announced that he would not be relocating with the Company at the time the 2017 annual equity grants were made.

Outstanding Equity Awards at Fiscal Year End

The following table and footnotes provide information regarding unexercised options (including vested and unvested options) and unvested RSUs outstanding as of December 31, 2017 for each of the NEOs:

		Options Awards (1)				Stock Awards (1)	
		Number of securities underlying unexercised options					
Name	Grant date	Exercisable	Not exercisable	Option exercise price/ share	Option expiration date	Number of shares or units of stock that have not vested	Market value of shares or units of stock that have not vested (2)
John S. Clendening	4/4/2016 (3)	358,333	425,000	$ 4.98	4/4/2023	—	—
	4/4/2016	—	—	—	—	212,500	$ 4,696,250
	1/3/2017	—	555,372	$ 14.75	1/3/2024	—	$ —
	1/3/2017	—	—	$ —	—	76,779	$ 1,696,816
John D. Palmer	2/20/2017	—	19,811	$ 15.90	2/20/2024	—	—
	2/20/2017		—			2,830	62,543
Eric M. Emans	1/2/2014	73,727	—	$ 28.73	6/30/2019	—	—
Robert D. Oros	2/28/2017	—	201,923	$ 15.60	2/28/2024	—	—
	2/28/2017	—	—	—	—	28,846	$ 637,497
Sanjay Baskaran	1/30/2017	—	154,485	$ 15.05	1/30/2024	—	—
	1/30/2017	—	—	—	—	49,833	1,101,309
Ann J. Bruder	6/19/2017	—	51,612	$ 21.70	6/19/2024	—	—
	6/19/2017	—	—	—	—	16,129	356,451

(1) Unvested stock (which consists of RSUs) and option awards vest over a three-year period, with 33.33% vesting on the first anniversary of the date of grant and approximately 16.67% vesting at the end of each six-month period thereafter, except as described below.

(2) The market value of unvested RSUs is based on the closing price of our common stock on December 29, 2017, which was the last trading day of 2017, of $22.10 per share.

(3) 15% of Mr. Clendening's option award vested on April 4, 2016, 33.33% vested on April 4, 2017 and 16.67% vested on October 4, 2017. Approximately 16.67% will vest at the end of each six-month period following October 4, 2017, such that the option will be fully vested on April 4, 2019.

2017 Option Exercises and Stock Vested

The following table and footnotes describe, for each of our NEOs, the number of shares acquired upon exercise of stock options and vesting of RSUs during 2017, and the value realized upon such exercise and vesting. The value realized upon exercise of stock options and vesting of RSUs is before the withholding of any taxes.

	Option Awards			Stock Awards		
Name	**Number of shares acquired on exercise**		**Value realized on exercise (1)**	**Number of shares acquired on vesting**		**Value realized on vesting (2)**
John S. Clendening	216,667	(3)	3,341,005	212,500	$	4,271,256
John D. Palmer	—		—	—		—
Eric M. Emans (4)	760,271	(5) $	7,503,244	63,133	$	1,291,641
Robert D. Oros	—		—			
Sanjay Baskaran	—		—	—		—
Ann J. Bruder	—		—	—		—

(1) The value realized on exercise was calculated by multiplying the number of shares acquired upon exercise of stock options by the difference between the market price of the Company's common stock per share upon exercise and the exercise price per share.

(2) The value realized on vesting was calculated by multiplying the number of shares acquired upon the vesting of RSUs by the closing price of the Company's common stock per share on the vesting date.

(3) Options were exercised through a net exercise with the Company.

(4) Includes 171,048 options and 20,762 RSUs that vested on November 1, 2017 when Mr. Emans terminated his employment with us. Based on our closing stock price on November 1, 2017 (the day of acceleration) of $21.05, the value of the equity that vested on that date was $2,272,890.

(5) A portion of the options were exercised through a net exercise with the Company, and a portion were exercised through a cashless exercise.

Pension Benefits; Non-Qualified Defined Contribution; and Other Non-Qualified Deferred Compensation Plans

We do not provide any pension benefits, non-qualified defined contribution or other deferred compensation plans for our NEOs.

Potential Payments upon Termination or Change in Control

Potential Payments

The following table sets forth the estimated incremental payments of severance and/or benefits that would be provided to each of the NEOs, excluding Mr. Emans (who was no longer employed by us on the date of the table shown below), or his or her estate in the event of such executive officer's termination of employment in connection with a change of control or significant corporate transaction, termination by the Company without cause, or by the employee for good reason, death, or disability. Additional information regarding the severance and other benefits to which our NEOs are entitled under each of their employment agreements, if applicable, is set forth under "Compensation Discussion and Analysis—Employment Agreements."

The table below reflects the following assumptions:

- the termination date was December 31, 2017;
- each of the executive officer's employment agreements or the Company's severance plan in the case of Mr. Palmer would be followed in the case of a termination or termination following a change-in-control;
- the closing price for our stock on December 29, 2017, which was the last trading day of 2017, was $22.10 (as reported on the NASDAQ);
- each NEO set forth below had received all of his or her base salary earned during 2017;
- each NEO set forth below was entitled to, but had not yet been paid, the 2017 annual bonus plan payment that they received in February 2017 (because the assumed termination date is December 31, 2017); and
- any change of control payment would only be made if there was a "double-trigger," which means that two events must occur for payments to be made (i.e., a change of control and the actual or constructive termination of employment, in this case within a specified period before or after such trigger event, as further described below).

Executive	Termination By Executive (Without Cause)	Termination by the Company Without Cause or by the Executive for Good Reason/ Constructive Termination (1)	Change of Control or Corporate Transaction Termination Without Cause/Good Reason	Disability (2)	Death (3)
John S. Clendening					
Severance (4)		$ 2,475,000	$ 3,300,000	$ 275,000	$ 275,000
Short-Term Incentive (5)	$ 1,122,000	$ 1,122,000	$ 1,122,000		
Health Benefits (6)		$ 33,076	$ 33,076		
Accelerated Vesting of Stock Options (7)		$ —	$ 11,357,984		
Accelerated Vesting of Stock Awards (7)		$ —	$ 6,393,066		
Total	$ 1,122,000	$ 3,630,076	$ 22,206,126	$ 275,000	$ 275,000
John D. Palmer					
Severance		$ 110,000			
Short-Term Incentive					
Health Benefits					
Accelerated Vesting of Stock Options (7)			$ 122,828		
Accelerated Vesting of Stock Awards (7)			$ 62,543		
Total	$ —	$ 110,000	$ 185,371	$ —	$ —
Robert D. Oros					
Severance (4)		$ 375,000	$ 750,000	$ 187,500	$ 93,750
Short-Term Incentive (5)	$ 361,147	$ 361,147	$ 361,147		
Health Benefits (6)		$ 21,593	$ 21,593		
Accelerated Vesting of Stock Options (7)		$ —	$ 1,312,500		
Accelerated Vesting of Stock Awards (7)		$ —	$ 637,497		
Total	$ 361,147	$ 757,740	$ 3,082,737	$ 187,500	$ 93,750
Sanjay Baskaran					
Severance (4)		$ 350,000	$ 560,000	$ 175,000	$ 87,500
Short-Term Incentive (5)	$ 193,326	$ 193,326	$ 193,326		
Health Benefits (6)		$ 15,395	$ 15,395		
Accelerated Vesting of Stock Options (7)		$ —	$ 1,089,119		
Accelerated Vesting of Stock Awards (7)		$ —	$ 1,101,309		
Total	$ 193,326	$ 558,721	$ 2,959,149	$ 175,000	$ 87,500
Ann J. Bruder					
Severance (4)		$ 350,000	$ 560,000	$ 175,000	$ 87,500
Short-Term Incentive (5)	$ 115,025	$ 115,025	$ 115,025		
Health Benefits (6)		$ 15,417	$ 15,417		
Accelerated Vesting of Stock Options (7)		$ —	$ 20,645		
Accelerated Vesting of Stock Awards (7)		$ —	$ 356,451		
Total	$ 115,025	$ 480,442	$ 1,067,538	$ 175,000	$ 87,500

(1) Because Mr. Palmer does not have an employment agreement, his termination payment information shown in this column would be as a result of a reduction in force or job elimination under our Severance Plan.

(2) Pursuant to the terms of each of their employment agreements, each of the NEOs, excluding Mr. Palmer, would be entitled to receive six months of base pay. Mr. Palmer does not have an employment agreement.

(3) Pursuant to the terms of each of their employment agreements, Mr. Clendening would be entitled to receive six months of base pay and the other NEOs, excluding Mr. Palmer, would be entitled to receive three months of base pay.

(4) Amounts reported represent the severance amount payable to each NEO described in detail below.

(5) Reflects the actual bonus earned for 2017 under the Bonus Plans. As of December 31, 2017, this amount had been earned but not yet paid.

(6) Amounts reported are based on the estimated COBRA costs for 18 months for Mr. Clendening and 12 months for Messrs. Oros and Baskaran and Ms. Bruder.

(7) Each of the NEOs, excluding Mr. Palmer, would receive accelerated vesting of their outstanding equity awards pursuant to the terms of their employment agreements, which are described below. Mr. Palmer's accelerated vesting would be in accordance with our 2015 Plan.

Mr. Emans: Mr. Emans is not included in the table above because his employment terminated with us on November 1, 2017 (and the information above is as of December 31, 2017). Mr. Emans decided not to relocate when the Company moved its headquarters from Bellevue, Washington to Irving, Texas during 2017, and his termination triggered the following pursuant to his employment agreement that was entered January 6, 2015 and amended on October 25, 2016:

- a severance payment in the aggregate amount of $618,568, which is comprised of:
  - one times his base salary and one times his annual target bonus ($588,432);
  - a lump sum equal to 12 months of COBRA insurance premiums ($30,136); and
- the immediate vesting of all equity awards granted prior to October 25, 2016 and an extended exercise period with respect to his stock options to the earlier of the option expiration date or June 30, 2019. See "2017 Option Exercises and Stock Vested" for additional information regarding the equity that was accelerated.

Mr. Emans also received a pro-rated bonus payment under our 2017 Executive Bonus Plan in the amount of $188,095, which was paid in 2018 following the determination of the achievement of the applicable performance metrics for 2017.

Employment Agreements

The Company has entered into employment agreements with each of its NEOs (except Mr. Palmer) that include specific terms regarding severance payments and other benefits, if any, due to the executive under various employment termination circumstances. The following sections describe and explain the specific circumstances that would trigger the amounts set forth in the table above.

Termination without Cause and Constructive Termination or Resignation for Good Reason: Under the employment agreements in place on December 31, 2017, all of the New Executive Officers receive similar benefits if they are terminated by us without cause or there is a constructive termination, including the following:

- The New Executive Officers are entitled to:
  - severance benefits of a one-time lump sum payment equal to one times his or her then-current annual salary; and
  - a lump sum payment equal to 12 months of COBRA insurance benefits.
- Mr. Clendening would receive:
  - severance benefits of a one-time lump sum payment equal to 1.5 times his then-current salary and 1.5 times his target bonus amount; and
  - a lump sum payment equal to 18 months of COBRA insurance benefits.

In general, “cause” is defined as misconduct that is criminal, dishonest, fraudulent, or in violation of the Company’s Code of Ethics and Conduct or other written policy, failure to perform job duties, breach of confidentiality, or an obstruction of any internal or governmental investigation. “Constructive termination” and "good reason" generally mean a material reduction in duties, authority, responsibility, base salary or a requirement to relocate more than 25 miles from Irving,

Texas. Under Mr. Clendening's Employment Agreement, "constructive termination" and "good reason" means, in addition to the foregoing, a material reduction in a reporting relationship or a material reduction in bonus.

Change of Control: A fundamental feature of the change of control provisions in the NEO employment agreements is that the benefits generally have a “double-trigger,” which means that two events must occur for payments to be made (i.e., a change of control and the actual or constructive termination of employment, in this case within a specified period before or after such trigger event). The change of control provisions do not contain a Section 280G tax gross-up. The Compensation Committee believes that the foregoing change of control provisions are in the best interest of the Company and its stockholders to ensure the continued dedication of such employees, notwithstanding the possibility, threat or occurrence of a change of control. In addition, it is imperative to diminish the inevitable distraction of such employees by virtue of the personal uncertainties and risks created by a pending or threatened change of control, and to provide such employees with compensation and benefit arrangements upon a change of control that are competitive with those of other companies.

Under the employment agreements in place as of December 31, 2017, all of the executive officers, receive similar benefits if they are terminated within 12 months following or during the two-month period prior to a change of control of the Company, including the following:

- The New Executive Officers would each receive:
    - severance benefits of a one-time lump sum payment equal to one times each of their base salary and one times each of their one times each of their target bonus amount; and
    - 12 months of COBRA premiums.
- Mr. Clendening would receive:
    - severance benefits of a one-time lump sum payment equal to two times his base salary and two times his target bonus amount; and
    - 18 months of COBRA premiums.
- Each NEO, excluding Mr. Palmer, would also receive full acceleration of all unvested time-based equity awards (and performance-based equity awards for Mr. Clendening) and an extended post-termination exercise period for the executive's options of 24 months for Mr. Clendening and 12 months for the other NEOs.

"Change of control" is defined in the employment agreements as any of the following: (i) acquisition of more than 50% of the voting power of the Company’s outstanding securities by any person or through a merger, reorganization or consolidation of the Company, (ii) approval by the stockholders of liquidation of the Company, (iii) a sale of the Company or substantially all of its assets, or (iv) a change in composition of the Board of Directors such that the majority is no longer comprised of incumbent directors (an incumbent being a continuing director, a director nominated by a majority of directors then in office, or a director appointed by directors so nominated).

Severance Plan: If Mr. Palmer is terminated as a result of a reduction in force or an elimination of his position, he would be entitled, as long as he signs a release, to severance benefits under our Severance Plan, which is available to all employees generally (excluding employees, such as our NEOs, who have employment agreements with us). In the case of such severance, Mr. Palmer would be entitled to a minimum lump sum payment equal to 26 weeks of his base salary.

Death: Under the employment agreements in place as of December 31, 2017 for the New Executive Officers, death entitles the New Executive Officers' beneficiary to receive a lump sum payment equal to three months’ base salary. Under Mr. Clendening's employment agreement, his beneficiary would receive a lump sum payment equal to six months' base salary.

Disability: Under the employment agreements in place as of December 31, 2017, for all NEOs other than Mr. Palmer, termination due to disability (defined as an inability to perform his or her duties for 180 days in any one-year period) entitles the NEO to receive a lump sum payment equal to six months' base salary.

Equity Plan: Because Mr. Palmer does not have an employment agreement that would determine the treatment of his equity upon a change of control, his outstanding equity awards would receive the treatment described below under a change of control or company transaction. In addition, any performance-based equity granted under the 2015 incentive plan (which includes performance-based RSUs granted to the Company's executive officers at the beginning of 2018) held by each of the New NEOs, excluding Mr. Clendening, would be governed by the terms of the 2015 Plan

set forth below under a change of control. (Excluding Mr. Clendening, the employment agreements for the New Executive Officers did not address treatment of performance-based equity.)

Under the 2015 Plan, unless the Compensation Committee determines otherwise in the instrument evidencing an award or in a written employment, services or other agreement between a participant and the Company or a related company, in the event of a change of control:

- If the change of control is a company transaction in which awards, other than performance shares and performance units, could be converted, assumed, substituted for or replaced by the successor company, then, to the extent that the successor company converts, assumes, substitutes for, or replaces such awards, the vesting restrictions and forfeiture provisions applicable to such awards will not be accelerated or lapse, and all such vesting restrictions and forfeiture provisions will continue with respect to any shares of the successor company or other consideration that may be received with respect to such awards. To the extent such outstanding awards are not converted, assumed, substituted for, or replaced by the successor company, such awards will become fully vested and exercisable or payable, and all applicable restrictions or forfeiture provisions will lapse, immediately prior to the change of control. Such awards will then terminate at the effective time of the change of control.

- If the change of control is not a company transaction in which awards, other than performance shares and performance units, could be converted, assumed, substituted for, or replaced by the successor company, all outstanding awards, other than performance shares and performance units, will become fully vested and exercisable or payable, and all applicable restrictions or forfeiture provisions will lapse, immediately prior to the change of control. Such awards will then terminate at the effective time of the change of control.

All performance shares and performance units earned and outstanding as of the date the change of control occurs and for which the payout level has been determined will be payable in full in accordance with the payout schedule included in the instrument evidencing the award. Any remaining outstanding performance shares or performance units for which the payout level has not been determined will be prorated at the target payout level up to and including the date of the change of control and will be payable in accordance with the payout schedule included in the instrument evidencing the award.

The Compensation Committee may in its discretion instead provide that a participant's outstanding awards will terminate in exchange for a cash payment.

Definitions of change of Control and Company Transaction under the 2015 Plan. Unless the Compensation Committee determines otherwise with respect to an award at the time it is granted or unless otherwise defined for purposes of an award in a written employment, services or other agreement between a participant and the Company or a related company, a change of control of the Company generally means the occurrence of any of the following events:

- an acquisition by any individual, entity or group of beneficial ownership of 40% or more of either (a) the then outstanding shares of common stock or (b) the combined voting power of the then outstanding voting securities of the Company entitled to vote generally in the election of directors (generally excluding any acquisition directly from the Company, any acquisition by the Company, any acquisition by any employee benefit plan of the Company or a related company, or an acquisition pursuant to certain related party transactions);

- a change in the composition of the Board during any two-year period such that the incumbent Board members cease to constitute at least a majority of the Board (not including directors whose election, or nomination for election by stockholders, was approved by a majority of the incumbent Board); or

- consummation of a company transaction, which is generally defined as a merger or consolidation, a sale of all of the Company's outstanding voting securities, or a sale, lease or other transfer of all or substantially all of the assets of the Company, unless (a) after such transaction the beneficial owners of common stock and voting securities immediately prior to the transaction retain at least 50% of such common stock and voting securities of the company resulting from such transaction, (b) no person beneficially owns 40% or more of the then outstanding common stock or voting securities of the company resulting from such transaction, and (c) at least a majority of the board of directors of the company resulting from such transaction were incumbent directors of the Company prior to such transaction.

2017 EXECUTIVE PAY RATIO

Pay Ratio

In compliance with Section 953(b) of the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act and Item 402 (u) of Regulation S-K, we are providing the following information about the relationship of the annual total compensation of our employees and the annual total compensation of John Clendening, our President and CEO. For 2017, our last completed fiscal year: (i) the median of the annual total compensation of all employees of the company (other than the CEO) was $77,057; and (ii) the annual total compensation of our CEO, as reported in the "Summary Compensation Table," was $5,441,966. Based on this information, for 2017, the ratio of the annual total compensation of our CEO to the median of the annual total compensation of all employees was 72 to 1.

Methodology

To identify the median of the annual total compensation of all our employees, as well as to determine the annual total compensation of the "median employee," the methodology and the material assumptions, adjustments and estimates that we used are described below.

We selected the first business day of October 2017, which was October 2, 2017, as the date upon which we would identify the "median employee." This date was chosen to allow sufficient time to identify the median employee. We included all employees working on a full-time, part-time or interim basis. Our non-U.S. employees account for less than 5% of our employees and were excluded. In order to identify the "median employee," we utilized total cash compensation and equity compensation of our employees. The cash compensation was annualized for employees who were hired during 2017 and was comprised of base salary and (i) actual bonuses paid to employees hired before 2017 and (ii) the greater of target bonus or actual bonus paid for employees who were hired in 2017 (because the actual bonus paid was prorated and would not be representative of full year bonus amounts). We did not make any cost-of-living adjustments. We identified our "median employee" using a standard median formula based on the compensation measure, which was consistently applied to all of our employees included in this calculation. Once we identified our "median employee," total compensation was calculated for this individual using the same methodology we use for our NEOs as set forth in the 2017 Summary Compensation Table.

BENEFICIAL OWNERSHIP

Section 16(a) Beneficial Ownership Reporting Compliance

Section 16(a) of the Exchange Act requires our executive officers, directors, and persons who own more than ten percent of a registered class of our equity securities to file reports of ownership on Form 3 and changes in ownership on Form 4 and Form 5 with the SEC. Executive officers, directors, and greater-than-ten-percent stockholders are required by SEC regulations to furnish us with copies of all Section 16(a) forms they file. Based solely on our review of the copies of such forms received by the Company or filed with the SEC, and written representations from certain reporting persons, we believe that all Section 16(a) filing requirements applicable to our executive officers, directors, and persons who own more than ten percent of a registered class of our equity securities have been complied with on a timely basis during 2017.

Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management

The following table sets forth certain information regarding the beneficial ownership of our common stock as of April 9, 2018, as to: (i) each person who is known by us to own beneficially more than five percent of the outstanding shares of common stock; (ii) each of our directors and Director Nominees; (iii) each of our NEOs; and (iv) all current directors and executive officers as a group. Information for beneficial owners who are not officers or directors is based on their most recent filings with the SEC (as described in the footnotes to this table) and has not been independently verified by us. The number of shares outstanding as of April 9, 2018 was 46,912,609 shares.

Unless otherwise indicated below, and subject to applicable community property laws, we believe based on the information provided to us, that each beneficial owner has sole voting and investment power with respect to the shares listed below. Unless otherwise indicated, the address of each beneficial owner in the table below is c/o Blucora, Inc. 6333 North State Highway 161, Irving, Texas 75038.

Principal Stockholders, Directors, Nominees for Director and Named Executive Officers	Number of Shares Owned Directly or Indirectly	Number of Shares That Can Be Acquired Within 60 Days of April 9, 2018		Shares Beneficially Owned (1)		
		Options	RSUs	Number		Percent of Class
5% Stockholders						
BlackRock, Inc. 55 East 52nd Street New York, NY 10055	5,826,130	—	—	5,826,130	(2)	12.42%
Dimensional Fund Advisors LP Building One 6300 Bee Cave Road Austin, TX 78746	3,526,791	—	—	3,526,791	(3)	7.52%
The Vanguard Group 100 Vanguard Blvd Malvern, PA 19355	5,544,834	—	—	5,544,834	(4)	11.82%
Wellington Group Holdings LLP c/o Wellington Management Company LLP 280 Congress Street Boston, MA 02210	4,788,972	—	—	4,788,972	(5)	10.21%
First Trust Portfolios L.P. **First Trust Advisors L.P.** **The Charger Corporation** 120 East Liberty Dr, Suite 400 Wheaton, IL 60187	2,381,565			2,381,565	(6)	5.08%
Directors						
Steven Aldrich	—	—	8,474	8,474		*
William L. Atwell	14,061	5,221	7,747	27,029		*
John S. Clendening	327,723	510,623	—	838,346		1.77%
Lance G. Dunn	50,417	71,863	6,053	128,333		*
H. McIntyre Gardner	3,575	4,596	6,053	14,224		*
Georganne Proctor	—	—	8,474	8,474		*
Christopher W. Walters	30,541	42,388	6,053	78,982		*
Mary S. Zappone	27,111	38,940	6,053	72,104		*
NEOs and Directors and Officers as a Group						
John D. Palmer	—	6,604	—	6,604		*
Eric Emans	81,825	73,727	—	155,552		*
Robert D. Oros	7,274	67,307	—	74,581		*
Sanjay Baskaran	12,368	51,495	—	63,863		*
Ann J. Bruder		—	—	—		*
All directors and executive officers as a group (13 persons)	479,814	859,578	53,549	1,392,941		2.91%

* Indicates less than 1.0% ownership of Blucora common stock.

(1) Beneficial ownership is determined in accordance with the rules of the SEC. In computing the number of shares beneficially owned by a person and the percentage ownership of that person, shares of common stock subject to options held by that person that are currently exercisable or will become exercisable within 60 days of April 9, 2018, if any, or RSUs held by that person that vest within 60 days of April 9, 2018, if any, are deemed outstanding, while such shares are not deemed outstanding for purposes of computing the percentage ownership of any other person.

(2) Based on information contained in a Schedule 13G/A filed with the SEC on January 19, 2018, by BlackRock, Inc. BlackRock, Inc. reported it had sole voting power as to 5,745,195 shares and sole dispositive power as to 5,826,130 shares.

(3) Based on information contained in a Schedule 13G/A filed with the SEC on February 9, 2018, by Dimensional Fund Advisors LP and its subsidiaries ("Dimensional"). Dimensional is an investment adviser/manager to certain funds and as investment adviser/manager, Dimensional possesses investment and/or voting power of the securities of the funds and may be deemed to be the beneficial owner of the shares held by the funds. Dimensional disclaims beneficial ownership of the shares held by the funds. Dimensional reported it had sole voting power as to 3,383,525 shares and sole dispositive power as to 3,526,791 shares.

(4) Based on information contained in a Schedule 13G/A filed with the SEC on February 8, 2018, by The Vanguard Group. ("Vanguard"). Vanguard reported it had sole voting power as to 58,912 shares, shared voting power as to 9,996 shares, sole dispositive power as to 5,480,840 shares, and shared dispositive power as to 63,994 shares.

(5) Based on information contained in Schedule 13G/A filed with the SEC on March 9, 2018, each of Wellington Management Group LLP, Wellington Group Holdings LLP and Wellington Investment Advisors Holdings LLP shares voting power as to 4,400,270 shares and has shared dispositive power as to 4,788,972 shares; and Wellington Management Company LLP shares voting power as to 3,987,447 shares and has shared dispositive power as to 4,254,234 shares.

(6) Based on information contained in Schedule 13G filed with the SEC on January 29, 2018 jointly by First Trust Portfolios L.P., First Trust Advisors L.P. and The Charger Corporation. First Trust Portfolios L.P. acts as sponsor of certain unit investment trusts that holds shares of the Company. First Trust Advisors L.P., an affiliate of First Trust Portfolios L.P., acts as a portfolio supervisor of the unit investment trusts sponsored by First Trust Portfolios L.P., certain of which hold shares of the Company. Neither First Trust Portfolios L.P., First Trust Advisors L.P. nor The Charger Corporation have the power to vote the shares of the Company held by these investment trusts sponsored by First Trust Portfolios L.P. Each of First Trust Portfolios L.P., First Trust Advisors L.P, and The Charger Corporation disclaims beneficial ownership of the shares included in the Schedule 13G. First Trust Advisors L.P. and The Charger Corporation share voting power as to 2,354,491 shares and share dispositive power as to 2,381,565 shares. First Trust Portfolios L.P. has shared dispositive power as to 27,074 shares.

Ownership Limitations

Certain transfers of our stock between stockholders could result in our undergoing an "ownership change" as defined in Section 382 of the IRC and the related Treasury Regulations ("Section 382"). Our certificate of incorporation (the "Charter") was amended in 2009 to reclassify our common stock and impose restrictions on its transfer under certain circumstances related to Section 382.

In particular, the Charter generally restricts any person or entity from attempting to transfer (which includes any direct or indirect acquisition, sale, transfer, assignment, conveyance, pledge, or other disposition) any of our stock (or options, warrants, or other rights to acquire our stock, or securities convertible or exchangeable into our stock) to the extent that transfer would (i) create or result in an individual or entity becoming a five-percent stockholder of our stock for purposes of Section 382 (a "Five Percent Stockholder") or (ii) increase the stock ownership percentage of any existing Five Percent Stockholder. Any person or entity attempting to acquire shares in such a transaction is referred to as a "Restricted Holder." The Charter does not prevent transfers that are sales by a Five Percent Stockholder, although it does restrict any purchasers that seek to acquire shares from a Five Percent Stockholder to the extent that the purchaser is or would become a Five Percent Stockholder.

Any transfer that violates the Charter is null and void ab initio and is not effective to transfer any record, legal, beneficial, or any other ownership of the number of shares that result in the violation (which are referred to as "Excess Securities"). The purported transferee shall not be entitled to any rights as our stockholder with respect to the Excess Securities. Instead, the purported transferee would be required, upon demand by the Company, to transfer the Excess Securities to an agent designated by the Company for the limited purpose of consummating an orderly arm's-length sale of such shares. The net proceeds of the sale will be distributed first to reimburse the agent for any costs associated with the sale, second to the purported transferee to the extent of the price it paid, and finally any additional amount will go to the purported transferor, or, if the purported transferor cannot be readily identified, to a charity designated by the Board of Directors. The Charter also provides the Company with various remedies to prevent or respond to a purported transfer that violates its provisions. In particular, any person who knowingly violates such provisions, together with any persons in the same control group with such person, are jointly and severally liable to the Company for such amounts as will put the Company in the same financial position as it would have been in had such violation not occurred.

Our Board of Directors may authorize an acquisition by a Restricted Holder of stock that would otherwise violate the Charter if the Board of Directors determines, in its sole discretion, that after taking into account the preservation of our net operating losses ("NOLs") and income tax credits, such acquisition would be in the best interests of the Company and its stockholders. Any Restricted Holder that would like to acquire shares of our stock must make a written request to our Board of Directors prior to any such acquisition. The Company intends to enforce the restrictions to preserve

future use of our NOLs and income tax credits for so long as the Board of Directors determines in good faith that it is in the best interests of the Company to prevent the possibility of an ownership change under Section 382.

TRANSACTION OF OTHER BUSINESS

The Board of Directors is unaware of any other matters to be submitted at the meeting. If any other matters come before the meeting, the persons named as proxies in the accompanying form of proxy will vote the shares represented in their discretion.

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT OF STOCKHOLDER PROPOSALS AND DIRECTOR NOMINATIONS

Stockholder Proposal

Any stockholder proposal intended to be included in the Company's Proxy Statement and form of proxy for the 2019 annual meeting of stockholders (pursuant to Rule 14a-8 of the Exchange Act) must be received by the Company at 6333 North State Highway 161, 4th Floor, Irving, Texas 75038 no later than December 20, 2018 and must otherwise be in compliance with applicable SEC rules. However, pursuant to such rule, if the 2019 annual meeting is held on a date that is before May 8, 2019 or after July 7, 2019, then a stockholder proposal submitted for inclusion in our Proxy Statement must be received by us a reasonable time before we begin to print and mail our proxy statement for the 2019 annual meeting.

Director Nomination by Stockholders

Any stockholder nomination of a candidate for election to our Board of Directors, and any stockholder proposal of other business intended to be presented for consideration at the 2019 annual meeting of stockholders (but that will not be included in the Company's Proxy Statement for such meeting pursuant to Rule 14a-8 of the Exchange Act), must be received in a timely manner and otherwise in accordance with the Company's Bylaws and related policies and procedures. In particular, our Bylaws establish that nominations for the election of directors or proposals of other business may be made by any stockholder entitled to vote who has delivered written notice to our Corporate Secretary not fewer than 90 days nor more than 120 days before the anniversary of the previous year's annual meeting, which notice must contain the information specified in the Bylaws concerning the nominees or other business proposed by the stockholder and concerning the stockholder proposing such nominations or other business. Accordingly, any such stockholder proposal must be received between the close of business on February 7, 2019 and the close of business on March 9, 2019. However, if the 2019 annual meeting is not scheduled to be held between May 8, 2019 and July 7, 2019, such stockholder's notice must be delivered to our Corporate Secretary not earlier than 120 days prior to the date of the 2019 annual meeting and not later than the later of (A) the tenth day following the day of the public announcement of the date of the 2019 annual meeting or (B) the date which is 90 days prior to the date of the 2019 annual meeting. Further information regarding nomination of directors is disclosed above in the descriptions of the Nominating and Governance Committee and of the Director Nomination Process under the heading "Board of Directors and Committee Information."

The Company reserves the right to reject, rule out of order, or take other appropriate action with respect to any nomination or proposal that does not comply with the requirements of our Bylaws or any applicable laws or regulations. A copy of the full text of our Bylaws is available on our company website at www.blucora.com or may be obtained by writing to the Corporate Secretary of Blucora. All notices of proposals by stockholders, whether or not included in our proxy materials, should be sent to our principal executive offices at 6333 North State Highway 161, 4th Floor, Irving, Texas 75038, Attention: Corporate Secretary.

ANNUAL REPORT TO STOCKHOLDERS

The Company's Annual Report to Stockholders, including the Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2017, is being furnished together with this Proxy Statement. The Annual Report to Stockholders is also available on the corporate website at www.blucora.com. Upon written request by any stockholder to Ann J. Bruder, our Corporate Secretary, at 6333 North State Highway 161, 4th Floor, Irving, Texas 75038, a copy of the Annual Report to Stockholders will be furnished without charge, and a copy of any or all exhibits to the Annual Report on Form 10-K will be furnished for a fee that will not exceed the reasonable expenses in furnishing those exhibits. The Company's SEC filings also are available to the public at the SEC's website at http://www.sec.gov.

WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION

The Company files annual, quarterly, and current reports, proxy statements, and other information with the SEC. You may read and copy this information at the following location:

Public Reference Room
100 F Street, NE
Washington, D.C. 20549

Please call the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330 for further information on the public reference room. The Company's public filings are also available to the public from document retrieval services and the internet website maintained by the SEC at www.sec.gov. These filings are also available on the Company's corporate website at www.blucora.com under "Investor Center – Financial Information – SEC Filings."

* * * *

Your vote is important to us. Please vote by telephone or Internet, or, if you request and receive a paper copy of the proxy materials, please sign, date and promptly mail the enclosed proxy card or use the telephone or Internet voting procedures described on the proxy card. Shares must be voted either by telephone, online, or by completing and returning a proxy card. Shares cannot be voted by marking, writing on and/or returning the Notice of Internet Availability. Any Notices of Internet Availability that are returned will not be counted as votes.

By Order of the Board of Directors,

Ann J. Bruder
Chief Legal Officer and Secretary

Irving, Texas
April 19, 2018

Annex A **- Non-GAAP Reconciliation**

Appendix A **- Blucora, Inc. 2018 Long-Term Incentive Plan**

Appendix B **- Certificate of Amendment to Restated Certificate of Incorporation**

NON-GAAP RECONCILIATION

Below is a reconciliation of the non-GAAP measures set forth in this proxy statement under "Proxy Statement Summary" and "Compensation Discussion and Analysis—Executive Summary."

Adjusted EBITDA

We define Adjusted EBITDA as net income (loss) attributable to Blucora, Inc., determined in accordance with GAAP, excluding the effects of stock-based compensation, depreciation, amortization of acquired intangible assets (including acquired technology), restructuring, other loss, net, the impact of noncontrolling interests, income tax expense (benefit), the effects of discontinued operations, acquisition-related costs and CEO separation-related costs. Restructuring costs relate to the move of our corporate headquarters, which was announced in the fourth quarter of 2016. Acquisition-related costs include professional services fees and other direct transaction costs and changes in the fair value of contingent consideration liabilities related to acquired companies. The SimpleTax acquisition that was completed in 2015 included contingent consideration, for which the fair value of that liability was revalued in the second quarter of 2016. For further detail, see "Note 9: Debt" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2017.

We believe that Adjusted EBITDA provides meaningful supplemental information regarding our performance. We use this non-GAAP financial measure for internal management and compensation purposes, when publicly providing guidance on possible future results, and as a means to evaluate period-to-period comparisons. We believe that Adjusted EBITDA is a common measure used by investors and analysts to evaluate our performance, that it provides a more complete understanding of the results of operations and trends affecting our business when viewed together with GAAP results, and that management and investors benefit from referring to this non-GAAP financial measure. Items excluded from Adjusted EBITDA are significant and necessary components to the operations of our business and, therefore, Adjusted EBITDA should be considered as a supplement to, and not as a substitute for or superior to, GAAP net income (loss). Other companies may calculate Adjusted EBITDA differently and, therefore, our Adjusted EBITDA may not be comparable to similarly titled measures of other companies.

Non-GAAP Net Income and Net Income Per Share (Non-GAAP EPS)

We define non-GAAP net income (loss) as net income (loss) attributable to Blucora, Inc., determined in accordance with GAAP, excluding the effects of discontinued operations, stock-based compensation, amortization of acquired intangible assets (including acquired technology), accretion of debt discount and accelerated accretion on debt discount on our Convertible Senior Notes that were formerly outstanding (the "Notes"), gain on the Notes repurchased, write-off of debt discount and debt issuance costs on the Notes that were redeemed and the terminated TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facility, acquisition-related costs (described further under *Adjusted EBITDA* above), restructuring costs (described further under *Adjusted EBITDA* above), the impact of noncontrolling interests, the related cash tax impact of those adjustments, and non-cash income taxes. The write-off of debt discount and debt issuance costs on the terminated Notes and the closed TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facility relates to the debt refinancing that occurred in the second quarter of 2017. We exclude the non-cash portion of income taxes because of our ability to offset a substantial portion of our cash tax liabilities by using deferred tax assets, which primarily consist of U.S. federal net operating losses. The majority of these net operating losses will expire, if unutilized, between 2020 and 2024.

We believe that non-GAAP net income (loss) and non-GAAP net income (loss) per share provide meaningful supplemental information to management, investors, and analysts regarding our performance and the valuation of our business by excluding items in the statement of operations that we do not consider part of our ongoing operations or have not been, or are not expected to be, settled in cash. Additionally, we believe that non-GAAP net income (loss) and non-GAAP net income (loss) per share are common measures used by investors and analysts to evaluate our performance and the valuation of our business. Non-GAAP net income (loss) should be evaluated in light of our financial results prepared in accordance with GAAP and should be considered as a supplement to, and not as a substitute for or superior to, GAAP net income (loss). Other companies may calculate non-GAAP net income differently, and, therefore, our non-GAAP net income may not be comparable to similarly titled measures of other companies.

Reconciliation of Non-GAAP Financial Measures

(in thousands except per share amounts, rounding differences may exist)	2015 FY 12/31 *pro forma (1)*	2016 FY 12/31 *as reported*	2017 FY 12/31 *as reported*
Adjusted EBITDA			
Net income (loss) attributable to Blucora, Inc.	$ (38,884)	$ (65,158)	$ 27,039
Stock-based compensation	13,591	14,128	11,653
Depreciation and amortization of acquired intangible assets	45,464	38,688	38,139
Restructuring	—	3,870	3,101
Other loss, net	41,934	39,781	44,551
Net income attributable to noncontrolling interests	—	658	2,337
Income tax benefit	(7,222)	(1,285)	(25,890)
Discontinued operations, net of tax	27,348	63,121	—
Acquisition-related costs	—	391	—
Adjusted EBITDA	$ 82,231	$ 94,194	$ 100,930
Non-GAAP Net Income (Loss)			
Net income (loss) attributable to Blucora, Inc.	$ (38,884)	$ (65,158)	$ 27,039
Discontinued operations, net of income taxes	27,348	63,121	—
Stock-based compensation	13,591	14,128	11,653
Amortization of acquired intangible assets	40,851	34,143	34,002
Accretion of debt discount on Convertible Senior Notes	3,866	3,666	1,567
Accelerated accretion of debt discount on Convertible Senior Notes repurchased	—	1,628	—
Gain on Convertible Senior Notes repurchased	—	(7,724)	—
Write-off of debt discount and debt issuance costs on terminated Convertible Senior Notes	—	—	6,715
Write-off of debt discount and debt issuance costs on closed TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facility	—	—	9,593
Acquisition-related costs	—	391	—
Restructuring	—	3,870	3,101
Impact of noncontrolling interests	—	658	2,337
Cash tax impact of adjustments to GAAP net income	(400)	175	(6)
Non-cash income tax (benefit) expense	(9,422)	(3,802)	(26,853)
Non-GAAP net income (loss)	$ 36,950	$ 45,096	$ 69,148
Non-GAAP net income (loss) per share	$ 0.88	$ 1.06	$ 1.46
Diluted shares	41,861	42,686	47,211

(1) On October 14, 2015, we announced the acquisition of HD Vest, which closed on December 31, 2015. As part of that announcement, we also stated our plans to divest our previously operated Search and Content and E-Commerce businesses in order to focus more strategically on the technology-enabled financial solutions market. The pro forma information reflects the combination of HD Vest, TaxAct and corporate expenses as if the HD Vest acquisition closed on January 1, 2014 and excludes the results of our previously operated Search and Content and E-Commerce businesses that were divested in 2016. The Company believes that this presentation most accurately reflects the financial performance of the Company on a go-forward basis.

BLUCORA, INC.

2018 LONG-TERM INCENTIVE PLAN

The Blucora, Inc. 2018 Long-Term Incentive Plan, as it may be amended from time to time (the "***Plan***") was adopted by the Board of Directors of Blucora, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the "***Company***"), on April 6, 2018 (the "***Board Approval Date***"), to be effective as of the date the Plan is approved by the Company's stockholders (the "***Effective Date***"). The Plan replaces and supersedes the Blucora, Inc. 2015 Incentive Plan as Amended and Restated (the "***2015 Plan***") in its entirety. The 2015 Plan shall terminate on the Effective Date, but shall continue to apply to awards granted under the 2015 Plan prior to the Effective Date.

ARTICLE 1
PURPOSE

The purpose of the Plan is to attract and retain the services of key Employees, key Contractors, and Outside Directors of the Company and its Related Companies and to provide such persons with a proprietary interest in the Company through the granting of Incentive Stock Options, Nonqualified Stock Options, Stock Appreciation Rights, Restricted Stock, Restricted Stock Units, Performance Awards, Dividend Equivalent Rights, and Other Awards, whether granted singly, or in combination, or in tandem, that will:

(a) increase the interest of such persons in the Company's welfare;

(b) furnish an incentive to such persons to continue their services for the Company or its Related Companies; and

(c) provide a means through which the Company may attract able persons as Employees, Contractors, and Outside Directors.

With respect to Participants who are subject to the reporting requirements of Section 16 of the Exchange Act, the Plan and all transactions under the Plan are intended to comply with all applicable conditions of Rule 16b-3 promulgated under the Exchange Act. To the extent any provision of the Plan or action by the Committee fails to so comply, such provision or action shall be deemed null and void *ab initio*, to the extent permitted by law and deemed advisable by the Committee.

ARTICLE 2
DEFINITIONS

For the purpose of the Plan, unless the context requires otherwise, the following terms shall have the meanings indicated:

2.1 "***2015 Plan***" is defined in the Preamble to the Plan.

2.2 "***Annual Stockholders Meeting***" means the annual general meeting of the stockholders of the Company, as established by the Board.

2.3 "***Applicable Law***" means all legal requirements relating to the administration of equity incentive plans and the issuance and distribution of shares of Common Stock, if any, under applicable corporate laws, applicable securities laws, the rules of any exchange or inter-dealer quotation system upon which the Company's securities are listed or quoted, the rules of any foreign jurisdiction applicable to Incentives granted to residents therein, and any other applicable law, rule or restriction.

2.4 "***Authorized Officer***" is defined in Section 3.2(b) hereof.

2.5 "***Award***" means the grant of any Incentive Stock Option, Nonqualified Stock Option, Restricted Stock, SAR, Restricted Stock Unit, Performance Award, Dividend Equivalent Right or Other Award, whether granted singly or in combination or in tandem (each individually referred to herein as an "***Incentive***").

2.6 "***Award Agreement***" means a written agreement between a Participant and the Company which sets out the terms of the grant of an Award.

2.7 "***Award Period***" means the period set forth in the Award Agreement during which one or more Incentives granted under an Award may be exercised.

2.8 "***Board***" means the board of directors of the Company.

2.9 "***Board Approval Date***" has the meaning set forth in the Preamble to the Plan.

2.10 "***Change in Control***" means, unless the Committee determines otherwise with respect to an Award at the time the Award is granted or unless otherwise defined for purposes of an Award in a written employment, services or other agreement between the Participant and the Company or a Related Company, the occurrence of any of the following events:

(a) an acquisition by any Entity of beneficial ownership (within the meaning of Rule 13d-3 promulgated under the Exchange Act) of forty percent (40%) or more of either (1) the number of then outstanding shares of common stock of the Company (the "***Outstanding Company Common Stock***") or (2) the combined voting power of the then outstanding voting securities of the Company entitled to vote generally in the election of directors (the "***Outstanding Company Voting Securities***"), provided, however, that the following acquisitions shall not constitute a Change in Control: (i) any acquisition directly from the Company, other than an acquisition by virtue of the exercise of a conversion privilege where the security being so converted was not acquired directly from the Company by the party exercising the conversion privilege, (ii) any acquisition by the Company, (iii) any acquisition by any employee benefit plan (or related trust) sponsored or maintained by the Company or any Related Company, or (iv) an acquisition by any Entity pursuant to a transaction that meets the conditions of clauses (A), (B) and (C) set forth in Section 2.10(c) below;

(b) a change in the composition of the Board during any two-year period such that the individuals who, as of the beginning of such two-year period, constitute the Board (the "***Incumbent Board***") cease for any reason to constitute at least a majority of the Board; provided, however, that for purposes of this definition, any individual who becomes a member of the Board subsequent to the beginning of the two-year period, whose election, or nomination for election by the Company's stockholders, was approved by a vote of at least a majority of those individuals who are members of the Board and who were also members of the Incumbent Board (or deemed to be such pursuant to this proviso) shall be considered as though such individual were a member of the Incumbent Board; and provided further, however, that any such individual whose initial assumption of office occurs as a result of or in connection with an actual or threatened election contest with respect to the election or removal of directors or other actual or threatened solicitation of proxies or consents by or on behalf of an Entity other than the Board shall not be considered a member of the Incumbent Board; or

(c) the consummation of (i) a merger or consolidation of the Company with or into any other company; (ii) a sale in one transaction or a series of transactions undertaken with a common purpose of all of the Company's outstanding voting securities; or (iii) a sale, lease, exchange or other transfer in one transaction or a series of related transactions undertaken with a common purpose of all or substantially all of the Company's assets; excluding, however, in each case, a transaction pursuant to which:

(A) the Entities who are the beneficial owners of the Outstanding Company Common Stock and Outstanding Company Voting Securities immediately prior to such transaction will beneficially own, directly or indirectly, at least fifty percent (50%) of the outstanding shares of common stock, and the combined voting power of the then outstanding voting securities entitled to vote generally in the election of directors, of the Successor Company in substantially the same proportions as their ownership, immediately prior to such transaction, of the Outstanding Company Common Stock and Outstanding Company Voting Securities;

(B) no Entity (other than the Company, any employee benefit plan (or related trust) of the Company, a Related Company or a Successor Company) will beneficially own, directly or indirectly, forty percent (40%) or more of, respectively, the outstanding shares of common stock of the Successor Company or the combined voting power of the outstanding voting securities of the Successor Company entitled to vote generally in the election of directors unless such ownership resulted solely from ownership of securities of the Company prior to the transaction; and

(C) individuals who were members of the Incumbent Board will immediately after the consummation of the transaction constitute at least a majority of the members of the board of directors of the Successor Company.

Where a series of transactions undertaken with a common purpose is deemed to be a transaction described in this Section 2.10(c), the effective date of such transaction shall be the date on which the last of such transactions is consummated.

Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this “Change in Control” definition, to the extent necessary to comply with Section 409A of the Code, an event shall not constitute a “Change in Control” for purposes of the Plan, unless such event also constitutes a change in the Company’s ownership, its effective control or the ownership of a substantial portion of its assets within the meaning of Section 409A of the Code.

2.11 “***Claim***” means any claim, liability or obligation of any nature, arising out of or relating to this Plan or an alleged breach of this Plan or an Award Agreement.

2.12 “***Code***” means the United States Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended.

2.13 “***Committee***” means the committee appointed or designated by the Board to administer the Plan in accordance with Article 3 of this Plan.

2.14 “***Common Stock***” means the common stock, par value $0.0001 per share, which the Company is currently authorized to issue or may in the future be authorized to issue, or any securities into which or for which the common stock of the Company may be converted or exchanged, as the case may be, pursuant to the terms of this Plan.

2.15 “***Company***” is defined in the Preamble to the Plan.

2.16 “***Contractor***” means any natural person, who is not an Employee, rendering *bona fide* services to or on behalf of the Company or a Related Company, with compensation, pursuant to a written independent contractor agreement between such person and the Company or a Related Company, provided that such services are not rendered in connection with the offer or sale of securities in a capital raising transaction and do not directly or indirectly promote or maintain a market for the Company’s securities.

2.17 “***Corporation***” means any entity that (i) is defined as a corporation under Section 7701 of the Code and (ii) is the Company or is in an unbroken chain of corporations (other than the Company) beginning with the Company, if each of the corporations other than the last corporation in the unbroken chain owns stock possessing a majority of the total combined voting power of all classes of stock in one of the other corporations in the chain. For

purposes of clause (ii) hereof, an entity shall be treated as a "corporation" if it satisfies the definition of a corporation under Section 7701 of the Code.

2.18 "***Date of Grant***" means the effective date on which an Award is made to a Participant as set forth in the applicable Award Agreement.

2.19 "***Dividend Equivalent Right***" means the right of the holder thereof to receive credits based on the cash dividends that would have been paid on the shares of Common Stock specified in the Award if such shares were held by the Participant to whom the Award is made.

2.20 "***Effective Date***" is defined in the Preamble to the Plan.

2.21 "***Employee***" means a common law employee (as defined in accordance with the Regulations and Revenue Rulings then applicable under Section 3401(c) of the Code) of the Company or any Related Company of the Company; provided, however, in the case of individuals whose employment status, by virtue of their employer or residence, is not determined under Section 3401(c) of the Code, "Employee" shall mean an individual treated as an employee for local payroll tax or employment purposes by the applicable employer under Applicable Law for the relevant period.

2.22 "***Entity***" means any individual, entity or group (within the meaning of Section 13(d)(3) or Section 14 (d)(2) of the Exchange Act.

2.23 "***Exchange Act***" means the United States Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended.

2.24 "***Exempt Shares***" means shares of Common Stock subject to an Award that has been granted with (or that has been amended by the Committee to include) more favorable vesting provisions than those set forth in Section 7.2. No more than five percent (5%) of the shares of Common Stock that may be delivered pursuant to Awards may be shares designated as "Exempt Shares."

2.25 "***Exercise Date***" is defined in Section 8.3(b) hereof.

2.26 "***Exercise Notice***" is defined in Section 8.3(b) hereof.

2.27 "***Fair Market Value***" means, as of a particular date, (a) if the shares of Common Stock are listed on any established national securities exchange, the closing sales price per share of Common Stock on the consolidated transaction reporting system for the principal securities exchange for the Common Stock on that date, or, if there shall have been no such sale so reported on that date, on the last preceding date on which such a sale was so reported; (b) if the shares of Common Stock are not so listed, but are quoted on an automated quotation system, the closing sales price per share of Common Stock reported on the automated quotation system on that date, or, if there shall have been no such sale so reported on that date, on the last preceding date on which such a sale was so reported; (c) if the Common Stock is not so listed or quoted, the mean between the closing bid and asked price on that date, or, if there are no quotations available for such date, on the last preceding date on which such quotations shall be available, as reported by the National Association of Securities Dealer, Inc.'s OTC Bulletin Board or the Pink OTC Markets, Inc. (previously known as the National Quotation Bureau, Inc.); or (d) if none of the above is applicable, such amount as may be determined by the Committee (acting on the advice of an Independent Third Party, should the Committee elect in its sole discretion to utilize an Independent Third Party for this purpose), in good faith, to be the fair market value per share of Common Stock. The determination of Fair Market Value shall, where applicable, be in compliance with Section 409A of the Code.

2.28 "***Full Value Award***" means any Award with a net benefit to the Participant, without regard to any restrictions such as those described in Section 6.4(b), equal to the aggregate Fair Market Value of the total shares of Common Stock subject to the Award. Full Value Awards include Restricted Stock and Restricted Stock Units, but do not include Stock Options and SARs.

2.29 "***Immediate Family Members***" is defined in Section 15.8 hereof.

2.30 "***Incentive***" is defined in Section 2.5 hereof.

2.31 "***Incentive Stock Option***" means an incentive stock option within the meaning of Section 422 of the Code, granted pursuant to this Plan.

2.32 "***Incumbent Board***" is defined in Section 2.10(b) hereof.

2.33 "***Independent Third Party***" means an individual or entity independent of the Company having experience in providing investment banking or similar appraisal or valuation services and with expertise generally in the valuation of securities or other property for purposes of this Plan. The Committee may utilize one or more Independent Third Parties.

2.34 "***Nonqualified Stock Option***" means a nonqualified stock option, granted pursuant to this Plan, which is not an Incentive Stock Option.

2.35 "***Option Price***" means the price which must be paid by a Participant upon exercise of a Stock Option to purchase a share of Common Stock.

2.36 "***Other Award***" means an Award issued pursuant to Section 6.9 hereof.

2.37 "***Outside Director***" means a director of the Company who is not an Employee or a Contractor.

2.38 "***Outstanding Company Common Stock***" is defined in Section 2.10(a) hereof.

2.39 "***Outstanding Company Voting Securities***" is defined in Section 2.10(a) hereof.

2.40 "***Parent Company***" means a company or other entity which as a result of a Change in Control owns the Company or all or substantially all of the Company's assets either directly or through one or more subsidiaries.

2.41 "***Participant***" means an Employee, Contractor or an Outside Director to whom an Award is granted under this Plan.

2.42 "***Performance Award***" means an Award hereunder of cash, shares of Common Stock, units or rights based upon, payable in, or otherwise related to, Common Stock pursuant to Section 6.7 hereof.

2.43 "***Performance Goal***" means any of the Performance Criteria set forth in Section 6.10 hereof.

2.44 "***Plan***" is defined in the Preamble to the Plan.

2.45 "***Prior Plan Awards***" means (i) any awards under the Prior Plans that are outstanding on the Effective Date, and that on or after the Effective Date, are forfeited, expire or are canceled; and (ii) any shares subject to awards relating to Common Stock under the Prior Plans that, on or after the Effective Date are settled in cash.

2.46 "***Prior Plans***" means the 2015 Plan and the Company's Restated 1996 Flexible Stock Incentive Plan as of April 4, 2016.

2.47 "***Related Company***" means any Subsidiary and any other entity that is directly or indirectly controlled by, in control of or under common control with the Company.

2.48 "***Restricted Stock***" means shares of Common Stock issued or transferred to a Participant pursuant to Section 6.4 of this Plan which are subject to restrictions or limitations set forth in this Plan and in the related Award Agreement.

2.49 "***Restricted Stock Units***" means units awarded to Participants pursuant to Section 6.6 hereof, which are convertible into Common Stock at such time as such units are no longer subject to restrictions as established by the Committee.

2.50 "***Restriction Period***" is defined in Section 6.4(b)(i) hereof.

2.51 "***SAR***" or "S***tock Appreciation Right***" means the right to receive an amount, in cash and/or Common Stock, equal to the excess of the Fair Market Value of a specified number of shares of Common Stock as of the date the SAR is exercised (or, as provided in the Award Agreement, converted) over the SAR Price for such shares.

2.52 "***SAR Price***" means the exercise price or conversion price of each share of Common Stock covered by a SAR, determined on the Date of Grant of the SAR.

2.53 "***Significant Operating Unit***" means a Related Company that is designated by the Committee or the Successor Company from time to time as a Significant Operating Unit for purposes of the Plan.

2.54 "***Significant Operating Unit Transaction***" means a merger or consolidation of a Significant Operating Unit with or into any other company, entity or person or a sale or disposition by the Company, in one transaction or a series of related transactions, of all or substantially all the Operating Unit's assets, other than a transaction with a Subsidiary or another corporation or other entity that is controlled by the Company.

2.55 "***Spread***" is defined in Section 12.4(b) hereof.

2.56 "***Stock Option***" means a Nonqualified Stock Option or an Incentive Stock Option.

2.57 "***Subsidiary***" means (i) any corporation in an unbroken chain of corporations beginning with the Company, if each of the corporations other than the last corporation in the unbroken chain owns stock possessing a majority of the total combined voting power of all classes of stock in one of the other corporations in the chain, (ii) any limited partnership, if the Company or any corporation described in item (i) above owns a majority of the general partnership interest and a majority of the limited partnership interests entitled to vote on the removal and replacement of the general partner, and (iii) any partnership or limited liability company, if the partners or members thereof are composed only of the Company, any corporation listed in item (i) above or any limited partnership listed in item (ii) above. "***Subsidiaries***" means more than one of any such corporations, limited partnerships, partnerships or limited liability companies.

2.58 "***Successor Company***" means the surviving company, the successor company or Parent Company, as applicable, in connection with a Change in Control or the company or other entity which as a result of a Significant Operating Unit Transaction owns the Significant Operating Unit or all or substantially all of the Significant Operating Unit's shares or assets either directly or through one or more subsidiaries.

2.59 "***Termination of Service***" occurs when a Participant who is (i) an Employee of the Company or any Related Company ceases to serve as an Employee of the Company and its Related Companies, for any reason; (ii) an Outside Director of the Company or a Related Company ceases to serve as a director of the Company and its Related Companies for any reason; or (iii) a Contractor of the Company or a Related Company ceases to serve as a Contractor of the Company and its Related Companies for any reason. Except as may be necessary or desirable to comply with applicable federal or state law, a "Termination of Service" shall not be deemed to have occurred when a Participant who is an Employee becomes an Outside Director or Contractor or vice versa. If, however, a Participant who is an Employee and who has an Incentive Stock Option ceases to be an Employee but does not suffer a Termination of Service, and if that Participant does not exercise the Incentive Stock Option within the time required under Section

422 of the Code upon ceasing to be an Employee, the Incentive Stock Option shall thereafter become a Nonqualified Stock Option. Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this Section 2.59, in the event an Award issued under the Plan is subject to Section 409A of the Code, then, in lieu of the foregoing definition and to the extent necessary to comply with the requirements of Section 409A of the Code, the definition of "Termination of Service" for purposes of such Award shall be the definition of "separation from service" provided for under Section 409A of the Code and the regulations or other guidance issued thereunder.

2.60 "***Total and Permanent Disability***" means, unless otherwise defined by the Committee for purposes of the Plan in the instrument evidencing an Award or in a written employment, services or other agreement between the Participant and the Company or a Related Company, a Participant is qualified for long-term disability benefits under the Company's or Related Company's disability plan or insurance policy; or, if no such plan or policy is then in existence or if the Participant is not eligible to participate in such plan or policy, that the Participant, because of a physical or mental condition resulting from bodily injury, disease, or mental disorder, is unable to perform his or her duties of employment for a period of twelve (12) continuous months, as determined in good faith by the Committee, based upon medical reports or other evidence satisfactory to the Committee; provided that, with respect to any Incentive Stock Option, Total and Permanent Disability shall have the meaning given it under the rules governing Incentive Stock Options under the Code. Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this Section 2.60, in the event an Award issued under the Plan is subject to Section 409A of the Code, then, in lieu of the foregoing definition and to the extent necessary to comply with the requirements of Section 409A of the Code, the definition of "Total and Permanent Disability" for purposes of such Award shall be the definition of "disability" provided for under Section 409A of the Code and the regulations or other guidance issued thereunder.

ARTICLE 3
ADMINISTRATION

3.1 **General Administration; Establishment of Committee.** Subject to the terms of this Article 3, the Plan shall be administered by the Board or such committee of the Board as is designated by the Board to administer the Plan (the "***Committee***"). The Committee shall consist of not fewer than two persons. Any member of the Committee may be removed at any time, with or without cause, by resolution of the Board. Any vacancy occurring in the membership of the Committee may be filled by appointment by the Board. Membership on the Committee shall be limited to those members of the Board who are "non-employee directors" as defined in Rule 16b-3 promulgated under the Exchange Act. At any time there is no Committee to administer the Plan, any references in this Plan to the Committee shall be deemed to refer to the Board.

3.2 **Designation of Participants and Awards.**

(a) The Committee shall determine and designate from time to time the eligible persons to whom Awards will be granted and shall set forth in each related Award Agreement, where applicable, the Award Period, the Date of Grant, and such other terms, provisions, limitations, and performance requirements, as are approved by the Committee, but not inconsistent with the Plan. The Committee shall determine whether an Award shall include one type of Incentive or two or more Incentives granted in combination or two or more Incentives granted in tandem (that is, a joint grant where exercise of one Incentive results in cancellation of all or a portion of the other Incentive). Although the members of the Committee shall be eligible to receive Awards, all decisions with respect to any Award, and the terms and conditions thereof, to be granted under the Plan to any member of the Committee shall be made solely and exclusively by the other members of the Committee, or if such member is the only member of the Committee, by the Board.

(b) Notwithstanding Section 3.2(a), to the extent permitted by Applicable Law, the Board may, in its discretion and by a resolution adopted by the Board, authorize one or more officers of the Company (an "***Authorized Officer***") to (i) designate one or more Employees or Contractors as eligible persons to whom Awards will be granted under the Plan, and (ii) determine the number of shares of Common Stock that will be subject to such Awards; provided, that the resolution of the Board granting such authority (x) shall not authorize an officer to designate himself as a recipient of any Award, and (y) must comply in all material

respects with the requirements of Applicable Law, including, Section 152 of Delaware General Corporation Law or any successor thereto.

3.3 **Authority of the Committee.** The Committee, in its discretion, shall (i) interpret the Plan and Award Agreements, (ii) prescribe, amend, and rescind any rules and regulations, as necessary or appropriate for the administration of the Plan, (iii) establish Performance Goals for an Award and certify the extent of their achievement, and (iv) make such other determinations or certifications and take such other action as it deems necessary or advisable in the administration of the Plan. Any interpretation, determination, or other action made or taken by the Committee shall be final, binding, and conclusive on all interested parties. The Committee's discretion set forth herein shall not be limited by any provision of the Plan, including any provision which by its terms is applicable notwithstanding any other provision of the Plan to the contrary.

Except as set forth in Section 3.2(b) above, the Committee may delegate to officers of the Company, pursuant to a written delegation, the authority to perform specified functions under the Plan. Any actions taken by any officers of the Company pursuant to such written delegation of authority shall be deemed to have been taken by the Committee.

With respect to restrictions in the Plan that are based on the requirements of Rule 16b-3 promulgated under the Exchange Act, Section 422 of the Code, the rules of any exchange or inter-dealer quotation system upon which the Company's securities are listed or quoted, or any other Applicable Law, to the extent that any such restrictions are no longer required by Applicable Law, the Committee shall have the sole discretion and authority to grant Awards that are not subject to such mandated restrictions and/or to waive any such mandated restrictions with respect to outstanding Awards.

ARTICLE 4
ELIGIBILITY

Any Employee (including an Employee who is also a director or an officer), Contractor or Outside Director of the Company or a Related Company whose judgment, initiative, and efforts contributed or may be expected to contribute to the successful performance of the Company or a Related Company is eligible to participate in the Plan; provided that only Employees of a Corporation shall be eligible to receive Incentive Stock Options. The Committee, upon its own action, may grant, but shall not be required to grant, an Award to any Employee, Contractor or Outside Director. Awards may be granted by the Committee at any time and from time to time to new Participants, or to then Participants, or to a greater or lesser number of Participants, and may include or exclude previous Participants, as the Committee shall determine. Except as required by this Plan, Awards need not contain similar provisions. The Committee's determinations under the Plan (including without limitation determinations of which Employees, Contractors or Outside Directors, if any, are to receive Awards, the form, amount and timing of such Awards, the terms and provisions of such Awards and the agreements evidencing same) need not be uniform and may be made by it selectively among Participants who receive, or are eligible to receive, Awards under the Plan.

ARTICLE 5
SHARES SUBJECT TO PLAN

5.1 **Number Available for Awards.** Subject to adjustment as provided in Articles 11 and 12 and subject to Section 5.3, the maximum number of shares of Common Stock that may be delivered pursuant to Awards granted under the Plan is 5,563,134 shares plus any Prior Plan Awards, of which up to 5,000,000 shares of Common Stock may be delivered pursuant to Incentive Stock Options. Shares to be issued may be made available from authorized but unissued Common Stock, Common Stock held by the Company in its treasury, or Common Stock purchased by the Company on the open market or otherwise. During the term of this Plan, the Company will at all times reserve and keep available the number of shares of Common Stock that shall be sufficient to satisfy the requirements of this Plan.

5.2 **Reuse of Shares.** Subject to Section 5.3, to the extent that any Award under this Plan or any Prior Plan Award shall be forfeited, shall expire or be canceled, in whole or in part, then the number of shares of Common Stock covered by the Award or Prior Plan Award or stock option so forfeited, expired or canceled may again be awarded pursuant to the provisions of this Plan. Awards that may be satisfied either by the issuance of shares of Common Stock or by cash or other consideration shall be counted against the maximum number of shares of Common Stock that may be issued under this Plan only during the period that the Award is outstanding or to the extent the Award is ultimately satisfied by the issuance of shares of Common Stock. Shares of Common Stock otherwise deliverable pursuant to an Award that are withheld upon exercise or vesting of an Award for purposes of paying the exercise price or tax withholdings (including, without limitation, any shares withheld in connection with the exercise of stock-settled SARs) shall be treated as delivered to the Participant and shall be counted against the maximum number of shares of Common Stock that may be issued under this Plan. Awards will not reduce the number of shares of Common Stock that may be issued pursuant to this Plan if the settlement of the Award will not require the issuance of shares of Common Stock, as, for example, a SAR that can be satisfied only by the payment of cash. Notwithstanding any provisions of the Plan to the contrary, only shares forfeited back to the Company or shares canceled on account of termination, expiration or lapse of an Award shall again be available for grant of Incentive Stock Options under the Plan, but shall not increase the maximum number of shares described in Section 5.1 above as the maximum number of shares of Common Stock that may be delivered pursuant to Incentive Stock Options.

5.3 **Fungible Share Provision.** The aggregate number of shares of Common Stock available for issuance under the Plan shall be reduced by 2.0 shares for each share delivered in settlement of Awards other than Stock Options or SARs and one share for each share delivered in settlement of Stock Options or SARs. Any shares of Common Stock that again become available for issuance under the Plan pursuant to Section 5.2 shall be added back to the Plan as 2.0 shares if such shares were subject to Awards other than Stock Options or SARs and one share if such shares were subject to Stock Options or SARs.

5.4 **Limitation on Outside Director Awards.** No Outside Director may be granted any Award or Awards denominated in shares that exceed in the aggregate $700,000 in Fair Market Value (such Fair Market Value computed as of the Date of Grant) in any calendar year period, plus an additional $700,000 in Fair Market Value (determined as of the Date of Grant) for one-time awards to a newly appointed or elected Outside Director. The foregoing limit shall not apply to any Award made pursuant to deferred compensation arrangements in lieu of all or a portion of cash retainers.

ARTICLE 6
GRANT OF AWARDS

6.1 **In General.**

(a) The grant of an Award shall be authorized by the Committee and shall be evidenced by an Award Agreement setting forth the Incentive or Incentives being granted, the total number of shares of Common Stock subject to the Incentive(s), the Option Price (if applicable), the Award Period, the Date of Grant, and such other terms, provisions, limitations, and performance objectives, as are approved by the Committee, but (i) not inconsistent with the Plan, and (ii) to the extent an Award issued under the Plan is subject to Section 409A of the Code, in compliance with the applicable requirements of Section 409A of the Code and the regulations or other guidance issued thereunder. The Company shall execute an Award Agreement with a Participant after the Committee approves the issuance of an Award. Any Award granted pursuant to this Plan must be granted within the term of the Plan, as set forth in Article 10 below. The Plan shall be submitted to the Company's stockholders for approval at the first stockholder meeting after the Board Approval Date and no Awards may be granted under the Plan prior to the Effective Date. The grant of an Award to a Participant shall not be deemed either to entitle the Participant to, or to disqualify the Participant from, receipt of any other Award under the Plan.

(b) If the Committee establishes a purchase price for an Award, the Participant must accept such Award within a period of thirty (30) days (or such shorter period as the Committee may specify) after the Date of Grant by executing the applicable Award Agreement and paying such purchase price.

(c) Any Award under this Plan that is settled in whole or in part in cash on a deferred basis may provide for interest equivalents to be credited with respect to such cash payment. Interest equivalents may be compounded and shall be paid upon such terms and conditions as may be specified by the grant.

6.2 **Option Price.** The Option Price for any share of Common Stock which may be purchased under a Nonqualified Stock Option for any share of Common Stock must be equal to or greater than the Fair Market Value of the share on the Date of Grant. The Option Price for any share of Common Stock which may be purchased under an Incentive Stock Option must be at least equal to the Fair Market Value of the share on the Date of Grant; if an Incentive Stock Option is granted to an Employee who owns or is deemed to own (by reason of the attribution rules of Section 424(d) of the Code) more than ten percent (10%) of the combined voting power of all classes of stock of the Company (or any parent or Subsidiary), the Option Price shall be at least one hundred ten percent (110%) of the Fair Market Value of the Common Stock on the Date of Grant. No dividends or Dividend Equivalent Rights may be paid or granted with respect to any Stock Option granted hereunder.

6.3 **Maximum ISO Grants.** The Committee may not grant Incentive Stock Options under the Plan to any Employee which would permit the aggregate Fair Market Value (determined on the Date of Grant) of the Common Stock with respect to which Incentive Stock Options (under this and any other plan of the Company and its Subsidiaries) are exercisable for the first time by such Employee during any calendar year to exceed $100,000. To the extent any Stock Option granted under this Plan which is designated as an Incentive Stock Option exceeds this limit or otherwise fails to qualify as an Incentive Stock Option, such Stock Option (or any such portion thereof) shall be a Nonqualified Stock Option. In such case, the Committee shall designate which stock will be treated as Incentive Stock Option stock by causing the issuance of a separate stock certificate (if applicable) and identifying such stock as Incentive Stock Option stock on the Company's stock transfer records.

6.4 **Restricted Stock.** If Restricted Stock is granted to or received by a Participant under an Award (including a Stock Option), the Committee shall set forth in the related Award Agreement: (i) the number of shares of Common Stock awarded, (ii) the price, if any, to be paid by the Participant for such Restricted Stock and the method of payment of the price, (iii) the time or times within which such Award may be subject to forfeiture, (iv) specified Performance Goals of the Company, a Related Company, any division thereof or any group of Employees of the Company, or other criteria, which the Committee determines must be met in order to remove any restrictions (including vesting) on such Award, and (v) all other terms, limitations, restrictions, and conditions of the Restricted Stock, which shall be consistent with this Plan, to the extent applicable and, to the extent Restricted Stock granted under the Plan is subject to Section 409A of the Code, in compliance with the applicable requirements of Section 409A of the Code and the regulations or other guidance issued thereunder. The provisions of Restricted Stock need not be the same with respect to each Participant.

(a) Legend on Shares. The Company shall electronically register the Restricted Stock awarded to a Participant in the name of such Participant, which shall bear an appropriate legend referring to the terms, conditions, and restrictions applicable to such Restricted Stock, substantially as provided in Section 15.10 of the Plan. No stock certificate or certificates shall be issued with respect to such shares of Common Stock, unless, following the expiration of the Restriction Period (as defined in Section 6.4(b)(i)) without forfeiture in respect of such shares of Common Stock, the Participant requests delivery of the certificate or certificates by submitting a written request to the Committee (or such party designated by the Company) requesting delivery of the certificates. The Company shall deliver the certificates requested by the Participant to the Participant as soon as administratively practicable following the Company's receipt of such request.

(b) **Restrictions and Conditions.** Shares of Restricted Stock shall be subject to the following restrictions and conditions:

(i) Subject to the other provisions of this Plan and the terms of the particular Award Agreements, during such period as may be determined by the Committee commencing on the Date of Grant or the date of exercise of an Award (the "***Restriction Period***"), the Participant shall not be permitted to sell, transfer, pledge or assign shares of Restricted Stock. Except for these limitations and the limitations set forth in Section 7.2 below, the Committee may in its sole discretion, remove

any or all of the restrictions on such Restricted Stock whenever it may determine that, by reason of changes in Applicable Laws or other changes in circumstances arising after the date of the Award, such action is appropriate.

(ii) Except as provided in sub-paragraph (i) above or in the applicable Award Agreement, the Participant shall have, with respect to his or her Restricted Stock, all of the rights of a stockholder of the Company, including the right to vote the shares, and the right to receive any dividends thereon; provided that, if the right to receive dividends is awarded, then (A) any cash dividends and stock dividends with respect to the Restricted Stock shall be withheld by the Company for the participant's account, and interest may be credited on the amount of the cash dividends withheld at a rate and subject to such terms as determined by the Committee; and (B) such cash dividends or stock dividends so withheld by the Company and attributable to any particular share of Restricted Stock (and earnings thereon, if applicable) shall be distributed to such Participant in cash or, at the discretion of the Committee, in shares of Common Stock having a Fair Market Value equal to the amount of such dividends, if applicable, upon the release of restrictions on such share and, if such share is forfeited, the Participant shall have no right to such dividends. Certificates for shares of Common Stock free of restriction under this Plan shall be delivered to the Participant promptly after, and only after, the Restriction Period shall expire without forfeiture in respect of such shares of Common Stock or after any other restrictions imposed on such shares of Common Stock by the applicable Award Agreement or other agreement have expired. Certificates for the shares of Common Stock forfeited under the provisions of the Plan and the applicable Award Agreement shall be promptly returned to the Company by the forfeiting Participant. Each Award Agreement shall require that each Participant, in connection with the issuance of a certificate for Restricted Stock, shall endorse such certificate in blank or execute a stock power in form satisfactory to the Company in blank and deliver such certificate and executed stock power to the Company.

(iii) The Restriction Period of Restricted Stock shall commence on the Date of Grant or the date of exercise of an Award, as specified in the Award Agreement, and, subject to Article 12 of the Plan, unless otherwise established by the Committee in the Award Agreement setting forth the terms of the Restricted Stock, shall expire upon satisfaction of the conditions set forth in the Award Agreement; such conditions may provide for vesting based on length of continuous service or such Performance Goals, as may be determined by the Committee in its sole discretion.

(iv) Except as otherwise provided in the particular Award Agreement, upon Termination of Service for any reason during the Restriction Period, the nonvested shares of Restricted Stock shall be forfeited by the Participant. In the event a Participant has paid any consideration to the Company for such forfeited Restricted Stock, the Committee shall specify in the Award Agreement that either (i) the Company shall be obligated to, or (ii) the Company may, in its sole discretion, elect to, pay to the Participant, as soon as practicable after the event causing forfeiture, in cash, an amount equal to the lesser of the total consideration paid by the Participant for such forfeited shares or the Fair Market Value of such forfeited shares as of the date of Termination of Service, as the Committee, in its sole discretion shall select. Upon any forfeiture, all rights of a Participant with respect to the forfeited shares of the Restricted Stock shall cease and terminate, without any further obligation on the part of the Company.

6.5 **SARs.** The Committee may grant SARs to any Participant, either as a separate Award or in connection with a Stock Option. SARs shall be subject to such terms and conditions as the Committee shall impose, provided that such terms and conditions are (i) not inconsistent with the Plan, and (ii) to the extent a SAR issued under the Plan is subject to Section 409A of the Code, in compliance with the applicable requirements of Section 409A of the Code and the regulations or other guidance issued thereunder. The grant of the SAR may provide that the holder may be paid for the value of the SAR either in cash or in shares of Common Stock, or a combination thereof. In the event of the exercise of a SAR payable in shares of Common Stock, the holder of the SAR shall receive that number of whole shares of Common Stock having an aggregate Fair Market Value on the date of exercise equal to the value obtained by multiplying (i) the difference between the Fair Market Value of a share of Common Stock on the date of exercise

over the SAR Price as set forth in such SAR (or other value specified in the agreement granting the SAR), by (ii) the number of shares of Common Stock as to which the SAR is exercised, with a cash settlement to be made for any fractional shares of Common Stock. The SAR Price for any share of Common Stock subject to a SAR may be equal to or greater than the Fair Market Value of the share on the Date of Grant. The Committee, in its sole discretion, may place a ceiling on the amount payable upon exercise of a SAR, but any such limitation shall be specified at the time that the SAR is granted. No dividends or Dividend Equivalent Rights may be paid or granted with respect to any Stock Appreciation Right granted hereunder.

6.6 **Restricted Stock Units.** Restricted Stock Units may be awarded or sold to any Participant under such terms and conditions as shall be established by the Committee, provided, however, that such terms and conditions are (i) not inconsistent with the Plan, and (ii) to the extent a Restricted Stock Unit issued under the Plan is subject to Section 409A of the Code, in compliance with the applicable requirements of Section 409A of the Code and the regulations or other guidance issued thereunder. Restricted Stock Units shall be subject to such restrictions as the Committee determines, including, without limitation, (a) a prohibition against sale, assignment, transfer, pledge, hypothecation or other encumbrance for a specified period; or (b) a requirement that the holder forfeit (or in the case of shares of Common Stock or units sold to the Participant, resell to the Company at cost) such shares or units in the event of Termination of Service during the period of restriction.

6.7 **Performance Awards.**

(a) The Committee may grant Performance Awards to one or more Participants. The terms and conditions of Performance Awards shall be specified at the time of the grant and may include provisions establishing the performance period, the Performance Goals to be achieved during a performance period, and the maximum or minimum settlement values, provided that such terms and conditions are (i) not inconsistent with the Plan and (ii) to the extent a Performance Award issued under the Plan is subject to Section 409A of the Code, in compliance with the applicable requirements of Section 409A of the Code and the regulations or other guidance issued thereunder. If the Performance Award is to be in shares of Common Stock, the Performance Awards may provide for the issuance of the shares of Common Stock at the time of the grant of the Performance Award or at the time of the certification by the Committee that the Performance Goals for the performance period have been met; provided, however, if shares of Common Stock are issued at the time of the grant of the Performance Award and if, at the end of the performance period, the Performance Goals are not certified by the Committee to have been fully satisfied, then, notwithstanding any other provisions of this Plan to the contrary, the Common Stock shall be forfeited in accordance with the terms of the grant to the extent the Committee determines that the Performance Goals were not met. The forfeiture of shares of Common Stock issued at the time of the grant of the Performance Award due to failure to achieve the established Performance Goals shall be separate from and in addition to any other restrictions provided for in this Plan that may be applicable to such shares of Common Stock. Each Performance Award granted to one or more Participants shall have its own terms and conditions.

If the Committee determines, in its sole discretion, that the established performance measures or objectives are no longer suitable because of a change in the Company's business, operations, corporate structure, or for other reasons that the Committee deemed satisfactory, the Committee may modify the performance measures or objectives and/or the performance period.

(b) Performance Awards may be valued by reference to the Fair Market Value of a share of Common Stock or according to any formula or method deemed appropriate by the Committee, in its sole discretion, including, but not limited to, achievement of Performance Goals or other specific financial, production, sales or cost performance objectives that the Committee believes to be relevant to the Company's business and/or remaining in the employ of the Company or a Related Company for a specified period of time. Performance Awards may be paid in cash, shares of Common Stock, or other consideration, or any combination thereof. If payable in shares of Common Stock, the consideration for the issuance of such shares may be the achievement of the performance objective established at the time of the grant of the Performance Award. Performance Awards may be payable in a single payment or in installments and may be payable at a specified

date or dates or upon attaining the performance objective. The extent to which any applicable performance objective has been achieved shall be conclusively determined by the Committee.

6.8 **Dividend Equivalent Rights.** The Committee may grant a Dividend Equivalent Right to any Participant, either as a component of another Award (to the extent permitted under the Plan) or as a separate Award. The terms and conditions of the Dividend Equivalent Right shall be specified by the grant. Dividend equivalents credited to the holder of a Dividend Equivalent Right may be paid currently or may be deemed to be reinvested in additional shares of Common Stock (which may thereafter accrue additional dividend equivalents). Any such reinvestment shall be at the Fair Market Value at the time thereof. Dividend Equivalent Rights may be settled in cash or shares of Common Stock, or a combination thereof, in a single payment or in installments. A Dividend Equivalent Right granted as a component of another Award may provide that such Dividend Equivalent Right shall be settled upon exercise, settlement, or payment of, or lapse of restrictions on, such other Award, and that such Dividend Equivalent Right granted as a component of another Award may also contain terms and conditions different from such other Award; provided that (i) any Dividend Equivalent Rights with respect to such Award shall be withheld by the Company for the Participant's account until such Award is vested, subject to such terms as determined by the Committee; and (ii) such Dividend Equivalent Rights so withheld by the Company and attributable to any particular Award shall be distributed to such Participant in cash or, at the discretion of the Committee, in shares of Common Stock having a Fair Market Value equal to the amount of such Dividend Equivalent Rights, if applicable, upon vesting of the Award and if such Award is forfeited, the Participant shall have no right to such Dividend Equivalent Rights. No Dividend Equivalent Rights may be paid or granted with respect to any Stock Option or SAR.

6.9 **Other Awards.** The Committee may grant to any Participant other forms of Awards, based upon, payable in, or otherwise related to, in whole or in part, shares of Common Stock, if the Committee determines that such other form of Award is consistent with the purpose and restrictions of this Plan. The terms and conditions of such other form of Award shall be specified by the grant. Such Other Awards may be granted for no cash consideration, for such minimum consideration as may be required by Applicable Law, or for such other consideration as may be specified by the grant.

6.10 **Performance Goals.** Awards of Restricted Stock, Restricted Stock Units, Performance Award and Other Awards (whether relating to cash or shares of Common Stock) under the Plan may be made subject to the attainment of Performance Goals relating to one or more business criteria which may consist of one or more or any combination of the following criteria: cash flow (including, but not limited to, operating cash flow, free cash flow or cash flow return on capital); cost; working capital; earnings (and any variations thereon, including, without limitation, earnings before interest and taxes; earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation and amortization; earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation, amortization, and stock-based compensation or other similar expenses; operating earnings); earnings per share; book value per share; share price; operating income (including or excluding depreciation, amortization, extraordinary items, restructuring charges or other expenses); revenues (and any variations thereon, including, without limitation, gross revenues; net revenues; revenues from products); expenses (and any variations thereon); assets under management; fees based on assets under management; monetized units or products; sales (and any variations thereon); operating margins; gross margins; return on assets; return on equity; debt; debt plus equity; credit quality or debt ratings; profit (and any variations thereon) market or economic value added; stock price appreciation; total stockholder return; cost control; strategic initiatives; market share; net income; return on invested capital; improvements in capital structure; capital expenditures; operational improvements; or customer satisfaction, employee satisfaction, services performance, subscriber, cash management or asset management metrics; the accomplishment of mergers, acquisitions, dispositions, public offerings or similar extraordinary business transactions; inventory levels, inventory turn or shrinkage; or total return to stockholders ("***Performance Criteria***"). Any Performance Criteria may be used to measure the performance of the Company as a whole or any business unit of the Company and may be measured relative to a peer group or index. Any Performance Criteria may include or exclude (i) events that are of an unusual nature or indicate infrequency of occurrence; (ii) gains or losses acquisitions or divestitures, (iii) asset write-downs; (iv) litigation or claim judgments or settlements; (v) foreign exchange gains and losses; (vi) impairments; (vi) changes in tax or accounting regulations or laws, (vii) the effect of a merger or acquisition, any reorganization or restructuring programs; or (viii) other similar occurrences. In all other respects, Performance Criteria shall be calculated in accordance with the Company's financial statements, under generally accepted accounting

principles, or under a methodology established by the Committee prior to the issuance of an Award which is consistently applied and identified in the audited financial statements, including footnotes, or the Compensation Discussion and Analysis section of the Company's annual report.

6.11 **Tandem Awards.** The Committee may grant two or more Incentives in one Award in the form of a "tandem Award," so that the right of the Participant to exercise one Incentive shall be canceled if, and to the extent, the other Incentive is exercised. For example, if a Stock Option and a SAR are issued in a tandem Award, and the Participant exercises the SAR with respect to one hundred (100) shares of Common Stock, the right of the Participant to exercise the related Stock Option shall be canceled to the extent of one hundred (100) shares of Common Stock.

6.12 **No Repricing of Stock Options or SARs.** The Committee may not "reprice" any Stock Option or SAR. For purposes of this Section 6.12, "reprice" means any of the following or any other action that has the same effect: (i) amending a Stock Option or SAR to reduce its Option Price or SAR Price, respectively, (ii) canceling a Stock Option or SAR at a time when its Option Price or SAR Price, respectively, exceeds the Fair Market Value of a share of Common Stock in exchange for cash or a Stock Option, SAR, award of Restricted Stock or other equity award, or (iii) taking any other action that is treated as a repricing under generally accepted accounting principles, provided that nothing in this Section 6.12 shall prevent the Committee from making adjustments pursuant to Article 11, from exchanging or cancelling Incentives pursuant to Article 12, or substituting Incentives in accordance with Article 14.

6.13 **Recoupment for Restatements.** Notwithstanding any other language in this Plan to the contrary, the Company may recoup all or any portion of any shares or cash paid to a Participant in connection with an Award, as set forth in the Company's clawback policy, if any, approved by the Company's Board from time to time.

ARTICLE 7
AWARD PERIOD; VESTING

7.1 **Award Period.** Subject to the other provisions of this Plan, the Committee may, in its discretion, provide that an Incentive may not be exercised in whole or in part for any period or periods of time or beyond any date specified in the Award Agreement. Except as provided in the Award Agreement, an Incentive may be exercised in whole or in part at any time during its term. The Award Period for an Incentive shall be reduced or terminated upon Termination of Service. No Incentive granted under the Plan may be exercised at any time after the end of its Award Period. No portion of any Incentive may be exercised after the expiration of ten (10) years from its Date of Grant. However, if an Employee owns or is deemed to own (by reason of the attribution rules of Section 424(d) of the Code) more than ten percent (10%) of the combined voting power of all classes of stock of the Company (or any parent or Subsidiary) and an Incentive Stock Option is granted to such Employee, the term of such Incentive Stock Option (to the extent required by the Code at the time of grant) shall be no more than five (5) years from the Date of Grant.

7.2 **Vesting.** The Committee, in its sole discretion, shall establish the vesting terms applicable to an Incentive, provided that any such vesting terms shall not be inconsistent with the terms of the Plan, including, without limitation, this Section 7.2. Except as otherwise provided herein, no Incentive (nor any portion of an Incentive, even on a pro rata basis) may vest earlier than one (1) year after the Date of Grant; *provided*, *however*, with respect to grants of Awards made on the date of an Annual Stockholders Meeting to Outside Directors, such one (1) year vesting period shall be deemed satisfied if such Awards vest on the earlier of the first anniversary of the Date of Grant or the first Annual Stockholders Meeting following the Date of Grant. Except as otherwise provided herein, the Committee may not accelerate the date on which all or any portion of an Award may be vested or waive the Restriction Period on a Full Value Award except upon (i) the Participant's death or Total and Permanent Disability; (ii) retirement (as such term is defined in the Participant's applicable Award Agreement); or (iii) upon a Change in Control. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Committee may, in its sole discretion, grant Awards with more favorable vesting provisions than set forth in this Section 7.2, provided that the shares of Common Stock subject to such Awards shall be Exempt Shares.

ARTICLE 8
EXERCISE OR CONVERSION OF INCENTIVE

8.1 **In General.** A vested Incentive may be exercised or converted, during its Award Period, subject to limitations and restrictions set forth in the Award Agreement.

8.2 **Securities Law and Exchange Restrictions.** In no event may an Incentive be exercised or shares of Common Stock issued pursuant to an Award if a necessary listing or quotation of the shares of Common Stock on a stock exchange or inter-dealer quotation system or any registration under state or federal securities laws required under the circumstances has not been accomplished.

8.3 **Exercise of Stock Option.**

(a) **In General.** If a Stock Option is exercisable prior to the time it is vested, the Common Stock obtained on the exercise of the Stock Option shall be Restricted Stock which is subject to the applicable provisions of the Plan and the Award Agreement. If the Committee imposes conditions upon exercise, then subsequent to the Date of Grant, the Committee may, in its sole discretion, accelerate the date on which all or any portion of the Stock Option may be exercised. No Stock Option may be exercised for a fractional share of Common Stock. The granting of a Stock Option shall impose no obligation upon the Participant to exercise that Stock Option.

(b) **Notice and Payment.** Subject to such administrative regulations as the Committee may from time to time adopt, a Stock Option may be exercised by the delivery of written notice to the Committee setting forth the number of shares of Common Stock with respect to which the Award is to be exercised (the "***Exercise Notice***") and the date of exercise thereof (the "***Exercise Date***"), and with respect to any Stock Option shall be the date that the Participant has delivered both the Exercise Notice and consideration to the Company with a value equal to the total Option Price of the shares to be purchased (plus any employment tax withholding or other tax payment due with respect to such Award), payable as provided in the Award Agreement, which may provide for payment in any one or more of the following ways: (i) in cash; (ii) by wire transfer or check acceptable to the Company; (iii) if permitted by the Committee, having the Company withhold shares of Common Stock that would otherwise be issued on exercise of the Stock Option that have an aggregate Fair Market Value equal to the aggregate Option Price of the shares being purchased under the Stock Option; (iv) if permitted by the Committee, tendering (either actually or, so long as the shares are registered under Section 12(b) or 12(g) of the Exchange Act, by attestation) shares of Common Stock owned by the Participant that have an aggregate Fair Market Value equal to the aggregate Option Price of the shares being purchased under the Stock Option; (v) unless the Committee determines otherwise and so long as the shares are registered under Section 12(b) or 12(g) of the Exchange Act, and to the extent permitted by law, by delivery of a properly executed Exercise Notice, together with irrevocable instructions to a brokerage firm designated or approved by the Company to promptly deliver to the Company the amount of proceeds to pay the aggregate Option Price; or (vi) such other consideration as the Committee may permit, in its sole discretion. In the event that shares of Restricted Stock are tendered as consideration for the exercise of a Stock Option, a number of shares of Common Stock issued upon the exercise of the Stock Option equal to the number of shares of Restricted Stock used as consideration therefor shall be subject to the same restrictions and provisions as the Restricted Stock so tendered. If the Participant fails to deliver the consideration described in this Section 8.3(b) within three (3) business days of the date of the Exercise Notice, then the Exercise Notice shall be null and void and the Company will have no obligation to deliver any shares of Common Stock to the Participant in connection with such Exercise Notice.

(c) **Issuance of Certificate.** Except as otherwise provided in Section 6.4 hereof (with respect to shares of Restricted Stock) or in the applicable Award Agreement, upon payment of all amounts due from the Participant, the Company shall cause the Common Stock then being purchased to be registered in the Participant's name (or the person exercising the Participant's Stock Option in the event of his or her death), but shall not issue certificates for the Common Stock unless the Participant or such other person requests delivery of the certificates for the Common Stock, in writing in accordance with the procedures established

by the Committee. The Company shall deliver certificates to the Participant (or the person exercising the Participant's Stock Option in the event of his or her death) as soon as administratively practicable following the Company's receipt of a written request from the Participant or such other person for delivery of the certificates. Notwithstanding the forgoing, if the Participant has exercised an Incentive Stock Option, the Company may at its option retain physical possession of the certificate evidencing the shares acquired upon exercise until the expiration of the holding periods described in Section 422(a)(1) of the Code. Any obligation of the Company to deliver shares of Common Stock shall, however, be subject to the condition that, if at any time the Committee shall determine in its discretion that the listing, registration, or qualification of the Stock Option or the Common Stock upon any securities exchange or inter-dealer quotation system or under any state or federal law, or the consent or approval of any governmental regulatory body, is necessary as a condition of, or in connection with, the Stock Option or the issuance or purchase of shares of Common Stock thereunder, the Stock Option may not be exercised in whole or in part unless such listing, registration, qualification, consent, or approval shall have been effected or obtained free of any conditions not reasonably acceptable to the Committee.

(d) **Failure to Pay.** Except as may otherwise be provided in an Award Agreement, if the Participant fails to pay for any of the Common Stock specified in such notice or fails to accept delivery thereof, that portion of the Participant's Stock Option and right to purchase such Common Stock may be forfeited by the Participant.

8.4 **SARs.** Subject to the conditions of this Section 8.4 and such administrative regulations as the Committee may from time to time adopt, a SAR may be exercised by the delivery of an Exercise Notice to the Committee setting forth the number of shares of Common Stock with respect to which the SAR is to be exercised and the Exercise Date thereof. Subject to the terms of the Award Agreement and only if permissible under Section 409A of the Code and the regulations or other guidance issued thereunder (or, if not so permissible, at such time as permitted by Section 409A of the Code and the regulations or other guidance issued thereunder), the Participant shall receive from the Company in exchange therefor in the discretion of the Committee, and subject to the terms of the Award Agreement:

(a) cash in an amount equal to the excess (if any) of the Fair Market Value (as of the Exercise Date, or if provided in the Award Agreement, conversion, of the SAR) per share of Common Stock over the SAR Price per share specified in such SAR, multiplied by the total number of shares of Common Stock of the SAR being surrendered;

(b) that number of shares of Common Stock having an aggregate Fair Market Value (as of the Exercise Date, or if provided in the Award Agreement, conversion, of the SAR) equal to the amount of cash otherwise payable to the Participant, with a cash settlement to be made for any fractional share interests; or

(c) the Company may settle such obligation in part with shares of Common Stock and in part with cash.

The distribution of any cash or Common Stock pursuant to the foregoing sentence shall be made at such time as set forth in the Award Agreement.

8.5 **Disqualifying Disposition of Incentive Stock Option.** If shares of Common Stock acquired upon exercise of an Incentive Stock Option are disposed of by a Participant prior to the expiration of either two (2) years from the Date of Grant of such Stock Option or one (1) year from the transfer of shares of Common Stock to the Participant pursuant to the exercise of such Stock Option, or in any other disqualifying disposition within the meaning of Section 422 of the Code, such Participant shall notify the Company in writing of the date and terms of such disposition. A disqualifying disposition by a Participant shall not affect the status of any other Stock Option granted under the Plan as an Incentive Stock Option within the meaning of Section 422 of the Code.

ARTICLE 9
AMENDMENT OR DISCONTINUANCE

Subject to the limitations set forth in this Article 9, the Board may at any time and from time to time, without the consent of the Participants, alter, amend, revise, suspend, or discontinue the Plan in whole or in part; provided, however, that no amendment for which stockholder approval is required either (i) by any securities exchange or inter-dealer quotation system on which the Common Stock is listed or traded or (ii) in order for the Plan and Incentives awarded under the Plan to continue to comply with Sections 421 and 422 of the Code, including any successors to such Sections, or other Applicable Law, shall be effective unless such amendment shall be approved by the requisite vote of the stockholders of the Company entitled to vote thereon. Any such amendment shall, to the extent deemed necessary or advisable by the Committee, be applicable to any outstanding Incentives theretofore granted under the Plan, notwithstanding any contrary provisions contained in any Award Agreement. In the event of any such amendment to the Plan, the holder of any Incentive outstanding under the Plan shall, upon request of the Committee and as a condition to the exercisability thereof, execute a conforming amendment in the form prescribed by the Committee to any Award Agreement relating thereto. Notwithstanding anything contained in this Plan to the contrary, unless required by law, no action contemplated or permitted by this Article 9 shall adversely affect any rights of Participants or obligations of the Company to Participants with respect to any Incentive theretofore granted under the Plan without the consent of the affected Participant.

ARTICLE 10
TERM

The Plan shall be effective from the Effective Date. Unless sooner terminated by action of the Board, the Plan will terminate on the tenth anniversary of the Effective Date, but Incentives granted before that date will continue to be effective in accordance with their terms and conditions.

ARTICLE 11
CAPITAL ADJUSTMENTS

In the event that any dividend or other distribution (whether in the form of cash, Common Stock, other securities, or other property), recapitalization, stock split, reverse stock split, rights offering, reorganization, merger, consolidation, split-up, spin-off, split-off, combination, subdivision, repurchase, or exchange of Common Stock or other securities of the Company, issuance of warrants or other rights to purchase Common Stock or other securities of the Company, or other similar corporate transaction or event affects the fair value of an Award, then the Committee shall adjust any or all of the following so that the fair value of the Award immediately after the transaction or event is equal to the fair value of the Award immediately prior to the transaction or event (i) the number of shares and type of Common Stock (or the securities or property) which thereafter may be made the subject of Awards, (ii) the number of shares and type of Common Stock (or other securities or property) subject to outstanding Awards, (iii) the Option Price of each outstanding Award, (iv) the amount, if any, the Company pays for forfeited shares of Common Stock in accordance with Section 6.4, and (v) the number of or SAR Price of shares of Common Stock then subject to outstanding SARs previously granted and unexercised under the Plan, to the end that the same proportion of the Company's issued and outstanding shares of Common Stock in each instance shall remain subject to exercise at the same aggregate SAR Price; provided however, that the number of shares of Common Stock (or other securities or property) subject to any Award shall always be a whole number. Notwithstanding the foregoing, no such adjustment shall be made or authorized to the extent that such adjustment would cause the Plan or any Stock Option to violate Section 422 of the Code or Section 409A of the Code. Such adjustments shall be made in accordance with the rules of any securities exchange, stock market, or stock quotation system to which the Company is subject.

Upon the occurrence of any such adjustment, the Company shall provide notice to each affected Participant of its computation of such adjustment which shall be conclusive and shall be binding upon each such Participant.

ARTICLE 12
RECAPITALIZATION, MERGER AND CONSOLIDATION

12.1 **No Effect on Company's Authority.** The existence of this Plan and Incentives granted hereunder shall not affect in any way the right or power of the Company or its stockholders to make or authorize any or all adjustments, recapitalizations, reorganizations, or other changes in the Company's capital structure and its business, or any Change in Control, or any merger or consolidation of the Company, or any issuance of bonds, debentures, preferred or preference stocks ranking prior to or otherwise affecting the Common Stock or the rights thereof (or any rights, options, or warrants to purchase same), or the dissolution or liquidation of the Company, or any sale or transfer of all or any part of its assets or business, or any other corporate act or proceeding, whether of a similar character or otherwise.

12.2 **Conversion of Incentives Where Company Survives.** Subject to any required action by the stockholders and except as otherwise provided by Section 12.4 hereof or as may be required to comply with Section 409A of the Code and the regulations or other guidance issued thereunder, if the Company shall be the surviving or resulting corporation in any merger, consolidation or share exchange, any Incentive granted hereunder shall pertain to and apply to the securities or rights (including cash, property, or assets) to which a holder of the number of shares of Common Stock subject to the Incentive would have been entitled.

12.3 **Exchange of Incentives Where Company Does Not Survive.** Except as otherwise provided by Section 12.4 hereof or as may be required to comply with Section 409A of the Code and the regulations or other guidance issued thereunder, in the event of any merger, consolidation or share exchange pursuant to which the Company is not the Successor Company, there shall be substituted for each share of Common Stock subject to the unexercised portions of outstanding Incentives, that number of shares of each class of stock or other securities or that amount of cash, property, or assets of the surviving, resulting or consolidated company which were distributed or distributable to the stockholders of the Company in respect to each share of Common Stock held by them, such outstanding Incentives to be thereafter exercisable for such stock, securities, cash, or property in accordance with their terms.

12.4 **Cancellation of Awards.** Notwithstanding the provisions of Sections 12.2 and 12.3 hereof, and except as may be required to comply with Section 409A of the Code and the regulations or other guidance issued thereunder, in the event a Successor Company does not agree to convert, assume, substitute for or replace the Awards, then all such Awards granted hereunder may be canceled by the Company, in its sole discretion, as of the effective date of any Change in Control, any issuance of bonds, debentures, preferred or preference stocks ranking prior to or otherwise affecting the Common Stock or the rights thereof (or any rights, options, or warrants to purchase same), or of any dissolution or liquidation of the Company, by either:

(a) giving notice to each holder thereof or his personal representative of its intention to cancel those Awards for which the issuance of shares of Common Stock involved payment by the Participant for such shares, and permitting the purchase during the thirty (30) day period next preceding such effective date of any or all of the shares of Common Stock subject to such outstanding Awards , including in the Board's discretion some or all of the shares as to which such Awards would not otherwise be vested and exercisable; or

(b) in the case of Awards that are either (i) settled only in shares of Common Stock, or (ii) at the election of the Participant, settled in shares of Common Stock, paying the holder thereof an amount equal to a reasonable estimate of the difference between the net amount per share payable in such transaction or as a result of such transaction, and the price per share of such Award to be paid by the Participant (hereinafter the "***Spread***"), multiplied by the number of shares subject to the Award. In cases where the shares constitute, or would after exercise, constitute Restricted Stock, the Company, in its discretion, may include some or all of those shares in the calculation of the amount payable hereunder. In estimating the Spread, appropriate adjustments to give effect to the existence of the Awards shall be made, such as deeming the Awards to have been exercised, with the Company receiving the exercise price payable thereunder, and treating the shares receivable upon exercise of the Awards as being outstanding in determining the net amount per share. In cases where the proposed transaction consists of the acquisition of assets of the Company, the net amount per share

shall be calculated on the basis of the net amount receivable with respect to shares of Common Stock upon a distribution and liquidation by the Company after giving effect to expenses and charges, including but not limited to taxes, payable by the Company before such liquidation could be completed.

(c) For the avoidance of doubt, nothing in this Section 12.4 requires all outstanding Awards to be treated similarly.

An Award that by its terms would be fully vested or exercisable upon a Change in Control will be considered vested or exercisable for purposes of Section 12.4(a) hereof.

ARTICLE 13
LIQUIDATION OR DISSOLUTION

Subject to Section 12.4 hereof, in case the Company shall, at any time while any Incentive under this Plan shall be in force and remain unexpired, (i) sell all or substantially all of its property, or (ii) dissolve, liquidate, or wind up its affairs, then each Participant shall be entitled to receive, in lieu of each share of Common Stock of the Company which such Participant would have been entitled to receive under the Incentive, the same kind and amount of any securities or assets as may be issuable, distributable, or payable upon any such sale, dissolution, liquidation, or winding up with respect to each share of Common Stock of the Company. If the Company shall, at any time prior to the expiration of any Incentive, make any partial distribution of its assets, in the nature of a partial liquidation, whether payable in cash or in kind (but excluding the distribution of a cash dividend payable out of earned surplus and designated as such) and an adjustment is determined by the Committee to be appropriate to prevent the dilution of the benefits or potential benefits intended to be made available under the Plan, then the Committee shall, in such manner as it may deem equitable, make such adjustment in accordance with the provisions of Article 11 hereof.

ARTICLE 14
INCENTIVES IN SUBSTITUTION FOR
INCENTIVES GRANTED BY OTHER ENTITIES

Incentives may be granted under the Plan from time to time in substitution for similar instruments held by employees, independent contractors or directors of a corporation, partnership, or limited liability company who become or are about to become Employees, Contractors or Outside Directors of the Company or any Related Company as a result of a merger or consolidation of the employing corporation with the Company, the acquisition by the Company of equity of the employing entity, or any other similar transaction pursuant to which the Company becomes the successor employer. The terms and conditions of the substitute Incentives so granted may vary from the terms and conditions set forth in this Plan to such extent as the Committee at the time of grant may deem appropriate to conform, in whole or in part, to the provisions of the incentives in substitution for which they are granted.

ARTICLE 15
MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

15.1 **Investment Intent.** The Company may require that there be presented to and filed with it by any Participant under the Plan, such evidence as it may deem necessary to establish that the Incentives granted or the shares of Common Stock to be purchased or transferred are being acquired for investment and not with a view to their distribution.

15.2 **No Right to Continued Employment.** Neither the Plan nor any Incentive granted under the Plan shall confer upon any Participant any right with respect to continuance of employment by the Company or any Related Company.

15.3 **Indemnification of Board and Committee.** No member of the Board or the Committee, nor any officer or Employee of the Company acting on behalf of the Board or the Committee, shall be personally liable for any action, determination, or interpretation taken or made in good faith with respect to the Plan, and all members of the Board and the Committee, each officer of the Company, and each Employee of the Company acting on behalf of the Board or the Committee shall, to the extent permitted by law, be fully indemnified and protected by the Company in respect of any such action, determination, or interpretation to the fullest extent provided by law. Except to the extent required by any unwaiveable requirement under applicable law, no member of the Board or the Committee (and no Related Company of the Company) shall have any duties or liabilities, including without limitation any fiduciary duties, to any Participant (or any Person claiming by and through any Participant) as a result of this Plan, any Award Agreement or any Claim arising hereunder and, to the fullest extent permitted under applicable law, each Participant (as consideration for receiving and accepting an Award Agreement) irrevocably waives and releases any right or opportunity such Participant might have to assert (or participate or cooperate in) any Claim against any member of the Board or the Committee and any Related Company of the Company arising out of this Plan.

15.4 **Effect of the Plan.** Neither the adoption of this Plan nor any action of the Board or the Committee shall be deemed to give any person any right to be granted an Award or any other rights except as may be evidenced by an Award Agreement, or any amendment thereto, duly authorized by the Committee and executed on behalf of the Company, and then only to the extent and upon the terms and conditions expressly set forth therein.

15.5 **Compliance with Other Laws and Regulations.** Notwithstanding anything contained herein to the contrary, the Company shall not be required to sell or issue shares of Common Stock under any Incentive if the issuance thereof would constitute a violation by the Participant or the Company of any provisions of any law or regulation of any governmental authority or any national securities exchange or inter-dealer quotation system or other forum in which shares of Common Stock are quoted or traded (including, without limitation, Section 16 of the Exchange Act); and, as a condition of any sale or issuance of shares of Common Stock under an Incentive, the Committee may require such agreements or undertakings, if any, as the Committee may deem necessary or advisable to assure compliance with any such law or regulation. The Plan, the grant and exercise of Incentives hereunder, and the obligation of the Company to sell and deliver shares of Common Stock, shall be subject to all applicable federal and state laws, rules and regulations and to such approvals by any government or regulatory agency as may be required.

15.6 **Foreign Participation.** To assure the viability of Awards granted to Participants employed in foreign countries, the Committee may provide for such special terms as it may consider necessary or appropriate to accommodate differences in local law, tax policy or custom. Moreover, the Committee may approve such supplements to, or amendments, restatements or alternative versions of, this Plan as it determines is necessary or appropriate for such purposes. Any such amendment, restatement or alternative versions that the Committee approves for purposes of using this Plan in a foreign country will not affect the terms of this Plan for any other country.

15.7 **Tax Requirements.** The Company or, if applicable, any Related Company (for purposes of this Section 15.7, the term "***Company***" shall be deemed to include any applicable Related Company), shall have the right to deduct from all amounts paid in cash or other form in connection with the Plan, any federal, state, local, or other taxes required by law to be withheld in connection with an Award granted under this Plan. The Company may, in its sole discretion, also require the Participant receiving shares of Common Stock issued under the Plan to pay the Company the amount of any taxes that the Company is required to withhold in connection with the Participant's income arising with respect to the Award. Such payments shall be required to be made when requested by the Company and may be required to be made prior to the delivery of any certificate representing shares of Common Stock. Such payment may be made by (i) paying cash to the Company; (ii) having the Company withhold an amount from any cash amounts otherwise due or to become due from the Company to the Participant; (iii) having the Company withhold a number of shares of Common Stock that would otherwise be issued to the Participant having a Fair Market Value equal to the tax withholding obligations; (iv) surrendering a number of shares of Common Stock the Participant already owns having a Fair Market Value equal to the tax withholding obligations; or (v) any combination of (i), (ii), (iii) or (iv). The value of the shares so withheld or tendered may not exceed the Company's minimum required tax withholding rate. The Committee may in the Award Agreement impose any additional tax requirements or provisions that the Committee deems necessary or desirable.

15.8 **Assignability.** Incentive Stock Options may not be transferred, assigned, pledged, hypothecated or otherwise conveyed or encumbered other than by will or the laws of descent and distribution and may be exercised during the lifetime of the Participant only by the Participant or the Participant's legally authorized representative, and each Award Agreement in respect of an Incentive Stock Option shall so provide. The designation by a Participant of a beneficiary will not constitute a transfer of the Stock Option. The Committee may waive or modify any limitation contained in the preceding sentences of this Section 15.8 that is not required for compliance with Section 422 of the Code.

Except as otherwise provided herein, Awards may not be transferred, assigned, pledged, hypothecated or otherwise conveyed or encumbered other than by will or the laws of descent and distribution. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Committee may, in its discretion, authorize all or a portion of a Nonqualified Stock Option or SAR to be granted to a Participant on terms which permit transfer by such Participant to (i) the spouse (or former spouse), children or grandchildren of the Participant ("***Immediate Family Members***"), (ii) a trust or trusts for the exclusive benefit of such Immediate Family Members, (iii) a partnership in which the only partners are (1) such Immediate Family Members and/or (2) entities which are controlled by the Participant and/or Immediate Family Members, (iv) an entity exempt from federal income tax pursuant to Section 501(c)(3) of the Code or any successor provision, or (v) a split interest trust or pooled income fund described in Section 2522(c)(2) of the Code or any successor provision, provided that (x) there shall be no consideration for any such transfer, (y) the Award Agreement pursuant to which such Nonqualified Stock Option or SAR is granted must be approved by the Committee and must expressly provide for transferability in a manner consistent with this Section, and (z) subsequent transfers of transferred Nonqualified Stock Options or SARs shall be prohibited except those by will or the laws of descent and distribution.

Following any transfer, any such Nonqualified Stock Option and SAR shall continue to be subject to the same terms and conditions as were applicable immediately prior to transfer, provided that for purposes of Articles 8, 9, 11, 13 and 15 hereof the term "***Participant***" shall be deemed to include the transferee. The events of Termination of Service shall continue to be applied with respect to the original Participant, following which the Nonqualified Stock Options and SARs shall be exercisable or convertible by the transferee only to the extent and for the periods specified in the Award Agreement. The Committee and the Company shall have no obligation to inform any transferee of a Nonqualified Stock Option or SAR of any expiration, termination, lapse or acceleration of such Stock Option or SAR. The Company shall have no obligation to register with any federal or state securities commission or agency any Common Stock issuable or issued under a Nonqualified Stock Option or SAR that has been transferred by a Participant under this Section 15.8.

15.9 **Use of Proceeds.** Proceeds from the sale of shares of Common Stock pursuant to Incentives granted under this Plan shall constitute general funds of the Company.

15.10 **Legend.** Each certificate representing shares of Restricted Stock issued to a Participant shall bear the following legend, or a similar legend deemed by the Company to constitute an appropriate notice of the provisions hereof (any such certificate not having such legend shall be surrendered upon demand by the Company and so endorsed):

On the face of the certificate:

> "TRANSFER OF THIS STOCK IS RESTRICTED IN ACCORDANCE WITH CONDITIONS PRINTED ON THE REVERSE OF THIS CERTIFICATE."

On the reverse:

> "THE SHARES OF STOCK EVIDENCED BY THIS CERTIFICATE ARE SUBJECT TO AND TRANSFERABLE ONLY IN ACCORDANCE WITH THAT CERTAIN BLUCORA, INC. 2018 LONG-TERM INCENTIVE PLAN, A COPY OF WHICH IS ON FILE AT THE PRINCIPAL OFFICE OF THE COMPANY IN IRVING, TEXAS. NO TRANSFER OR PLEDGE OF THE SHARES EVIDENCED HEREBY MAY BE MADE EXCEPT IN

> ACCORDANCE WITH AND SUBJECT TO THE PROVISIONS OF SAID PLAN. BY ACCEPTANCE OF THIS CERTIFICATE, ANY HOLDER, TRANSFEREE OR PLEDGEE HEREOF AGREES TO BE BOUND BY ALL OF THE PROVISIONS OF SAID PLAN."

The following legend shall be inserted on a certificate evidencing Common Stock issued under the Plan if the shares were not issued in a transaction registered under the applicable federal and state securities laws:

> "SHARES OF STOCK REPRESENTED BY THIS CERTIFICATE HAVE BEEN ACQUIRED BY THE HOLDER FOR INVESTMENT AND NOT FOR RESALE, TRANSFER OR DISTRIBUTION, HAVE BEEN ISSUED PURSUANT TO EXEMPTIONS FROM THE REGISTRATION REQUIREMENTS OF APPLICABLE STATE AND FEDERAL SECURITIES LAWS, AND MAY NOT BE OFFERED FOR SALE, SOLD OR TRANSFERRED OTHER THAN PURSUANT TO EFFECTIVE REGISTRATION UNDER SUCH LAWS, OR IN TRANSACTIONS OTHERWISE IN COMPLIANCE WITH SUCH LAWS, AND UPON EVIDENCE SATISFACTORY TO THE COMPANY OF COMPLIANCE WITH SUCH LAWS, AS TO WHICH THE COMPANY MAY RELY UPON AN OPINION OF COUNSEL SATISFACTORY TO THE COMPANY."

15.11 **Governing Law.** The Plan shall be governed by, construed, and enforced in accordance with the laws of the State of Delaware (excluding any conflict of laws, rule or principle of Delaware law that might refer the governance, construction, or interpretation of this Plan to the laws of another state). A Participant's sole remedy for any Claim shall be against the Company, and no Participant shall have any claim or right of any nature against any Related Company of the Company or any stockholder or existing or former director, officer or Employee of the Company or any Related Company of the Company. The individuals and entities described above in this Section 15.11 (other than the Company) shall be third-party beneficiaries of this Plan for purposes of enforcing the terms of this Section 15.11.

A copy of this Plan shall be kept on file in the principal office of the Company in Irving, Texas.

****

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Company has caused this instrument to be executed as of April 6, 2018, by its President and Chief Executive Officer pursuant to prior action taken by the Board.

BLUCORA, INC.

By: /s/ John S. Clendening
Name: John S. Clendening
Title: President and Chief Executive Officer

Proposed Certificate of Amendment

to the Restated Certificate of Incorporation of Blucora, Inc.

The text of the proposed amendment is marked to reflect the proposed changes.

The text of the proposed amendment is marked to reflect the proposed changes. Additions to the proposed amendment are indicated by bolded underlined text and deletions are indicated by strike-outs.

Blucora, Inc., a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of Delaware (the "***Corporation***"), does hereby certify that:

1. Article 5 of the Restated Certificate of Incorporation of the Corporation is amended to read in its entirety as follows:

> The Board shall be composed of not less than ~~5~~ **6** nor more than ~~9~~ **15** Directors, the specific number to be set by resolution of the Board, provided that the Board may be less than ~~5~~ **6** until vacancies are filled. No decrease in the number of Directors shall have the effect of shortening the term of any incumbent Director.
>
> Commencing with the 2018 annual election of Directors, at each annual election of Directors, the successors to the class of Directors whose term expires at that time shall be elected to hold office for a term of one year. Commencing with the 2020 annual meeting of stockholders, the division of the Board of Directors into three classes shall terminate and all Directors shall be of one class elected annually. Notwithstanding any of the foregoing provisions of this Article 5, Directors shall serve until their successors are elected and qualified or until their earlier death, resignation or removal from office or until there is a decrease in the number of Directors. Directors need not be stockholders of the corporation or residents of the State of Delaware and need not meet any other qualifications.

2. The foregoing amendment to the Restated Certificate of Incorporation of the Corporation was duly adopted in accordance with the provisions of Section 242 of the Delaware General Corporation Law.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Corporation has caused this Certificate of Amendment to be executed by its duly authorized officer this ___ day of _________, 2018.

UNITED STATES
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION
Washington, D.C. 20549

FORM 10-K

(Mark One)

☒ **ANNUAL REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**

For the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017

OR

☐ **TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**

For the transition period from to

Commission File Number 000-25131

BLUCORA, INC.
(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

Delaware	**91-1718107**
(State or other jurisdiction of incorporation or organization)	**(IRS Employer Identification No.)**

6333 State Hwy 161, 6th Floor, Irving, Texas 75038
(Address of principal executive offices) (Zip code)

Registrant's telephone number, including area code:
(972) 870-6000

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:

Title of each class	Name of each exchange on which registered
Common Stock, par value $0.0001 per share	**NASDAQ Global Select Market**

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Act: None
(Title of Class)

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a well-known seasoned issuer, as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act. Yes ☒ No ☐

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is not required to file reports pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Act. Yes ☐ No ☒

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. Yes ☒ No ☐

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has submitted electronically and posted on its corporate Web site, if any, every Interactive Data File required to be submitted and posted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to submit and post such files). Yes ☒ No ☐

Indicate by check mark if disclosure of delinquent filers pursuant to Item 405 of Regulation S-K (§229.405 of this chapter) is not contained herein, and will not be contained, to the best of the registrant's knowledge, in definitive proxy or information statements incorporated by reference in Part III of this Form 10-K or any amendment to this Form 10-K. ☒

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, a smaller reporting company, or emerging growth company. See definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer," "smaller reporting company," and "emerging growth company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer	☒	Accelerated filer	☐
Non-accelerated filer	☐ (Do not check if a smaller reporting company)	Smaller reporting company	☐
		Emerging growth company	☐

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Act). Yes ☐ No ☒

The aggregate market value of the Common Stock held by non-affiliates of the registrant outstanding as of June 30, 2017, based upon the closing price of Common Stock on June 30, 2017 as reported on the NASDAQ Global Select Market, was $937.8 million. Common Stock held by each officer and director (or his or her affiliate) has been excluded because such persons may be deemed to be affiliates. This determination of affiliate status is not necessarily a conclusive determination for other purposes.

As of February 21, 2018, 46,710,439 shares of the registrant's Common Stock were outstanding.

DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE

Part III incorporates certain information by reference from the definitive proxy statement to be filed by the registrant in connection with the 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders (the ***"Proxy Statement"***).

TABLE OF CONTENTS

		Page
Part I		
Item 1.	Business	4
Item 1A.	Risk Factors	11
Item 1B.	Unresolved Staff Comments	27
Item 2.	Properties	27
Item 3.	Legal Proceedings	27
Item 4.	Mine Safety Disclosures	27
Part II		
Item 5.	Market for Registrant's Common Equity, Related Stockholder Matters and Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities	28
Item 6.	Selected Financial Data	29
Item 7.	Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations	30
Item 7A.	Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk	55
Item 8.	Financial Statements and Supplementary Data	56
Item 9.	Changes in and Disagreements with Accountants on Accounting and Financial Disclosure	91
Item 9A.	Controls and Procedures	91
Item 9B.	Other Information	92
Part III		
Item 10.	Directors, Executive Officers and Corporate Governance	93
Item 11.	Executive Compensation	93
Item 12.	Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management and Related Stockholder Matters	93
Item 13.	Certain Relationships and Related Transactions, and Director Independence	93
Item 14.	Principal Accounting Fees and Services	93
Part IV		
Item 15.	Exhibits, Financial Statement Schedules	94

Signatures

CAUTIONARY STATEMENT REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

This report contains forward-looking statements that involve risks and uncertainties. The statements in this report that are not purely historical are forward-looking statements within the meaning of Section 21E of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended. Words such as "anticipate," "believe," "plan," "expect," "future," "intend," "may," "will," "should," "estimate," "predict," "potential," "continue," and similar expressions identify forward-looking statements, but the absence of these words does not mean that the statement is not forward-looking. These forward-looking statements include, but are not limited to, statements regarding:

- *our ability to effectively implement our future business plans and growth strategy, including our ability to achieve the anticipated benefits of our Strategic Transformation (as defined below);*
- *our ability to effectively compete within our industry;*
- *our ability to attract and retain customers, as well as our ability to provide strong customer service;*
- *our future capital requirements and the availability of financing, if necessary;*
- *our ability to meet our current and future debt service obligations, including our ability to maintain compliance with our debt covenants;*
- *our ability to generate strong investment performance for our customers and the impact of the financial markets on our customers' portfolios;*
- *political and economic conditions and events that directly or indirectly impact the wealth management and tax preparation industries;*
- *our ability to attract and retain productive financial advisors;*
- *our ability to respond to rapid technological changes, including our ability successfully release new products and services or improve upon existing products and services;*
- *our expectations concerning the revenues we generate from fees associated with the financial products that we distribute;*
- *our ability to comply with regulations applicable to the wealth management and tax preparation industries, including increased costs associated with new or changing regulations;*
- *our ability to successfully transition our wealth management business to a new clearing platform and our expectations concerning the benefits that may be derived therefrom;*
- *risks associated with the use and implementation of information technology and the effect of security breaches, computer viruses and computer hacking attacks;*
- *our ability to comply with laws and regulations regarding privacy and protection of user data;*
- *our ability to maintain our relationships with third party partners, providers, suppliers, vendors, distributors, contractors, financial institutions and licensing partners;*
- *our beliefs and expectations regarding the seasonality of our business;*
- *risks associated with litigation;*
- *our ability to attract and retain qualified employees;*
- *our assessments and estimates that determine our effective tax rate;*
- *the impact of new or changing tax legislation on our business and our ability to attract and retain customers;*
- *our ability to develop, establish and maintain strong brands;*
- *our ability to protect our intellectual property and the impact of any claim that we have infringed on the intellectual property rights of others; and*
- *our ability to effectively integrate companies or assets that we acquire.*

Forward-looking statements are subject to known and unknown risks, uncertainties, and other factors that may cause our results, levels of activity, performance, achievements, and prospects to be materially different from those expressed or implied by such forward-looking statements. These risks, uncertainties, and other factors include, among others, those identified under Item 1A, "Risk Factors," and elsewhere in this report. You should not rely on forward-looking statements, which speak only as of the date of this Annual Report on Form 10-K. We do not undertake any obligation to update any forward-looking statement to reflect new information, events, or circumstances after the date of this Annual Report on Form 10-K or to reflect the occurrence of unanticipated events, except as required by law.

PART I

ITEM 1. Business

General Overview

Blucora, Inc. (referred to throughout this report as ***"Blucora,"*** the ***"Company", "we," "us,"*** or ***"our"***) is a Delaware corporation that was founded in 1996, and, through organic growth and strategic acquisitions, we have become a leading provider of technology-enabled financial solutions to consumers, small business owners, and tax professionals. Our products and services in wealth management and tax preparation that we offer through HDV Holdings, Inc. and its subsidiaries (***"HD Vest"***) and TaxAct, Inc. and its subsidiary (***"TaxAct"***), respectively, help consumers to manage their financial lives.

HD Vest provides financial advisors, who affiliate with HD Vest's registered broker-dealer, investment adviser and/or insurance subsidiaries as independent contractors, an integrated, open platform that includes a broad variety of products offered through our brokerage, investment advisory, and insurance services to assist in making each financial advisor a financial service center for his/her clients. We regularly review the commissions and fees we charge for these products and services in light of the evolving regulatory and competitive environment and changes in client preferences and needs. We do not offer any proprietary products. As of December 31, 2017, approximately 4,000 advisors with branch offices in all 50 states utilized our HD Vest platform and supported approximately $44.0 billion of assets for almost 350,000 clients. HD Vest generates revenue primarily through securities and insurance commissions, quarterly investment advisory fees based on assets under management, and other fees.

TaxAct provides affordable digital do-it-yourself (***"DDIY"***) tax preparation solutions for consumers and small business owners, and preparation software for tax professionals. During the year ended December 31, 2017, TaxAct powered approximately 4,500,000 consumer e-files and another 1,800,000 e-files through the 21,000 tax professionals who used TaxAct to prepare and file their taxes or those of their clients. TaxAct generates revenue primarily through its online service at www.TaxAct.com. The Company and its subsidiaries file income tax returns in the U.S. federal jurisdiction, various state jurisdictions, and Canada.

Our common stock is listed on the NASDAQ Global Select Market under the symbol "BCOR."

Our History

Blucora began in 1996 under the name InfoSpace, Inc. (***"InfoSpace"***). Over the next two decades, InfoSpace operated a number of digital businesses in search, directory, online commerce, media, and mobile infrastructure markets, with operations since 2008 focusing on internet search services and content (our ***"Search and Content"*** business).

In January 2012, InfoSpace acquired TaxAct, a leading provider of digital tax preparation solutions for consumers, small business owners, and tax professionals (our ***"Tax Preparation"*** business). In connection with this acquisition, InfoSpace changed its name to Blucora, Inc. in June 2012.

In August 2013, Blucora acquired Monoprice, Inc. (***"Monoprice"***), an e-commerce company that sold self-branded electronics and accessories to both consumers and businesses (our ***"E-Commerce"*** business).

In July 2015, Blucora acquired SimpleTax Software Inc. (***"SimpleTax"***), a provider of online tax preparation services for individuals in Canada.

For further detail on these acquisitions, see "Note 3: Business Combinations" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report.

On October 14, 2015, we announced our plans to continue to operate our TaxAct subsidiary and to acquire HD Vest in order to focus on the technology-enabled financial solutions market (the ***"Strategic Transformation"***). The acquisition of HD Vest closed on December 31, 2015. Through its registered broker-dealer, registered investment adviser, and insurance agency subsidiaries, HD Vest operates the largest U.S. tax-professional-oriented independent broker-dealer, providing wealth management solutions to financial advisors and their clients nationwide (our ***"Wealth Management"*** business). HDV Holdings, Inc. is the parent company of the Wealth Management business and owns all outstanding shares of HD Vest, Inc., which serves as a holding company for our various financial services subsidiaries. Those subsidiaries include HD Vest Investment Securities, Inc. (a registered broker-dealer), HD Vest Advisory Services, Inc. (a registered investment adviser), and HD Vest Insurance Agency, LLC (three insurance agencies domiciled in Texas, Massachusetts, and Montana). The Tax Preparation business consists of the operations of TaxAct, Inc. and its subsidiary (***"TaxAct"***) and provides digital tax

preparation solutions for consumers, small business owners, and tax professionals through its website www.TaxAct.com (collectively referred to as the ***"Tax Preparation business"*** or the ***"Tax Preparation segment"***).

As part of the October 14, 2015 announcement, we also stated our plans to divest the Search and Content and E-Commerce businesses. We completed both divestitures in 2016. Specifically, on August 9, 2016, we closed the sale of the Search and Content business to OpenMail LLC (***"OpenMail"***). On November 17, 2016, we closed the sale of the E-Commerce business to YFC-Boneagle Electric Co., Ltd (***"YFC"***). The results of operations of the Search and Content and E-Commerce businesses have been classified as discontinued operations for all periods presented in this report. See "Note 4: Discontinued Operations" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report for additional information.

On October 27, 2016, as part of the Strategic Transformation and "One Company" operating model, Blucora announced plans to relocate its corporate headquarters by June 2017 from Bellevue, Washington to Irving, Texas. The actions to relocate the corporate headquarters were intended to drive efficiencies and improve operational effectiveness. See "Note 5: Restructuring" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report for additional information. The restructuring is now substantially complete and it is expected to be completed by early 2018.

We have two reportable segments: the Wealth Management segment, which is comprised of the HD Vest business, and the Tax Preparation segment, which is comprised of the TaxAct business. See "Note 2: Summary of Significant Accounting Policies" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report for additional information on the Wealth Management and Tax Preparation businesses and their revenue. See "Note 13: Segment Information" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report for information regarding revenue, operating income, and assets for our Wealth Management and Tax Preparation businesses.

Business Overview

Wealth Management Business

HD Vest was founded to help tax and accounting professionals integrate financial services into their practices. Unlike traditional independent broker-dealers and/or investment advisers whose client relationships are limited to providing investment advice, most HD Vest advisors have long-standing tax advisory relationships that anchor their wealth management businesses. We believe that tax and accounting professionals, with their existing client relationships and in-depth knowledge of their clients' financial situations, have a competitive advantage and are better positioned than competitors to provide tailored financial solutions that enable clients to meet their goals. HD Vest primarily recruits independent tax professionals with established tax practices and offers specialized training and support, which allows them to join the HD Vest platform as independent financial advisors. HD Vest has designed a learning management system for its advisors, branded VestU™, with curriculum that introduces advisors to the investment business and helps them build their practices. The comprehensive training curriculum is administered through numerous outlets, including an annual three-day national sales conference, approximately 600 specialized local training events held annually, and on-demand learning paths.

HD Vest's business model provides an open-architecture investment platform and technology tools to help financial advisors identify investment opportunities for their clients, while the long-standing tax advisory relationships provide a large client base of possible investment clients. This results in an experienced and stable network of financial advisors, who have multiple revenue-generating options to diversify their earnings sources, and have access to HD Vest's innovative Mentor program and Chapter meetings. HD Vest also has a highly experienced home office team that is focused on solutions tailored to the advisor's practice. The home office team provides marketing, practice management, insurance and annuity, wealth management, compliance, succession planning, and other support to our advisors.

Tax Preparation Business

TaxAct, a top-three provider of digital tax preparation solutions, based upon the number of e-files made in 2017, has leveraged its strong brand, comprehensive suite of tax preparation solutions, and proven online lead generation capabilities to enable the filing of more than 64 million federal consumer tax returns in the U.S. and Canada since 2000. TaxAct operates as the value player in its market, with a mission to empower people to navigate the complexities of tax preparation with ease and accuracy at a fair price.

TaxAct's offerings come with a price lock guarantee, whereby the price at the start of the tax return filing process is the price when the return is filed, rather than pricing the offering at the time that the tax return is filed. We believe this price lock guarantee ensures price transparency and differentiates TaxAct from its competitors. TaxAct also provides an accuracy guarantee, where, if an error in our software results in a smaller refund or larger tax liability than the customer would receive

using the same data with another tax preparation product, we will pay to the customer the difference in the refund or liability (up to $100,000) and refund the applicable software fees the customer paid us. In addition to these core offerings, TaxAct offers ancillary services such as refund payment transfer, audit defense, stored value cards, and retirement investment accounts through HD Vest, and a marketplace for customers to take advantage of personalized tax and financial savings opportunities through third party product providers. TaxAct has an established reputation that we believe is attractive to customers.

We had three offerings for consumers for tax year 2016, which is the basis for TaxAct's 2017 operating results:

- A "free" federal and state edition that handled simple returns;
- A "plus" offering that contained all of the basic offering features in addition to tools to maximize credits and deductions, and enhanced reporting; and
- A "premium" offering that contained all of the plus offering features in addition to tools for self-employed individuals to maximize credits and deductions.

For our offerings, state returns can be filed for free for free simple filers, or through the separately-sold state edition. We also had an offering for small business owners.

TaxAct's professional tax preparer software allows professional tax preparers to prepare and file individual and business returns for their clients. TaxAct offers flexible pricing and packaging options that help tax professionals save money by paying only for what they need. In addition, the professional tax preparer software includes valuable features that tax professionals count on to maximize their efficiency and productivity, including the option of entering data directly into tax forms, utilizing the question-and-answer interview method to enter data, or easily toggling between the two data entry methods.

Growth Strategy

Our evolving growth strategy for HD Vest and TaxAct includes participating in favorable industry trends and executing growth strategies that we believe will result in customer and advisor retention and growth beyond that of the broader markets in which we operate. Our approach is grounded on the belief that the best way to sustainably grow a business is to earn loyalty based on continuously delivering ever-greater value to target customers and clients.

Favorable Industry Trends

- *Wealth Management Industry Trends* - We believe that HD Vest is and will be the beneficiary of several positive industry trends, including growth of investable assets driven by baby boomers' retirement accounts, a continued migration to independent advisor channels, liquidity events and a continued shift toward household use of financial advisors.
- *Tax Preparation Industry Trends* - TaxAct participates in the consumer DDIY tax preparation solutions market, which is the fastest growing segment in the tax preparation industry and is bolstered by a growing millennial population that continues to adopt technology-enabled financial solutions that drive value and ease in their everyday lives, and we believe that tax simplification will drive digital consumer growth.

Executing our Growth Strategies

- *Brand Differentiation* - A key objective of our strategy is to differentiate our HD Vest and TaxAct brands. It is important that our advisors, their clients, and our customers clearly identify and connect with our brands for the quality of products and services that we offer, as well as our values. In 2017, we took initial steps in this effort, beginning in the tax season, and we expect to make additional investments over time. Additionally, we believe that the synergies between HD Vest and TaxAct will provide additional brand differentiation opportunities and strengthen our connection with our advisors, their clients, and our customers.
- *Innovate Continuously* - As emerging technology and market trends change the way people manage their financial lives, our solutions also evolve. The retention and growth of our customer and advisor base are dependent, in part, upon our ability to deliver technology-enabled financial solutions that optimize user experience and capitalize on current technology, and provide innovations that integrate proven wealth management goals-based planning and portfolio management technology with tax planning and preparation technology.

- *Offer a Comprehensive Product Suite* - The products and services offered by HD Vest and TaxAct constitute a comprehensive suite of financial solutions. We believe that continued expansion of financial solutions, whether proprietary or third party, will be a source of growth for each business. In addition, the combination of HD Vest and TaxAct provides meaningful cross-serving opportunities for both businesses, further contributing to customer and advisor retention and growth.

- *Continue to Provide Quality Customer Support, Education, and Training* - A key element of our HD Vest business model is the ongoing education and training of tax professionals, which enables them to become financial advisors and effectively manage a growing wealth management practice. HD Vest provides these tax professionals with the resources and support to build confidence and competence, enabling them to grow assets under administration. The importance of quality customer support and education also flows through to our TaxAct business, where a seasoned tax support team provides support and education to consumers and tax professionals.

Research and Development

Our wealth management and tax preparation services are delivered primarily via software and online platforms. Since the markets for software and online technology are characterized by rapid technological change, shifting customer needs and frequent new product introductions and enhancements, a continuous high level of investment is required to innovate and quickly develop new products and services as well as enhance existing offerings. Our product development efforts are becoming more important than ever as people and businesses are increasingly connected by technology and expect access to services at any place or time. Our research and development expenses were $13.3 million in 2017, $13.7 million in 2016 (which includes research and development by the HD Vest business beginning on January 1, 2016), and $4.8 million in 2015.

Seasonality

Our Tax Preparation business is highly seasonal, with a significant portion of our annual revenue for such services earned in the first four months of our fiscal year. During the third and fourth quarters, the Tax Preparation segment typically reports losses because revenue from the segment is minimal while core operating expenses continue. We anticipate that the seasonal nature of that part of the business will continue in the foreseeable future.

Competition

We face intense competition in all markets in which our businesses operate. Many of our competitors or potential competitors have substantially greater financial, technical, and marketing resources, larger customer bases, longer operating histories, more developed infrastructures, greater brand recognition, better access to vendors, and more established relationships. Our competitors may be able to adopt more aggressive pricing policies, develop and expand their product and service offerings more rapidly, adapt to new or emerging technologies more quickly, take advantage of acquisitions and other opportunities more readily, achieve greater economies of scale, and devote greater resources to the marketing and sale of their products and services than we can. For our businesses to be successful, we must be competitive in the Wealth Management and Tax Preparation markets, as described in more detail below.

Wealth Management Competition

The wealth management industry is a highly competitive global industry. We and our financial advisors compete directly with a variety of financial institutions, including traditional wirehouses, independent broker-dealers, registered investment advisers, asset managers, banks and insurance companies, and direct distributors such as 1st Global and Cetera Financial Group, as well as larger broker-dealers such as Raymond James Financial. Mergers and acquisitions have resulted in consolidation in the wealth management industry. As a result, many of our competitors may have greater financial resources, broader and deeper distribution capabilities, and a more comprehensive offering of products and services. We and our financial advisors compete directly with those companies for the provision of products and services to clients, as well as for retention and hiring of financial advisors.

We believe that our competitive position in the wealth management industry is a function of our ability to enable our advisors to offer investment guidance in the context of their clients' tax situations and more specifically to:

- offer high-quality portfolio investment options and competitive product pricing;
- offer a differentiated value proposition (in terms of brand recognition, reputation, and financial advisor payouts) that is sufficient to recruit and retain financial advisors;

- offer products that are attractive to financial advisors and their clients;
- negotiate competitive compensation arrangements with third-parties, including vendors, suppliers, and product sponsors;
- develop and react to new technology, services, and regulation in the financial services industry; and
- put in place a sufficient support and service network required to support our financial advisors and clients.

Tax Preparation Competition

Our TaxAct business operates in a very competitive marketplace. There are many competing software products and online services. Intuit's TurboTax and H&R Block's DDIY consumer products and services have a significant percentage of the software and online service market. Our TaxAct business must also compete with alternate methods of tax preparation such as storefront tax preparation services, which includes both local tax preparers and large chains such as H&R Block, Liberty Tax, and Jackson Hewitt, and it may also be subject to new market entrants who may take some of our market share. Finally, our TaxAct business faces the risk that state or federal taxing agencies will offer software or systems to provide direct access for individual filers that will reduce the need for TaxAct's software and services.

We believe that our competitive position in the market for tax preparation software and services is a function of our ability to:

- differentiate our brand versus those of competitors;
- offer competitive pricing;
- continue to offer high-quality, easy-to-use, and accessible software and services that are compelling to consumers;
- market the software and services in a cost effective way; and
- offer ancillary services that are attractive to users, including enhanced tax and wealth management services through HD Vest.

Privacy and Security of Customer Information and Transactions

Our TaxAct business is subject to various federal, state and international laws and regulations and to financial institution and healthcare provider requirements relating to the privacy and security of the personal information of customers and employees. We are also subject to laws and regulations that apply to the Internet, behavioral tracking and advertising, mobile applications and messaging, telemarketing, email activities, data hosting and retention, financial and health information, and credit reporting. Additional laws in all of these areas are likely to be passed in the future, which could result in significant limitations on or changes to the ways in which we can collect, use, host, store, or transmit the personal information and data of our customers or employees, communicate with our customers, and deliver products and services, or may significantly increase our compliance costs. As our business expands to new industry segments and new uses of data that are regulated for privacy and security, or to countries outside the United States that have strict data protections laws, our compliance requirements and costs will increase.

Through a privacy policy framework designed to be consistent with globally recognized privacy principles, we comply with United States federal and other country guidelines and practices to help ensure that customers and employees are aware of, and can control, how we use information about them. The TaxAct.com website and its online products have been certified by TRUSTe, an independent organization that operates a website and online product privacy certification program representing industry standard practices to address users' and regulators' concerns about online privacy. We also use privacy statements to provide notice to customers of our privacy practices, as well as provide them the opportunity to furnish instructions with respect to use of their personal information. We participate in industry groups whose purpose is to develop or shape industry best practices, and to influence public policy for privacy and security.

To address security concerns, we use security safeguards to help protect the systems and the information customers give to us from loss, misuse and unauthorized alteration. Whenever customers transmit sensitive information, such as credit card information or tax return data, through one of our websites or products, we use industry standards to encrypt the data as it is transmitted to us. We work to protect our systems from unauthorized internal or external access using numerous commercially available computer security products as well as internally developed security procedures and practices.

HD Vest's subsidiaries are subject to privacy regulation under federal and state law, which has been, and will continue to be, an area of focus for regulators.

Governmental Regulation

Blucora is a publicly traded company that is subject to Securities and Exchange Commission (***"SEC"***) and NASDAQ Global Select Market rules and regulations regarding public disclosure, financial reporting, internal controls, and corporate governance. The adoption of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, as well as the implementation of the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act (***"Dodd-Frank Act"***), have significantly expanded the nature and scope of these rules and regulations. Our Wealth Management and Tax Preparation segments are subject to federal and state government requirements, including regulations related to consumer protection, user privacy, security, pricing, taxation, intellectual property, labor, advertising, broker-dealers, securities, investment advisers, asset management, insurance, listing standards, and product and services quality.

Our Wealth Management segment is subject to additional financial industry regulations and supervision, including by the SEC, the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority (***"FINRA"***), the Department of Labor (***"DOL"***), state securities and insurance regulators, and other regulatory authorities. Our Wealth Management subsidiary HD Vest Investment Securities, Inc. is a broker-dealer registered with the SEC, a member of FINRA, and a member of the Securities Investor Protection Corporation and the Depository Trust & Clearing Corporation. Broker-dealers and their representatives are subject to rules and regulations covering all aspects of the securities business, including sales and trading practices, use and safekeeping of clients' funds and securities, capital adequacy, recordkeeping and reporting, the conduct of directors, officers, and employees, and general anti-fraud provisions. Broker-dealers and their representatives are also regulated by state securities administrators in those jurisdictions where they do business. Compliance with many of the rules and regulations applicable to us involves a number of risks, because rules and regulations frequently change and are subject to varying interpretations, among other reasons. Regulators make periodic examinations of our broker-dealer operations and review annual, monthly, and other reports on our operations and financial condition. Violations of rules and regulations governing a broker-dealer's actions could result in censure, penalties and fines, the issuance of cease-and-desist orders, the restriction, suspension, or expulsion from the securities industry of such broker-dealer, its representatives or its officers or employees, or other similar adverse consequences.

Our Wealth Management subsidiary, HD Vest Advisory Services, Inc. is registered with the SEC as an investment adviser and is subject to the requirements of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, as amended (the ***"Advisers Act"***), and the regulations promulgated thereunder. Such requirements relate to, among other things, fiduciary duties to clients, advisory fees, maintaining an effective compliance program, solicitation arrangements, conflicts of interest, advertising, limitations on agency cross and principal transactions between the advisor and advisory clients, recordkeeping and reporting requirements, disclosure requirements, and general anti-fraud provisions. The SEC periodically examines our investment adviser operations and reviews annual, monthly, and other reports on our operations and financial condition. The SEC is authorized to institute proceedings and impose sanctions for violations of the Advisers Act and other federal securities laws, ranging from fines and censure to termination of an investment adviser's registration. Investment adviser representatives also are subject to certain state securities laws and regulations. Failure to comply with the Advisers Act or other federal and state securities laws and regulations could result in investigations, sanctions, profit disgorgement, fines, or other similar adverse consequences.

Our Wealth Management subsidiaries offer certain products and services subject to the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, as amended (***"ERISA"***) and Section 4975 of the Internal Revenue Code (the ***"Code"***), and to regulations promulgated under ERISA or the Code, insofar as they provide services with respect to plan clients, or otherwise deal with plan clients that are subject to ERISA or the Code. ERISA imposes certain duties on persons who are "fiduciaries" (as defined in Section 3(21) of ERISA) and prohibits certain transactions involving plans subject to ERISA and fiduciaries or other service providers to such plans. Non-compliance with these provisions may expose an ERISA fiduciary or other service provider to liability under ERISA, which may include monetary penalties as well as equitable remedies for the affected plan. Section 4975 of the Code prohibits certain transactions involving plans (as defined in Section 4975(e)(1), which includes individual retirement accounts and Keogh plans) and service providers, including fiduciaries, to such plans. Section 4975 imposes excise taxes for violations of these prohibitions.

In April 2016, the DOL adopted regulations (the ***"DOL fiduciary rule"***) expanding the definition of who is a fiduciary under ERISA, and specifying how such fiduciaries must provide investment advice to account holders in ERISA plans, individual retirement accounts (***"IRAs"***), and certain other types of accounts described in the Code (collectively, ***"Covered Accounts"***). The DOL fiduciary rule as currently drafted brings virtually all of the investment products and services HD Vest currently provides to IRA owners within the scope of ERISA and would require HD Vest to make significant changes to its policies, procedures and products with respect to Covered Accounts. In November 2017, however, the DOL formally delayed the effective date of key portions of the DOL fiduciary rule until July 2019. The purpose of this delay is to allow the DOL time

to review and potentially substantially revise the fiduciary rule, and to facilitate coordination between the DOL and SEC potentially to promulgate uniform standards of conduct for all financial professionals. It is uncertain what further actions the DOL or SEC will take with respect to these matters or when any further rulemaking will be complete or effective. During this delay, HD Vest, when dealing with Covered Accounts, must follow the DOL's Impartial Conduct Standards, which require HD Vest to act in the best interest of investors in Covered Accounts, charge no more than reasonable compensation, and avoid making material misrepresentations. See the section entitled "Risks Associated With our Businesses" in Part I Item 1A of this report for more information about the risks associated with future regulations and their potential impact on our operations.

Our Tax Preparation segment is subject to federal and state government requirements, including regulations related to the electronic filing of tax returns, the provision of tax preparer assistance, and the use and disclosure of customer information. We also offer certain other products and services to small businesses and consumers, which are also subject to regulatory requirements. As we expand our products and services, both domestically and internationally, we may become subject to additional government regulation. Further, regulators may adopt new laws or regulations or their interpretation of existing laws or regulations may differ from ours or expand to cover additional products and services. These increased regulatory requirements could impose higher regulatory compliance costs, limitations on our ability to provide some services in some states or countries, and liabilities that might be incurred through lawsuits or regulatory penalties.

The Trump Administration has called for a broad review of, and potentially significant changes to, U.S. fiscal and tax laws and regulations. These changes have resulted in comprehensive tax reform and include the rolling back or repeal of various financial regulations, including the DOL fiduciary rule and the Dodd-Frank Act. We cannot predict the impact, if any, of these changes to our businesses. However, it is possible that some policies adopted by the new administration will benefit us and others will negatively affect us. Until we know what changes are enacted, we will not know whether in total we benefit from, or are negatively affected by, the changes.

We are subject to federal and state laws and government regulations concerning employee safety and health and environmental matters. The Occupational Safety and Health Administration, the Environmental Protection Agency, and other federal and state agencies have the authority to promulgate regulations that may have an impact on our operations.

See the section entitled "Risks Associated With our Businesses" in Part I, Item 1A of this report for additional information regarding risks related to governmental regulation of our business.

Intellectual Property

Our success depends upon our technology and intellectual property rights. We seek to protect such rights and the value of our corporate brands and reputation through a variety of measures, including: domain name registrations, confidentiality and intellectual property assignment agreements with employees and third parties, protective contractual provisions, and laws regarding copyrights, trademarks, and trade secrets. We hold multiple registered trademarks in the United States and in various foreign countries, and we may apply for additional trademarks as business needs require. We may not be successful in obtaining issuance or registration for such applications or in maintaining existing trademarks. In addition, registered marks may not provide us with any competitive advantages. We may be unable to adequately or cost-effectively protect or enforce our intellectual property rights, and failure to do so could weaken our competitive position and negatively impact our business and financial results. If others claim that our products infringe their intellectual property rights, we may be forced to seek expensive licenses, re-engineer our products, engage in expensive and time-consuming litigation, or stop marketing and licensing our products. See the section entitled "Risks Associated With our Businesses" in Part I Item 1A of this report for additional information regarding protecting and enforcing intellectual property rights by us and third parties against us.

Employees

As of December 31, 2017, we had 487 full-time employees. None of our employees are represented by a labor union, and we consider employee relations to be positive. There is significant competition for qualified personnel in the industries in which we operate, particularly for software development and other technical staff. We believe that our future success will depend in part on our continued ability to hire and retain qualified personnel.

Company Internet Site and Availability of SEC Filings

Our corporate website is located at www.blucora.com. We make available on that site, as soon as reasonably practicable, our Annual Reports on Form 10-K, Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q, proxy statements, Current Reports on Form 8-K, other reports filed with or furnished to the SEC, as well as any amendments to those filings. Our SEC filings, as well as our Code of Ethics and Conduct and other corporate governance documents, can be found in the Investor Relations section of our site and

are available free of charge. Information on our website is not part of this Annual Report on Form 10-K. In addition, the SEC maintains a website at www.sec.gov that contains reports, proxy and information statements, and other information regarding us and other issuers that file electronically with the SEC.

ITEM 1A. Risk Factors

Our business and future results may be affected by a number of risks and uncertainties that should be considered carefully. In addition, this report also contains forward-looking statements that involve risks and uncertainties. Our actual results could differ materially from those anticipated in such forward-looking statements as a result of certain factors, including the risks described below. The occurrence of one or more of the events listed below could also have a material adverse effect on the Company's business, prospects, results of operations, reputation, financial condition, cash flows or ability to continue current operations without any direct or indirect impairment or disruption, which is referred to throughout these Risk Factors as a "Material Adverse Effect."

RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH OUR BUSINESSES

We may not be able to achieve the anticipated benefits of our Strategic Transformation, which could have a Material Adverse Effect.

On October 14, 2015, we announced our Strategic Transformation plans. The Strategic Transformation refers to our transformation into a technology-enabled financial solutions company comprised of TaxAct and HD Vest and the divestitures of our Search and Content business that was operated through our former InfoSpace LLC subsidiary and our E-Commerce business that consisted of the operations of Monoprice, Inc. in 2016. As part of the Strategic Transformation and our model of operating as "One Company," we relocated our corporate headquarters in 2017 from Bellevue, Washington to Irving, Texas.

We may fail to realize the anticipated benefits of the Strategic Transformation, including the expected operational, revenue, cost synergies, and other business synergies between our Wealth Management and Tax Preparation businesses and the level of revenue and profitability growth that we are expecting, whether attributable to regulatory limitations, operational realities, or otherwise. In addition, we have incurred and may continue to incur liabilities in connection with the Strategic Transformation, including liabilities from retention bonuses, severance payments, early termination or assignment of contracts, potential failure to meet obligations due to loss of employees or resources, and resulting litigation. We may also face difficulties, including loss of personnel, disruptions in our ongoing operations, and diversion of management's attention from ongoing operations and opportunities, as we continue to integrate our operations, technologies, products, services, IT systems, controls, benefit plans, and policies and procedures. If we are not able to achieve the anticipated benefits of the Strategic Transformation, it could have a Material Adverse Effect.

In connection with our Strategic Transformation, we have had a leadership transition and have replaced nearly all of our executive officers (excluding our Chief Executive Officer). While many of our executive officers have relevant industry experience, they are new to our Company. In addition, in connection with the relocation, we have also replaced nearly all of our corporate employees. Changes in senior management and employee transitions are inherently disruptive and can be difficult to manage, and efforts to implement any new strategic or operating goals may not succeed in the absence of a long-term management team. Periods of transition in senior management leadership are often difficult as the new executives gain detailed knowledge of our operations and due to cultural differences that may result from changes in strategy and style. Our lack of consistent leadership that is experienced with our Company may cause concerns to third parties with whom we do business, and may increase the likelihood of turnover of our employees and, in the case of our Wealth Management business, turnover of advisors. If we are not effective in managing these leadership and employee transitions, our business could be adversely impacted and could have Material Adverse Effect.

The Tax Preparation and Wealth Management markets are very competitive, and failure to effectively compete could result in a Material Adverse Effect.

Our Tax Preparation business operates in a very competitive marketplace. There are many competing software products and online services. Intuit's TurboTax and H&R Block's products and services have a significant percentage of the software and online service market. Our Tax Preparation business must also compete with alternate methods of tax preparation, such as storefront tax preparation services, which includes both local tax preparers and large chains such as H&R Block, Liberty Tax, and Jackson Hewitt, and it may also be subject to new market entrants who may take some of our market share. Finally, our Tax Preparation business faces the risk that state or federal taxing agencies will offer software or systems to provide direct access for individual filers that will reduce the need for TaxAct's software and services. As digital do-it-yourself tax preparation continues to be characterized by intense competition, including heavy marketing expenditures, price-based

competition, and new entrants, maintaining and growing share becomes more challenging unless brand relevance, customer experience, and feature/functionality provide meaningful incremental value. If we cannot continue to offer software and services that have quality and ease-of-use that are compelling to consumers; market the software and services in a cost-effective manner; offer ancillary services that are attractive to users; and develop the software and services at a low enough cost to be able to offer them at a competitive price point, it could result in a Material Adverse Effect.

Our Tax Preparation business also faces potential competition from the public sector, where we face the risk of federal and state taxing authorities developing software or other systems to facilitate tax return preparation and electronic filing at no charge to taxpayers. These or similar programs may be introduced or expanded in the future, which may cause us to lose customers and revenue. Although the Free File Alliance, which is an Internal Revenue Service partnership that provides free electronic tax filing services to taxpayers meeting certain income-based guidelines, has kept the federal government from being a direct competitor to our tax offerings, we anticipate that governmental encroachment at both the federal and state levels may present a continued competitive threat to our business for the foreseeable future. The current agreement with the Free File Alliance is scheduled to expire in October 2020.

The wealth management industry in which our Wealth Management business also operates is highly competitive, and we may not be able to maintain our customers, financial advisors, distribution network, or the terms on which we provide our products and services. Our Wealth Management business competes based on a number of factors, including name recognition, service, the quality of investment advice, investment performance, technology, product offerings and features, price, and perceived financial strength. Competitors in the wealth management industry include broker-dealers, banks, asset managers, insurers, and other financial institutions. Many of these competitors have greater market share, offer a broader range of products, and have greater financial resources. In addition, over time certain sectors of the wealth management industry have become considerably more concentrated, as financial institutions involved in a broad range of financial services have been acquired by or merged into other firms. This consolidation could result in our competitors gaining greater resources, and we may experience pressures on our pricing and market share as a result of these factors and as some of our competitors seek to increase market share by reducing prices. In addition, our Wealth Management business seeks to differentiate itself on the basis of offering tax-smart investing advice and solutions. There is no guarantee that this differentiation will be meaningful to our customers and potential customers, or that another competitor will not adopt a similar strategy more effectively. In either case, our ability to compete effectively in the market could be damaged.

Poor service or performance of the financial products we offer or competitive pressures on pricing of such services or products may cause our Wealth Management business customers to withdraw assets on short notice.

Customer service and investment performance are important factors in the success of our Wealth Management business. Strong customer service and investment performance help increase customer retention and generate sales of products and services. In contrast, poor service or investment performance could impair our revenues and earnings, as well as our prospects for growth. Customers can terminate their relationships with us or our financial advisors at will. There can be no assurance as to how future investment performance will compare to that of our competitors, and historical performance is not indicative of future returns. A decline or perceived decline in investment performance, on an absolute or relative basis, could cause a decline in sales of mutual funds and other investment products, an increase in redemptions and the termination of asset management relationships. Such actions may reduce our aggregate amount of assets under management and reduce management fees. Poor investment performance could also adversely affect our ability to expand the distribution of our products through independent financial advisors.

In addition, the emergence of new financial products or services from others, or competitive pressures on pricing of such services or products, may result in the loss of accounts in our Wealth Management business. We must also monitor the pricing of our services and financial products in relation to competitors and periodically may need to adjust commission and fee rates, interest rates on deposits and margin loans, and other fee structures to remain competitive. Competition from other financial services firms, such as reduced commissions to attract customers or trading volume, direct-to-investor online financial services, or higher deposit interest rates to attract customer cash balances, could adversely impact our business. Customers of our Wealth Management business can also reduce the aggregate amount of their assets managed by us or shift their funds to other types of accounts with different rate structures, for any number of reasons, including investment performance, changes in prevailing interest rates, changes in investment preferences, changes in our (or our financial advisors') reputation in the marketplace, changes in customer management or ownership, loss of key investment management personnel and financial market performance. A reduction in managed assets and decrease in revenues and earnings from any of these events, could have a Material Adverse Effect.

Changes in domestic and international economic, political and other factors could have a Material Adverse Effect on our business.

Our Wealth Management business operates in the United States and global financial markets, and our Tax Preparation business offers tax filing services in the United States federal jurisdiction, various state jurisdictions and Canada. Accordingly, we are affected by United States and global economic and political conditions that directly and indirectly impact a number of factors in the domestic and global financial markets and economies, which may be detrimental to our operating results. In addition, because the significant majority of our revenue is derived within the United States, economic conditions in the United States have an even greater impact on us than companies with a more diverse international presence.

Domestic and international factors that could affect our business include, but are not limited to, trading levels, investing, origination activity in the securities markets, security and underlying asset valuations, the absolute and relative level and volatility of interest and currency rates, real estate values, the actual and perceived quality of issuers and borrowers, the supply of and demand for loans and deposits, United States and foreign government fiscal and tax policies, United States and foreign government ability, real or perceived, to avoid defaulting on government securities, inflation, decline and stress or recession in the United States and global economies generally, terrorism and armed conflicts, and natural disasters such as weather catastrophes and widespread health emergencies. Furthermore, changes in consumer economic variables, such as the number and size of personal bankruptcy filings, the rate of unemployment, decreases in property values, certain life events, and the level of consumer confidence and consumer debt, may substantially affect consumer loan levels and credit quality.

While United States and global financial markets have, at a macro level, recently experienced growth, uncertainty and potential volatility remain. A period of sustained downturns and/or volatility in the securities markets, prolonged continuation of the artificially low level of short-term interest rates, a return to increased credit market dislocations, reductions in the value of real estate, and other negative market factors could have a Material Adverse Effect on our business. We could experience a decline in commission revenue from lower trading volumes, a decline in fees from reduced portfolio values of securities managed on behalf of our customers, a reduction in revenue from capital markets and advisory transactions due to reduced activity, increased credit provisions and charge-offs, losses sustained from our customers' and market participants' failure to fulfill their settlement obligations, reduced net interest earnings, and other losses. Periods of reduced revenue and other losses could be accompanied by periods of reduced profitability because certain of our expenses, including, but not limited to, our interest expense on debt, rent, facilities and salary expenses are fixed and, our ability to reduce them over short time periods is limited.

Other more specific trends may also affect our financial condition and results of operations, including, for example: changes in the mix of products preferred by investors that may cause increases or decreases in our fee revenues associated with such products, depending on whether investors gravitate towards or away from such products. The timing of such trends, if any, and their potential impact on our financial condition and results of operations are beyond our control.

Challenging economic times and changes to the tax code (personal and/or corporate), such as the recent changes passed under the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act, could cause potential new customers not to purchase or to delay purchasing of our products and services, and could cause our existing customers to discontinue purchasing or delay upgrades of our existing products and services, thereby negatively impacting our revenues and future financial results. Poor economic conditions and high unemployment have caused, and could in the future cause, a significant decrease in the number of tax returns filed, which may have a significant effect on the number of tax returns we prepare and file. In addition, weakness in the end-user consumer and small business markets could negatively affect the cash flow of our distributors and resellers who could, in turn, delay paying their obligations to us, which could increase our credit risk exposure and cause delays in our recognition of revenue or future sales to these customers. Any of these events could have a Material Adverse Effect. See "*We may be negatively impacted by the recently passed Tax Cuts and Jobs Act or by any future changes in tax laws*" for a discussion of risks related to changes in the tax code.

Each of these factors could impact customer activity in all of our businesses and have a Material Adverse Effect. In addition, these factors also may have an impact on our ability to achieve our strategic objectives and to grow our business.

If we are unable to attract and retain productive advisors, our financial results will be negatively impacted.

Our Wealth Management business derives a large portion of its revenues from commissions and fees generated by its advisors. Our ability to attract and retain productive advisors has contributed significantly to our growth and success. If we fail to attract new advisors or to retain and motivate our current advisors, our business may suffer. In addition, the wealth management industry in general is experiencing a decline in the number of younger financial advisors entering the industry. We are not immune to that industry trend. If we are unable to replace advisors as they retire, or to assist retiring advisors with transitioning their practices to existing advisors, we could experience a decline in revenue and earnings.

The market for productive advisors is highly competitive, and we devote significant resources to attracting and retaining the most qualified advisors. In attracting and retaining advisors, we compete directly with a variety of financial institutions such as wirehouses, regional broker-dealers, banks, insurance companies and other independent broker-dealers.

Financial industry competitors are increasingly offering guaranteed contracts, upfront payments, and greater compensation to attract successful financial advisors. These can be important factors in a current advisor's decision to leave us as well as in a prospective advisor's decision to join us. If we are not successful in retaining highly qualified advisors, we may not be able to recover the expense involved in attracting and training these individuals. There can be no assurance that we will be successful in our efforts to attract and retain the advisors needed to achieve our growth objectives. Moreover, the costs associated with successfully attracting and retaining advisors could be significant and there is no assurance that we will generate sufficient revenues from those advisors' business to offset those costs.

In addition, as some of HD Vest's advisors grow their assets under management, they may decide to disassociate from HD Vest to establish their own registered investment advisers ("***RIAs***") and take customers and associated assets into those businesses. HD Vest seeks to deter advisors from taking this route by continuously evaluating its technology, product offerings, and service, as well as its advisor compensation, fees, and pay-out policies, to ensure that HD Vest is competitive in the market and attractive to successful advisors. We may not be successful in dissuading such advisors from forming their own RIAs, which could cause a material volume of customer assets to leave HD Vest's platform, which would reduce our revenues and could cause a Material Adverse Effect.

Future revenue growth depends upon our ability to adapt to technological change and successfully introduce new and enhanced products and services.

The tax preparation and wealth management industries are characterized by rapidly changing technology, evolving industry and security standards, and frequent new product introductions. Our competitors in these industries offer new and enhanced products and services every year. Consequently, customer expectations are constantly changing. We must successfully innovate and develop or offer new products and features to meet evolving customer needs and demands, while continually updating our technology infrastructure. We must devote significant resources to developing our skills, tools, and capabilities in order to capitalize on existing and emerging technologies. Our inability to quickly and effectively innovate our products, services, and infrastructure could result in a Material Adverse Effect.

We have recently begun offering our online tax preparation products and services through our mobile app. We have limited experience to date in mobile platform development, and our existing user experience may not be compelling on mobile devices. Given the speed at which new devices and platforms are being released, it is difficult to predict the problems we may encounter in connection with our mobile app, and we may need to devote significant resources to the creation, support, and maintenance of new user experiences. If our customers don't deem our new mobile app user friendly or if they deem our competitors' mobile app more user friendly or better than ours, our market share will decline, which could have a Material Adverse Effect. In addition, we regularly make upgrades to the technology we use for our tax preparation product that are expected to provide a better user experience and help us to keep existing customers or attract new customers. If our mobile app or the other upgrades we make to the technology we use in our Tax Preparation business are not successful, it could result in wasted development costs, damage to our brands and market share, any of which could have a Material Adverse Effect.

Our business depends on fees generated from the distribution of financial products and fees earned from management of advisory accounts.

A large portion of our revenues are derived from fees generated from the distribution of financial products, such as mutual funds and variable annuities. Changes in the structure or amount of the fees paid by the sponsors of these products could directly affect our revenues, business and financial condition. In addition, if these products experience losses or increased investor redemptions, we may receive lower fee revenue from the investment management and distribution services we provide on behalf of the mutual funds and annuities. The investment management fees we are paid may also decline over time due to factors such as increased competition, renegotiation of contracts and the introduction of new, lower-priced investment products and services. Changes in market values or in the fee structure of asset management accounts would affect our revenues, business and financial condition. Asset management fees often are primarily comprised of base management and incentive fees. Management fees are primarily based on assets under management, which are impacted by net inflow/outflow of customer assets and market values. Below-market investment performance by our funds and portfolio managers could result in a loss of managed accounts and could result in reputational damage that might make it more difficult to attract new customers and thus further impact our business and financial condition. If we were to experience the loss of managed accounts, our fee revenue would decline. In addition, in periods of declining market values, our asset values under management may also decline, which would negatively impact our fee revenues and could have a Material Adverse Effect.

Government regulation of our business, including increased regulation or the interpretation of existing laws, rules or regulations, could have a Material Adverse Effect.

We are subject to federal, state, and local laws and regulations that affect our business, such as financial services, data privacy and security requirements, tax, digital content, employment, consumer protection and fraud protection, among others. In addition, there have been significant new regulations and heightened focus by the government on many of the laws and regulations that affect our both our Wealth Management and our Tax Preparation businesses, as well as in areas such as insurance and healthcare. As we complete our Strategic Transformation and expand our products and services and revise our business models, we may become subject to additional government regulation or increased regulatory scrutiny. Regulators may adopt new laws or regulations or their interpretation of existing laws or regulations may differ from ours as well as the laws of other jurisdictions in which we operate, and if we are found to not be in compliance with certain laws, rules or regulations, it could have a Material Adverse Effect. Increased or new regulatory requirements or changes in the interpretation of existing laws, rules or regulations could, among other things, result in penalties or fines, impose significant limitations, require changes to our business, require certain notifications to customers, customers, or employees, restrict our use of personal information, cause our customers cease utilizing our products or services, could make our business more costly, less efficient, or impossible to conduct, may require us to modify our current or future products or services in a manner that is detrimental to our business and could result in additional compliance costs, which could have a Material Adverse Effect

The Trump Administration has called for a broad review of, and potentially significant changes to, certain U.S. laws and regulations, including but not limited to the U.S. tax code, the Department of Labor (the "***DOL***") fiduciary rule (the "***Fiduciary Rule***") and the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act (the "***Dodd-Frank Act***"), which could result in changes that negatively affect us. We cannot predict whether, when or to what extent any new or changes to existing U.S. federal laws, regulations, interpretations or rulings will be issued or the impact of any such changes on our Tax Preparation or Wealth Management businesses. See "*The recently passed Tax Cuts and Jobs Act could have a Material Adverse Effect*" for additional risks recent changes in tax laws.

The tax preparation industry continues to receive heightened attention from federal and state governments. New legislation, regulation, public policy considerations, changes in the cybersecurity environment, litigation by the government or private entities, new interpretations of existing laws may result in greater oversight of the tax preparation industry, restrict the types of products and services that we can offer or the prices we can charge, or otherwise cause us to change the way we operate our Tax Preparation business or offer our tax preparation products and services. We may not be able to respond quickly to such regulatory, legislative and other developments, and these changes may in turn increase our cost of doing business and limit our revenue opportunities. In addition, if our practices are not consistent with new interpretations of existing laws, rules or regulations, we may become subject to lawsuits, penalties, fines and other liabilities that did not previously apply. We are also required to comply with Federal Trade Commission (the "***FTC***") requirements and a variety of state revenue agency standards. Requirements imposed by the FTC or state agencies, including new requirements or their interpretation of existing laws, rules or regulations, could be burdensome on our business, cause us to lose market share due to product changes we are required to implement or may significantly increase the costs of providing those services to our customers and may prevent us from delivering a quality product to our customers in a timely manner and at an acceptable price, all of which could have a Material Adverse Effect. In addition, in our Tax Preparation business, we generate revenue from certain financial products related to our tax preparation software and services. These products include prepaid debit cards on which a tax filer may receive his or her tax refund and the ability of certain of our users to have the fees for our services deducted from their tax refund. Any regulation of these products by state or federal governments, or any competing products offered by state and federal tax collection agencies, could materially and adversely impact our revenue from these financial products.

In addition, we are subject to laws, regulations, and industry rules relating to the collection, use, and security of user data. We expect regulation in this area to increase, and our current data protection policies and practices may not be sufficient and thus may require modification. We have incurred, and may continue to incur, significant expenses to comply with privacy and security standards and protocols imposed by law, regulation, industry standards, and contractual obligations.

Our ability to comply with all applicable laws, rules and regulations, and interpretations is largely dependent on our establishment and maintenance of compliance, audit, and reporting systems and procedures, as well as our ability to attract and retain qualified compliance, audit, and risk management personnel. While we have adopted systems, policies, and procedures reasonably designed to comply or facilitate compliance with all applicable laws, rules and regulations, and interpretations, these systems, policies, and procedures may not be fully effective. There can be no assurance that we will not be subject to investigations, claims, or other actions or proceedings by regulators or third-parties with respect to our past or future compliance with applicable laws, rules, and regulations, the outcome of which may have a Material Adverse Effect.

If we fail to comply with applicable laws, rules, regulations and guidance, such failure could have a Material Adverse Effect. See "*Our Wealth Management business is subject to extensive regulation, and failure to comply with these regulations could have a Material Adverse Effect"* for additional information regarding the regulation of our business.

Our Wealth Management business is subject to extensive regulation, and failure to comply with these regulations could have a Material Adverse Effect.

Our Wealth Management business is heavily regulated by multiple agencies, including the Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC"), the DOL, the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, state securities and insurance regulators, and other regulatory authorities. Failure to comply with these regulators' laws, rules, and regulations could result in the restriction of the ongoing conduct or growth, or even liquidation of, parts of our business and otherwise cause a Material Adverse Effect.

The regulatory environment in which our Wealth Management business operates is continually evolving, and the level of financial regulation to which we are subject has generally increased in recent years. Among the most significant regulatory changes affecting our Wealth Management business is the Dodd-Frank Act, which mandates broad changes in the supervision and regulations of the wealth management industry. Regulators implementing the Dodd-Frank Act have adopted, proposed to adopt, and may in the future adopt regulations that could impact the manner in which we will market HD Vest products and services, manage HD Vest operations, and interact with regulators. In addition, the Trump Administration has called for a broad review of, and potentially significant changes to, U.S. fiscal laws and regulations, including the Dodd-Frank Act. If such changes are enacted, they could negatively impact our Wealth Management business and cause a Material Adverse Effect.

In 2016, the DOL enacted the Fiduciary Rule, which redefines who may be considered a fiduciary under ERISA and how such fiduciaries must provide investment advice to individual retirement accounts or other accounts, the assets of which are subject to section 4975 of the Internal Revenue Code (collectively, the "***Covered Accounts***"). During 2017, Covered Accounts made up over half of the assets under administration in our Wealth Management business. The Fiduciary Rule will bring virtually all of the investment products and services that our Wealth Management business currently provides to Covered Account owners within the scope of ERISA.

The DOL has delayed the effective date of key portions of the Fiduciary Rule to July 2019. Other portions of the Fiduciary Rule, however, remain in effect, including the Impartial Conduct Standards. The purpose of the delay is to permit the DOL to reassess the Fiduciary Rule, as well as to facilitate coordination between the DOL and the SEC on rulemaking toward possible uniform standards of conduct for all investment professionals. We cannot predict if and when the DOL or the SEC will complete any such rulemaking or what it will entail. Should the DOL or SEC adopt new standards of conduct and other requirements that heighten the duties of broker-dealers or investment advisers, it could result in additional compliance costs, lesser compensation, and management distraction, all of which could have a Material Adverse Effect on our business. Because the DOL's Impartial Conduct Standards remain in effect, our Wealth Management business is required to continue good faith efforts to conform its business to these standards. Because Covered Accounts comprise a significant portion of our business, our failure to successfully conform to these standards could negatively impact our results due to increased costs related to compliance, legal and information technology changes.

Our Wealth Management business distributes its products and services through financial advisors who affiliate with us as independent contractors. There can be no assurance that legislative, judicial, or regulatory (including tax) authorities will not introduce proposals or assert interpretations of existing rules and regulations that would change, or at least challenge, the classification of our financial advisors as independent contractors. Although we believe we have properly classified our advisors as independent contractors, the U.S. Internal Revenue Service or other U.S. federal or state authorities or similar authorities may determine that we have misclassified our advisors as independent contractors for employment tax or other purposes and, as a result, seek additional taxes from us or attempt to impose fines and penalties, which could have a material adverse effect on our business model, financial condition, and results of operations.

In addition, the SEC and FINRA have extensive rules and regulations with respect to capital requirements. As a registered broker-dealer, our Wealth Management business is subject to Rule 15c3-1 (the "***Net Capital Rule***") under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, and related requirements of self-regulatory organizations, which specify minimum capital requirements that are intended to ensure the general soundness and liquidity of broker-dealers. As a result of the Net Capital Rule, our ability to withdraw capital from our subsidiaries that comprise our Wealth Management business could be restricted, which in turn could limit our ability to repay debt, redeem or purchase shares of our outstanding stock, or pay dividends, which could have a Material Adverse Effect. A large operating loss or charge against net capital could adversely affect our ability to expand or even maintain our present levels of business.

Our Wealth Management business offers products sponsored by third parties, including but not limited to mutual funds, insurance, annuities and alternative investments. These products are subject to complex regulations that change frequently. Although we have controls in place to facilitate compliance with such regulations, there can be no assurance that our interpretation of the regulations will be consistent with various regulators' interpretations, that our procedures will be viewed as adequate by regulatory examiners, or that the operating subsidiaries will be deemed to be in compliance with regulatory requirements in all material respects. If products sold by our Wealth Management business do not perform as anticipated due to market factors or otherwise, or if product sponsors become insolvent or are otherwise unable to meet their obligations, this

could result in material litigation and regulatory action against us. In addition, we could face liabilities for actual or alleged breaches of legal duties to customers with respect to the suitability of the financial products we make available in our open architecture product platform or the investment advice of our financial advisors.

See " *Government regulation of our business, including increased regulation or the interpretation of existing laws, rules or regulations, could have a Material Adverse Effect*" for additional information regarding the regulation of our business.

The transition of our Wealth Management business to a new clearing platform may negatively impact our operations and our advisors and the customers of our Wealth Management business.

Our Wealth Management business has entered into a new clearing services relationship with Fidelity Clearing & Custody Solutions ("FCCS"), which becomes effective in September 2018 (the ***"Target Date"***). The transition of our clearing business to FCCS involves significant operational, technological, and logistical effort, since it will require all HD Vest brokerage business and customer accounts to migrate to FCCS's clearing platform, together with all of the underlying customer data. Should we experience material delays or complications in this effort, it could have a Material Adverse Effect on our business. In addition, our advisors or customers could be dissatisfied by the process of transitioning to FCCS, or by the different technology, systems, processes, policies and products FCCS offers. Should a significant number of advisors or customers, or assets under administration leave as a result, it could have a Material Adverse Effect.

The movement of business to a new clearing firm is an extremely complex and intensive undertaking and we have committed a significant amount of human, technological, and financial resources to ensure that the transition is successfully completed by the target date. Given the complexity and magnitude of the transition effort, however, there can be no guarantee that we will not experience delays, unexpected costs, technological failures, incompatibility of systems or policies, or loss of employees, advisors and customers. In completing the transition, we are dependent on key employees as well as outside contractors. If those employees or contractors leave HD Vest or the project before completion, it could significantly delay the completion of the transition. Failure to complete the transition to FCCS by the Target Date for any reason could result in a Material Adverse Effect.

We may not realize the financial, operational, and customer-experience benefits that we project from our transition to FCCS's clearing platform. The technology, service and product offerings presented by FCCS may not be accepted by our advisors or customers at the levels we anticipate, and may not provide the level of benefits that we expect even if accepted. We also may not realize the level of conversion of direct-to-fund assets onto FCCS's clearing platform that we anticipate. Should the number of accounts or assets that convert to FCCS's platform fall short of expectations, we will likely receive less economic benefit from the new clearing arrangement than we expected, which could be material. Likewise, should the Federal Reserve not increase interest rates at the pace or to the levels anticipated, we would likely recognize lower revenue from the cash-sweep program under the new clearing arrangement, potentially in a material amount.

Our Wealth Management business is dependent on the performance, liquidity and continuity of its clearing firm. Should its clearing firm fail to provide clearing services at the contracted levels for any reason, or to suffer a liquidity event, it could result in a Material Adverse Effect.

Our operation systems and network infrastructure is subject to significant and constantly evolving cybersecurity and other technological risks, and the security measures that we have implemented to secure confidential and personal information may be breached; a potential breach may pose risks to the uninterrupted operation of our systems, expose us to mitigation costs, litigation, investigation, fines and penalties by authorities, claims by persons whose information was disclosed, and damage to our reputation.

We collect and retain certain sensitive personal data. Our Tax Preparation and Wealth Management businesses collect, use, and retain large amounts of confidential personal and financial information from their customers, including information regarding income, assets, family members, credit cards, tax returns, bank accounts, social security numbers, and healthcare. Maintaining the integrity of our systems and networks is critical to the success of our business operations, including the retention of our customers and advisors, and to the protection of our proprietary information and our customers' personal information. A major breach of our systems or those of our third-party service providers may have materially negative consequences for our businesses, including possible fines, penalties and damages, reduced demand for our services, harm to our reputation and brands, further regulation and oversight by federal or state agencies, and loss of our ability to provide financial transaction services or accept and process customer credit card orders or tax returns. We may detect, or we may receive notices from customers or public or private agencies that they have detected, vulnerabilities in our servers or our software. The existence of vulnerabilities, even if they do not result in a security breach, may harm customer confidence and require substantial resources to address, and we may not be able to discover or remediate such security vulnerabilities before they are exploited.

In addition, hackers may develop and deploy viruses, worms, and other malicious software programs that can be used to attack our offerings. Although we utilize network and application security measures, internal controls, and physical security procedures to safeguard our systems, there can be no assurance that a security breach, intrusion, or loss or theft of personal information will not occur. Any such incident could cause a Material Adverse Effect and require us to expend significant resources to address these problems, including notification under data privacy regulations. In addition, our employees (including temporary and seasonal employees) and contractors may have access to sensitive and personal information of our customers, and employees. While we conduct background checks of our employees and these other individuals and limit access to systems and data, it is possible that one or more of these individuals may circumvent these controls, resulting in a security breach. In addition, we rely on third party vendors to host certain of our sensitive and personal information and data through cloud services. While we conduct due diligence on these third party partners with respect to their security and business controls, we may not have the ability to effectively monitor or oversee the implementation of these control measures, and, in any event, individuals or third parties may be able to circumvent and/or exploit vulnerabilities that may exist in these security and business controls, resulting in a loss of sensitive and personal customer or employee information and data.

While we maintain cyber liability insurance that provides both third-party liability and first-party liability coverages, this insurance is subject to exclusions and may not be sufficient to protect us against all losses. In addition, the trend toward broad consumer and general public notification of such incidents could exacerbate the harm to our business, financial condition, or results of operations. Even if we successfully protect our technology infrastructure and the confidentiality of sensitive data, we may incur significant expenses in connection with our responses to any such attacks as well as the adoption, implementation, and maintenance of appropriate security measures. We could also suffer harm to our business and reputation if attempted security breaches are publicized. We cannot be certain that advances in criminal capabilities, discovery of new vulnerabilities, attempts to exploit vulnerabilities in our systems, data thefts, physical system or network break-ins, inappropriate access, or other developments will not compromise or breach the technology or other security measures protecting the networks and systems used in connection with our businesses.

Stolen identity refund fraud could impede our Tax Preparation customers' ability to timely and successfully file their tax returns and receive their tax refunds, and could diminish customers' perceptions of the security and reliability of our tax preparation products and services, resulting in negative publicity. Increased governmental regulation to attempt to combat that fraud could result in a Material Adverse Effect.

We and other companies offering tax preparation services (especially those offering DDIY solutions) have seen a rise in instances of criminals utilizing stolen information obtained through hacking, phishing, and other means of identity theft in order to electronically file fraudulent federal and state tax returns. As a result, impacted taxpayers must complete additional forms and go through additional steps in order to report to appropriate authorities that their identities have been stolen and their tax returns were filed fraudulently. Though we offer assistance in the refund recovery process, stolen identity refund fraud could impede our customers' ability to timely and successfully file their returns and receive their tax refunds, and could diminish customers' perceptions of the security and reliability of our tax preparation products and services, resulting in negative publicity, despite there having been no breach in the security of our systems. In addition, if stolen identity refund fraud is perpetrated at a material level through our tax preparation products or services, state, federal, or foreign tax authorities may refuse to allow us to continue to process our customers' tax returns electronically. As a result, stolen identity fraud could have a Material Adverse Effect on our Tax Preparation business.

Federal, state, and foreign governmental authorities in jurisdictions in which we operate have taken action, and may take action in the future, in an attempt to combat stolen identity refund fraud, which may require changes to our systems and business practices in ways we cannot anticipate. These actions may have a Material Adverse Effect on our Tax Preparation business.

If we are unable to develop, manage, and maintain critical third party business relationships for our Tax Preparation and Wealth Management businesses, it could result in a Material Adverse Effect.

Our Tax Preparation and Wealth Management businesses are dependent on the strength of our business relationships and our ability to continue to develop, maintain, and leverage new and existing relationships. We rely on various third party partners, including software and service providers, suppliers, vendors, distributors, contractors, financial institutions, and licensing partners, among others, in many areas of these businesses to deliver our services and products. In certain instances, the products or services provided through these third party relationships may be difficult to replace or substitute, depending on the level of integration of the third party's products or services into, or with, our offerings and/or the general availability of such third party's products and services. In addition, there may be few or no alternative third party providers or vendors in the market. The failure of third parties to provide acceptable and high quality products, services, and technologies or to update their products, services, and technologies may result in a disruption to our business operations, which may materially reduce our

revenues and profits, cause us to lose customers and customers, and damage our reputation. Alternative arrangements and services may not be available to us on commercially reasonable terms or we may experience business interruptions upon a transition to an alternative partner.

Our Wealth Management business does not offer any proprietary financial products. Instead, it distributes investment and insurance products through distribution agreements with third-party financial institutions, including banks, mutual funds, and insurance companies. These products are sold by our advisors, who are independent contractors. Maintaining and deepening relationships with these unaffiliated distributors and advisors is an important part of our growth strategy because strong third-party distribution arrangements enhance our ability to market our products and increase our assets under management, revenues, and profitability. There can be no assurance that the distribution and advisor relationships we have established will continue. Our distribution partners and advisors may cease to operate, consolidate, institute cost-cutting efforts, or otherwise terminate their relationship with us. Any such reduction in access to third-party distributors and advisors may have a material adverse effect on our ability to market our products and to generate revenue in our Wealth Management segment. In addition, there are risks associated with our third-party clearing firm that we rely on to provide clearing services for our Wealth Management business that are discussed above.

Access to investment and insurance product distribution channels is subject to intense competition due to the large number of competitors and products in the broker-dealer, investment advisory and insurance industries. Relationships with distributors are subject to periodic negotiation that may result in increased distribution costs and/or reductions in the amount of revenue we realize based on sales of particular products or customer assets. In addition, regulatory changes (such as the Fiduciary Rule) may negatively impact our revenues and profits related to particular products or services. Any increase in the costs to distribute our products or reduction in the type or amount of products made available for sale, or revenue associated with those products, could have a Material Adverse Effect.

The seasonality of our Tax Preparation business requires a precise development and release schedule and any delays or issues with accuracy or quality may damage our reputation and could result in a Material Adverse Effect.

Our tax preparation software and online service must be ready to launch in final form near the beginning of each calendar year to take advantage of the full tax season. We must update the code for our software and service on a precise schedule each year to account for annual changes in tax laws and regulations and ensure that the software and service are accurate. Delayed and unpredictable changes to federal and state tax laws and regulations can cause an already tight development cycle to become even more challenging. If we are unable to meet this precise schedule and we launch our software and service late, we risk losing customers to our competitors. If we cannot develop our software with a high degree of accuracy and quality, we risk errors in the tax returns that are generated. Such errors could result in loss of reputation, lower customer retention, or legal claims, fees, and payouts related to the warranty on our software and service, which could result in a Material Adverse Effect.

The specialized and highly seasonal nature of our Tax Preparation business presents financial risks and operational challenges, which, if not satisfactorily addressed, could result in a Material Adverse Effect.

Our Tax Preparation business is highly seasonal, with a significant portion of our annual revenue for such services earned in the first four months of our fiscal year. The concentration of our revenue-generating activity during this relatively short period presents a number of challenges for us, including cash and resource management during the last eight months of our fiscal year, when our Tax Preparation business generally operates at a loss and incurs fixed costs of preparing for the upcoming tax season, responding to changes in competitive conditions, including marketing, pricing, and new product offerings, which could affect our position during the tax season, and ensuring optimal uninterrupted operations and service delivery during the tax season. If we experience significant business disruptions during the tax season or if we are unable to satisfactorily address the challenges described above and related challenges associated with a seasonal business, it could result in a Material Adverse Effect.

If our Tax Preparation business fails to process transactions effectively or fails to adequately protect against disputed or potential fraudulent activities, it could have a Material Adverse Effect.

Our Tax Preparation business processes a significant volume and dollar value of transactions on a daily basis, particularly during tax season. Due to the size and volume of transactions that we handle, effective processing systems and controls are essential to ensure that transactions are handled appropriately. Despite our efforts, it is possible that we may make errors or that fraudulent activity may affect our services. In addition to any direct damages and fines that may result from any such problems, which may be substantial, a loss of confidence in our controls may materially harm our business and damage our brand. The systems supporting our Tax Preparation business are comprised of multiple technology platforms, some of which are difficult to scale. If we are unable to effectively manage our systems and processes, we may be unable to process customer data in an accurate, reliable, and timely manner, which could result in a Material Adverse Effect.

Our website and transaction management software, data center systems, or the systems of third-party co-location facilities and cloud service providers could fail or become unavailable or otherwise be inadequate, which could materially harm our reputation and result in a material loss of revenues and current or potential customers and customers and have a Material Adverse Effect.

Any system interruptions that result in the unavailability or unreliability of our websites, transaction processing systems, or network infrastructure could materially reduce our revenue and impair our ability to properly process transactions. We use both internally developed and third-party systems, including cloud computing and storage systems, for our online services and certain aspects of transaction processing. Some of our systems are relatively new and untested and thus may be subject to failure or unreliability. Any system unavailability or unreliability may cause unanticipated system disruptions, slower response times, degradation in customer satisfaction, additional expense, or delays in reporting accurate financial information. For example, we have been migrating data to the cloud. This migration has been costly and has diverted some of management's attention and resources in order to ensure a smooth transition to the cloud.

Our data centers and cloud service could be susceptible to damage or disruption, which could have a Material Adverse Effect. Our Tax Preparation and Wealth Management businesses have business continuity plans that include secondary disaster recovery centers, but if their primary data centers fail and those disaster recovery centers do not fully restore the failed environments, our business will suffer. In particular, if such interruption occurs during the tax season, it could have a Material Adverse Effect on our Tax Preparation business.

Our systems and operations, and those of our third-party service providers and partners, could be damaged or interrupted by fire, flood, earthquakes, other natural disasters, power loss, telecommunications failure, internet breakdown, break-in, human error, software bugs, hardware failures, malicious attacks, computer viruses, computer denial of service attacks, terrorist attacks, or other events beyond our control. Such damage or interruption may affect internal and external systems that we rely upon to provide our services, take and fulfill customer orders, handle customer service requests, and host other products and services. During the period in which services are unavailable, we will be unable or severely limited in our ability to generate revenues, and we may also be exposed to liability from those third parties to whom we provide services. We could face significant losses as a result of these events, and our business interruption insurance may not be adequate to compensate us for all potential losses, which could result in a Material Adverse Effect.

Current and future litigation or regulatory proceedings or adverse court interpretations of the laws under which the Company operates could have a Material Adverse Effect.

Many aspects of our business involve substantial risks of liability. We are currently subject to lawsuits and are likely to be subject to litigation in the future. In highly volatile markets, the volume of claims and amount of damages sought in litigation and regulatory proceedings against financial institutions have historically increased. Any lawsuits to which we are subject, such as purported class actions, shareholder derivative lawsuits or claims by wealth management customers, could result in substantial expenditures, generate adverse publicity and could significantly impair our business, or force us to cease offering certain products or services. Defense of any lawsuit, even if successful, could require substantial time and attention of our management and could require the expenditure of significant amounts for legal fees and other related costs. In addition, litigation or regulatory proceedings or actions brought by state or federal agencies relating to our products or services may result in additional restrictions on the offering of certain of our products or services. To the extent that any such additional restrictions or legal claims restrict our ability to offer such products or services, it could result in a Material Adverse Effect.

If we are unable to hire, retain, and motivate highly qualified employees, including our key employees, we may not be able to successfully manage our businesses.

Our future success depends on our ability to identify, attract, hire, retain, and motivate highly skilled management, technical, sales and marketing, and corporate development personnel, including personnel with experience and expertise in the wealth management, tax preparation, and technology industries to support our new strategic focus. Qualified personnel with experience relevant to our businesses are scarce, and competition to recruit them is intense. If we fail to successfully hire and retain a sufficient number of highly qualified employees, we may have difficulties in supporting or expanding our businesses. Realignments of resources, reductions in workforce, or other operational decisions have created and could continue to create an unstable work environment and may have a negative effect on our ability to hire, retain, and motivate employees.

Our business and operations are substantially dependent on the performance of our key employees. Changes of management or key employees may disrupt operations, which may materially and adversely affect our business and financial results or delay achievement of our business objectives. In addition, if we lose the services of one or more key employees and are unable to recruit and retain a suitable successor with relevant experience, we may not be able to successfully and timely manage our business or achieve our business objectives. There can be no assurance that any retention program we initiate will be successful at retaining employees, including key employees.

We use stock options, restricted stock units, and other equity-based awards to recruit and retain senior level employees. With respect to those employees to whom we issue such equity-based awards, we face a significant challenge in retaining them if the value of equity-based awards in aggregate or individually is either not deemed by the employee to be substantial enough or deemed so substantial that the employee leaves after their equity-based awards vest. If our stock price does not increase significantly above the exercise prices of our options, we may need to issue new equity-based awards in order to motivate and retain our key employees. We may undertake or seek stockholder approval to undertake other equity-based programs to retain our employees, which may be viewed as dilutive to our stockholders or may increase our compensation costs. There can be no assurance that any such programs, if approved by stockholders, or any other incentive programs, would be successful in motivating and retaining our employees.

We may be negatively impacted by the recently passed Tax Cuts and Jobs Act or by any future changes in tax laws.

On December 22, 2017, President Trump signed the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act into law. The change in the tax law will be effective for our 2018 calendar year financial reporting period. The primary impacts to us include a reduction of the federal corporate tax rate from 35% to 21% affecting our net deferred tax liabilities, repeal of corporate alternative minimum tax and associated potential refunds of prior paid taxes, and potential deductible limits of certain executive compensation. These changes could have a material impact to the value of deferred tax assets and liabilities and the Company's future taxable income and effective tax rate. The Company is continuing to analyze the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act. Until such analysis is complete, the full impact of the new tax law on the Company in future periods is uncertain.

In addition, changes in tax laws, whether federal or state tax laws, require updates to our tax preparation software used in our Tax Preparation business. Such updates are costly and may be time consuming to ensure that they accurately reflect the new laws that are adopted. It is difficult to know at this time how our customers will view the new federal tax laws that were enacted in late 2017. Possible outcomes include a short-term or long-term increase in customers that prefer professional tax advice and preparation services rather than using our software or we may see a change in our how customers value our software services as customers may perceive their tax preparation has become simpler as a result of the new tax laws, which could result in lower demand for our products and could reduce revenue and/or the number of units sold. Further changes in the way that state and federal governments structure their taxation regimes could also cause a Material Adverse Effect on our Tax Preparation Business. The introduction of a simplified or flattened federal or state taxation structure may make our services less necessary or attractive to individual filers, which could reduce revenue and the number of units sold. We also face risk from the possibility of increased complexity in taxation structures, which may encourage some of our customers to seek professional tax advice instead of using our software or services. In the event that such changes to tax structures cause us to lose market share or cause a decline in customers, it could cause a Material Adverse Effect.

Our risk management and conflicts of interest policies and procedures may be ineffective or leave us exposed to unidentified or unanticipated risks.

We are subject to the risks of errors and misconduct by our employees and financial advisors, such as fraud, non-compliance with policies, recommending transactions that are not suitable, and improperly using or disclosing confidential information. Although we have internal controls and other risk-mitigating factors in place, this type of conduct is difficult to detect and deter, and could materially harm our business, results of operations or financial condition. We are further subject to the risk of nonperformance or inadequate performance of contractual obligations by third-party vendors of products and services that are used in our businesses. Management of operational, legal and regulatory risks requires, among other things, policies and procedures to record properly and verify a large number of transactions and events, and these policies and procedures may not be fully effective in mitigating our risk exposure in all market environments or against all types of risk. Insurance and other traditional risk-shifting tools may be held by or available to us in order to manage certain exposures, but they are subject to terms such as deductibles, coinsurance, limits and policy exclusions, as well as the risk of counterparty denial of coverage, default or insolvency.

In our Wealth Management business, prevention and detection of wrongdoing or fraud by our advisors, who are not our employees and tend to be located remotely from our headquarters, present unique challenges. There cannot be any assurance that misconduct by our advisors will not lead to a Material Adverse Effect on our business.

RIAs have fiduciary obligations that require us and our advisors to act in the best interests of our customers and to disclose any material conflicts of interest. Conflicts of interest are under growing scrutiny by U.S. federal and state regulators. Our risk management processes include addressing potential conflicts of interest that arise in our business. Management of potential conflicts of interest has become increasingly complex. A perceived or actual failure to address conflicts of interest adequately could affect our reputation, the willingness of customers to transact business with us or give rise to litigation or regulatory actions, any of which could have a Material Adverse Effect.

Our business depends on our strong reputation and the value of our brands, which could be negatively impacted by poor performance.

Developing and maintaining awareness of our brands is critical to achieving widespread acceptance of our existing and future products and services and is an important element in attracting new customers and customers. Adverse publicity (whether or not justified) relating to regulatory proceedings or other events or activities attributed to our businesses, our employees, our vendors, or our partners may tarnish our reputation and reduce the value of our brands. Damage to our reputation and loss of brand equity may reduce demand for our products and services and have a material adverse effect on our future financial results. Such damage also would require additional resources to rebuild our reputation and restore the value of the brands.

If others claim that our services infringe their intellectual property rights, we may be forced to seek expensive licenses, reengineer our services, engage in expensive and time-consuming litigation, or stop marketing and licensing our services.

Companies and individuals with rights relating to the technology industry have frequently resorted to litigation regarding intellectual property rights. These parties have in the past made and may in the future make claims against us alleging infringement of patents, copyrights, trademarks, trade secrets, or other intellectual property or proprietary rights, or alleging unfair competition or violations of privacy or publicity rights. Responding to any such claims could be time-consuming, result in costly litigation, divert management's attention, cause product or service release delays, or require removal or redesigning of our products or services, payment of damages for infringement, or entry into royalty or licensing agreements. Our technology, services, and products may not be able to withstand any third-party claims or rights against their use. In some cases, the ownership or scope of an entity's or person's rights is unclear. In addition, the ownership or scope of such rights may be altered by changes in the legal landscape, such as through developments in U.S. or international intellectual property laws or regulations or through court, agency, or regulatory board decisions. If a successful claim of infringement were made against us and we could not develop non-infringing technology or content, or license the infringed or similar technology or content, on a timely and cost-effective basis, our financial condition and results of operations could be materially and adversely affected.

We do not regularly conduct patent searches to determine whether the technology used in our products or services infringes patents held by third parties. Patent searches may not return every issued patent or patent application that may be deemed relevant to a particular product or service. It is therefore difficult to determine, with any level of certainty, whether a particular product or service may be construed as infringing a current or future U.S. or foreign patent.

We rely heavily on our technology and intellectual property, but we may be unable to adequately or cost-effectively protect or enforce our intellectual property rights, thereby weakening our competitive position and negatively impacting our business and financial results. We may have to litigate to enforce our intellectual property rights, which can be time consuming, expensive, and difficult to predict.

To protect our rights in our services and technology, we rely on a combination of copyright and trademark laws, trade secrets, confidentiality agreements with employees and third parties, and protective contractual provisions. We also rely on laws pertaining to trademarks and domain names to protect the value of our corporate brands and reputation. Despite our efforts to protect our proprietary rights, unauthorized parties may copy aspects of our services or technology, obtain and use information, marks, or technology that we regard as proprietary, or otherwise violate or infringe our intellectual property rights. In addition, it is possible that others could independently develop substantially equivalent intellectual property. If we do not effectively protect our intellectual property, or if others independently develop substantially equivalent intellectual property, our competitive position could be materially weakened.

Effectively policing the unauthorized use of our services and technology is time-consuming and costly, and the steps taken by us may not prevent misappropriation of our technology or other proprietary assets. The efforts we have taken to protect our proprietary rights may not be sufficient or effective, and unauthorized parties may copy aspects of our services, use similar marks or domain names, or obtain and use information, marks, or technology that we regard as proprietary. In some cases, the ownership or scope of an entity's or person's rights is unclear and may also change over time, including through changes in U.S. or international intellectual property laws or regulations or through court, agency, or regulatory board decisions. We may have to litigate to enforce our intellectual property rights, to protect our trade secrets, or to determine the validity and scope of others' proprietary rights, which are sometimes not clear or may change. Litigation can be time-consuming and expensive, and the outcome can be difficult to predict.

We may seek to acquire companies or assets that complement our Wealth Management and Tax Preparation businesses, and if we are unsuccessful in completing any such acquisitions on favorable terms or integrating any company acquired it could result in a Material Adverse Effect.

We may seek to acquire companies or assets that complement our Wealth Management and Tax Preparation businesses. There can be no guarantee that any of the opportunities that we evaluate will result in the purchase by us of any business or asset being evaluated, or that, if acquired, we will be able to successfully integrate such acquisition.

If we are successful in our pursuit of any complementary acquisition opportunities, we intend to use available cash, debt and/or equity financing, and/or other capital or ownership structures designed to diversify our capital sources and attract a competitive cost of capital, all of which may change our leverage profile. There are a number of factors that impact our ability to succeed in acquiring the companies and assets we identify, including competition for these companies and assets, sometimes from larger or better-funded competitors. As a result, our success in completing acquisitions is not guaranteed. Our expectation is that, to the extent we are successful, any acquisitions will be additive to our businesses, taking into account potential benefits of operational synergies. However, these new business additions and acquisitions, if any, involve a number of risks and may not achieve our expectations, and, therefore, we could be materially and adversely affected by any such new business additions or acquisitions. There can be no assurance that the short or long-term value of any business or technology that we develop or acquire will be equal to the value of the cash and other consideration that we pay or expenses we incur.

RISKS RELATED TO OUR FINANCING ARRANGEMENTS

We incurred debt in connection with the repayment of our credit facility used for the acquisition of HD Vest and the redemption of our convertible senior notes and may incur future debt, which may materially and adversely affect our financial condition and future financial results.

As of December 31, 2017, we had $345.0 million of outstanding indebtedness in the form of a term loan under a Credit Agreement to which we, and most of our direct and indirect domestic subsidiaries (in their capacity as guarantors), are parties. The final maturity date of the term loan is May 22, 2024. The proceeds of the term loan were used to repay in full the credit facility used for the acquisition of HD Vest and to redeem in full our convertible senior notes. We may also borrow an additional amount under this Credit Agreement of up to $50.0 million under a revolving credit arrangement.

This borrowing may materially and adversely affect our financial condition and future financial results by, among other things:

- increasing our vulnerability to downturns in our businesses, to competitive pressures, and to adverse economic and industry conditions;
- requiring the dedication of a portion of our expected cash from operations to service the indebtedness, thereby reducing the amount of expected cash flow available for other purposes, including capital expenditures and complementary acquisitions;
- increasing our interest payment obligations in the event that interest rates rise; and
- limiting our flexibility in planning for, or reacting to, changes in our businesses and our industries.

Our Credit Agreement imposes certain restrictions on us, including restrictions on our ability to create liens, incur indebtedness and make investments. In addition, our Credit Agreement includes covenants, the breach of which may cause the outstanding indebtedness to be declared immediately due and payable. This borrowing, and our ability to repay it, may also negatively impact our ability to obtain additional financing in the future and may affect the terms of any such financing.

In addition, we or our subsidiaries, may incur additional debt in the future. Any additional debt may result in risks similar to those discussed above or in other risks specific to the credit agreements entered into for those debts.

Existing cash and cash equivalents, and cash generated from operations may not be sufficient to meet our anticipated cash needs for servicing debt, working capital, and capital expenditures.

Although we believe that existing cash and cash equivalents, and cash generated from operations will be sufficient to meet our anticipated cash needs for servicing debt, working capital, and capital expenditures for at least the next 12 months, the underlying levels of revenues and expenses that we project may not prove to be accurate. As of December 31, 2017, we had $345.0 million outstanding under our term loan that was entered into in May 2017. Servicing this debt will require the dedication of a portion of our expected cash flow from operations, thereby reducing the amount of our cash flow available for other purposes. In addition, our ability to make scheduled payments of the principal of, to pay interest on, or to refinance our indebtedness depends on our future performance, which is subject to economic, financial, competitive, and other factors beyond our control. Our businesses may not continue to generate cash flow from operations in the future sufficient to service our debt and make necessary capital expenditures. If we are unable to generate such cash flow, we may be required to adopt one or more alternatives, such as selling assets, restructuring debt, or obtaining additional equity capital on terms that may be onerous or highly dilutive. Our ability to refinance our indebtedness will depend on the capital markets and our financial

condition and results at such time. We may not be able to engage in any of these activities or engage in these activities on desirable terms, which could result in a default on our debt obligations.

In addition, we may evaluate complementary acquisitions of businesses, products, or technologies from time to time. Any such transactions, if completed, may use a significant portion of our cash balances and marketable investments. If we are unable to liquidate our investments when we need liquidity for complementary acquisitions or for other business purposes, we may need to change or postpone such acquisitions or find alternative financing for them. We may seek additional funding through public or private financings, through sales of equity, or through other arrangements. Our ability to raise funds may be materially and adversely affected by a number of factors, including factors beyond our control, such as economic conditions in the markets in which we operate and increased uncertainty in the financial, capital, and credit markets. Adequate funds may not be available when needed or may not be available on favorable terms. If we raise additional funds by issuing equity securities, dilution to existing stockholders may result. If funding is insufficient at any time in the future, we may be unable, or delayed in our ability, to develop or enhance our products or services, take advantage of business opportunities, or respond to competitive pressures, any of which could materially harm our business.

OTHER RISKS

Our stock price has been highly volatile and such volatility may continue.

The trading price of our common stock has been highly volatile, and such volatility does not always correspond to fluctuations in the market. Between January 1, 2016 and December 31, 2017, our closing stock price ranged from $4.76 to $25.90. On February 21, 2018, the closing price of our common stock was $24.50. Our stock price could decline or fluctuate significantly in response to many factors, including the other risks discussed in this report and the following:

- actual or anticipated variations in quarterly and annual results of operations;
- impairment charges, changes in or loss of material contracts and relationships, dispositions or announcements of complementary acquisitions, or other business developments by us, our partners, or our competitors;
- conditions or trends in the tax preparation or wealth management markets or changes in market share;
- changes in general conditions in the United States and global economies or financial markets;
- announcements of technological innovations or new services by us or our competitors;
- changes in financial estimates or recommendations by securities analysts;
- disclosures of any accounting issues, such as restatements or material weaknesses in internal control over financial reporting;
- equity issuances resulting in the dilution of stockholders;
- the adoption of new regulations or accounting standards;
- adverse publicity (whether justified or not) with respect to our business; and
- announcements or publicity relating to litigation or governmental enforcement actions.

In addition, the equities market has experienced extreme price and volume fluctuations, and our stock has been particularly susceptible to such fluctuations. Often, class action litigation has been instituted against companies after periods of volatility in the price of such companies' stock. We have been defendants in such class action litigation in prior periods and could be subject to future litigation, potentially resulting in substantial cost and diversion of management's attention and resources.

Our financial results may fluctuate, which could cause our stock price to be volatile or decline.

Our financial results have varied on a quarterly basis and are likely to continue to fluctuate in the future. These fluctuations could cause our stock price to be volatile or decline. Many factors could cause our quarterly results to fluctuate materially, including but not limited to:

- the inability of any of our businesses to meet our expectations;
- the seasonality of our Tax Preparation business and the resulting large quarterly fluctuations in our revenues;
- the success or failure of our Strategic Transformation and our ability to implement those initiatives in a cost effective manner;
- variable demand for our services, rapidly evolving technologies and markets, and consumer preferences;
- the level and mix of assets we have under management and administration, which are subject to fluctuation based on market conditions and customer activity;
- the mix of revenues generated by existing businesses, discontinued operations or other businesses that we develop or acquire;
- gains or losses driven by fair value accounting;
- litigation expenses and settlement costs;

- misconduct by employees and/or HD Vest financial advisors, which is difficult to detect and deter;
- expenses incurred in finding, evaluating, negotiating, consummating, and integrating acquisitions;
- impairment or negative performance of the many different industries and counterparties we rely on and are exposed to;
- any restructuring charges we may incur;
- any economic downturn, which could result in lower acceptance rates on premium products and services offered by our Wealth Management business and impact the commissions and fee revenues of our financial advisory services;
- new court rulings, or the adoption of new or interpretation of existing laws, rules, or regulations, that adversely affect our business or that otherwise increase our potential liability or compliance costs;
- impairment in the value of long-lived assets or the value of acquired assets, including goodwill, technology, and acquired contracts and relationships; and
- the effect of changes in accounting principles or standards or in our accounting treatment of revenues or expenses.

For these reasons, among others, you should not rely on period-to-period comparisons of our financial results to forecast our future performance. Furthermore, our fluctuating operating results may fall below the expectations of securities analysts or investors and financial results volatility could make us less attractive to investors, either of which could cause the trading price of our stock to decline.

Our utilization of our net operating loss carryforwards ("NOLs") may be severely limited or potentially eliminated.

As of December 31, 2017, we had federal NOLs of $519.7 million that will expire primarily between 2020 and 2027, with the majority of them expiring between 2020 and 2024. We are currently able to offset all of our tax liabilities with our NOLs, but we don't expect to generate sufficient taxable income in future years to utilize all of our NOLs prior to their expiration. If our NOLs expire unused, their full benefit will not be achieved. In addition, in years where our income exceeds our NOLs, which we expect to begin occurring in 2022, we will be required to make additional income tax payments.

In addition, if we were to have a change of ownership within the meaning of Section 382 of the Internal Revenue Code (defined as a cumulative change of 50 percentage points or more in the ownership positions of certain stockholders owning five percent or more of a company's common stock over a three-year rolling period), then under certain conditions, the amount of NOLs we could use in any one year could be limited. Our certificate of incorporation imposes certain limited transfer restrictions on our common stock that we expect will assist us in preventing a change of ownership and preserving our NOLs, but there can be no assurance that these restrictions will be sufficient. In addition, other restrictions on our ability to use the NOLs may be triggered by a merger or acquisition, depending on the structure of such a transaction. It is our intention to limit the potential impact of these restrictions, but there can be no guarantee that such efforts will be successful.

If we are unable to use our NOLs before they expire, or if the use of this tax benefit is severely limited or eliminated, there could be a material reduction in the amount of after-tax income and cash flow from operations, and it could have an effect on our ability to engage in certain transactions.

Delaware law and our charter documents may impede or discourage a takeover, which could cause the market price of our shares to decline.

We are a Delaware corporation and the anti-takeover provisions of Delaware law impose various impediments to the ability of a third party to acquire us, even if a change of control would be beneficial to our existing stockholders. For example, Section 203 of the Delaware General Corporation Law may discourage, delay, or prevent a change in control by prohibiting us from engaging in a business combination with an interested stockholder for a period of three years after the person becomes an interested stockholder. In addition, our certificate of incorporation and bylaws contain provisions that may discourage, delay, or prevent a third party from acquiring us without the consent of our board of directors, even if doing so would be beneficial to our stockholders. Provisions of our charter documents that could have an anti-takeover effect include:

- the classification of our board of directors, which is being phased out between 2017 and 2020, into three groups so that directors serve staggered three-year terms, which may make it difficult for a potential acquirer to gain control of our board of directors;
- the requirement for super majority approval by stockholders for certain business combinations;
- the ability of our board of directors to authorize the issuance of shares of undesignated preferred stock without a vote by stockholders;
- the ability of our board of directors to amend or repeal our bylaws;
- limitations on the removal of directors;
- limitations on stockholders' ability to call special stockholder meetings;
- advance notice requirements for nominating candidates for election to our board of directors or for proposing matters that can be acted upon by stockholders at stockholder meetings; and

- certain restrictions in our charter on transfers of our common stock designed to preserve our federal NOLs.

At our 2009 annual meeting, our stockholders approved an amendment to our certificate of incorporation that restricts any person or entity from attempting to transfer our stock, without prior permission from the Board of Directors, to the extent that such transfer would (i) create or result in an individual or entity becoming a five-percent stockholder of our stock, or (ii) increase the stock ownership percentage of any existing five-percent stockholder. This amendment provides that any transfer that violates its provisions shall be null and void and would require the purported transferee to, upon our demand, transfer the shares that exceed the five percent limit to an agent designated by us for the purpose of conducting a sale of such excess shares. This provision in our certificate of incorporation may make the acquisition of Blucora more expensive to the acquirer and could significantly delay, discourage, or prevent third parties from acquiring Blucora without the approval of our board of directors.

ITEM 1B. Unresolved Staff Comments

None.

ITEM 2. Properties

All of our facilities are leased. We believe our properties are suitable and adequate for our present and anticipated near-term needs.

Our principal corporate office is located in Irving, Texas. The headquarters and data center facility for our HD Vest business, which comprises our Wealth Management segment, are in Irving, Texas, and we have a backup data center for our HD Vest business in Elk Grove, Illinois, as well as access to multiple disaster recovery and data centers across the country through a third party vendor. The headquarters and data center facility for our TaxAct business, which comprises our Tax Preparation segment, are in Cedar Rapids, Iowa, and we also use a cloud computing platform for disaster recovery.

ITEM 3. Legal Proceedings

See "Note 10: Commitments and Contingencies" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report for information regarding legal proceedings.

ITEM 4. Mine Safety Disclosures

None.

PART II

ITEM 5. Market for Registrant’s Common Equity, Related Stockholder Matters and Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities

Market for Our Common Stock

Our common stock trades on the NASDAQ Global Select Market under the symbol “BCOR.” The following table sets forth, for the periods indicated, the high and low sales prices for our common stock as reported by the NASDAQ Global Select Market.

	High	Low
Year ended December 31, 2017		
First Quarter	$ 18.00	$ 14.25
Second Quarter	$ 22.50	$ 16.65
Third Quarter	$ 25.95	$ 19.40
Fourth Quarter	$ 26.15	$ 19.05
Year ended December 31, 2016		
First Quarter	$ 10.11	$ 4.69
Second Quarter	$ 10.55	$ 4.96
Third Quarter	$ 13.03	$ 9.64
Fourth Quarter	$ 15.85	$ 10.98

On February 21, 2018, the last reported sale price for our common stock on the NASDAQ Global Select Market was $24.50 per share.

Holders

As of February 21, 2018, there were 373 holders of record of our common stock. A substantially greater number of holders are beneficial owners whose shares are held of record by banks, brokers, and other financial institutions.

Dividends

There were no dividends paid in 2017 and 2016.

Share Repurchases

See "Note 11: Stockholders' Equity" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report for additional information regarding the Company’s stock repurchase program that concluded in May 2016.

ITEM 6. Selected Financial Data

The following data are derived from our audited consolidated financial statements and should be read along with "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations" in Part II Item 7, our consolidated financial statements and notes in Part II Item 8, and other financial information included elsewhere in this report.

	Years ended December 31,				
	2017	2016	2015	2014	2013
Consolidated Statements of Operations Data: (1)	(In thousands, except per share data)				
Revenue:					
Wealth management services revenue	$ 348,620	$ 316,546	$ —	$ —	$ —
Tax preparation services revenue	160,937	139,365	117,708	103,719	91,213
Total revenue	509,557	455,911	117,708	103,719	91,213
Operating income (loss)	48,037	37,117	(4,807)	4,603	(3,478)
Other loss, net	(44,551)	(39,781)	(12,542)	(13,489)	(29,568)
Income (loss) from continuing operations before income taxes	3,486	(2,664)	(17,349)	(8,886)	(33,046)
Income tax benefit	25,890	1,285	4,623	3,342	7,385
Income (loss) from continuing operations	29,376	(1,379)	(12,726)	(5,544)	(25,661)
Discontinued operations, net of income taxes (2)	—	(63,121)	(27,348)	(30,003)	50,060
Net income (loss)	29,376	(64,500)	(40,074)	(35,547)	24,399
Net income attributable to noncontrolling interests	(2,337)	(658)	—	—	—
Net income (loss) attributable to Blucora, Inc.	$ 27,039	$ (65,158)	$ (40,074)	$ (35,547)	$ 24,399
Net income (loss) per share attributable to Blucora, Inc. - basic:					
Continuing operations	$ 0.61	$ (0.05)	$ (0.31)	$ (0.13)	$ (0.62)
Discontinued operations	—	(1.52)	(0.67)	(0.73)	1.21
Basic net income (loss) per share	$ 0.61	$ (1.57)	$ (0.98)	$ (0.86)	$ 0.59
Weighted average shares outstanding, basic	44,370	41,494	40,959	41,396	41,201
Net income (loss) per share attributable to Blucora, Inc. - diluted:					
Continuing operations	$ 0.57	$ (0.05)	$ (0.31)	$ (0.13)	$ (0.62)
Discontinued operations	—	(1.52)	(0.67)	(0.73)	1.21
Diluted net income (loss) per share	$ 0.57	$ (1.57)	$ (0.98)	$ (0.86)	$ 0.59
Weighted average shares outstanding, diluted	47,211	41,494	40,959	41,396	41,201
Consolidated Balance Sheet Data: (1)					
Cash, cash equivalents, and investments	$ 59,965	$ 58,814	$ 66,774	$ 293,588	$ 323,429
Working capital (2) (3) (4)	47,641	43,480	174,571	299,431	140,100
Total assets	1,001,671	1,022,659	1,299,548	865,775	969,677
Total long-term liabilities (2) (3) (4) (5)	390,495	535,577	656,122	311,692	171,268
Total stockholders' equity	541,387	417,019	462,284	479,025	514,070

(1) On December 31, 2015, we acquired HD Vest. See "Note 3: Business Combinations" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report.

(2) On October 14, 2015, we announced plans to divest the Search and Content and E-Commerce businesses. Accordingly, the operating results of these businesses have been presented as discontinued operations for all periods presented, and the related balance sheet data have been classified in their entirety within current assets and current liabilities as of December 31, 2015 but classified within current and long-term assets and liabilities, as appropriate, for prior periods. We sold the Search and Content business and the E-Commerce business on August 9, 2016 and November 17, 2016, respectively.

(3) During 2016 and 2015, the Convertible Senior Notes (the "Notes") were classified as a long-term liability with an outstanding balance, net of discount and issuance costs, of $164.2 million, and $185.9 million, respectively. The Notes

were classified as a current liability in 2013. See "Note 9: Debt" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report.

(4) See "Note 4: Discontinued Operations" and "Note 9: Debt" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report for a discussion of debt activity.

(5) During 2013, the Monoprice acquisition resulted in a $27.7 million deferred tax liability related to intangible assets.

ITEM 7. Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations

You should read the following discussion and analysis in conjunction with the Selected Financial Data and our consolidated financial statements and notes thereto included elsewhere in this report. The following discussion contains forward-looking statements that are subject to risks and uncertainties. See Part I "Cautionary Statement Regarding Forward-Looking Statements" for a discussion of the uncertainties, risks and assumptions associated with those statements. Actual results could differ materially from those discussed in or implied by forward-looking statements as a result of various factors, including those discussed below and elsewhere in this report, particularly in the section titled "Risk Factors."

Introduction

Blucora operates two businesses: a Wealth Management business and an online Tax Preparation business. The Wealth Management business consists of the operations of HD Vest, which we acquired on December 31, 2015. HD Vest is included in Blucora's results of operations beginning on January 1, 2016. HD Vest provides wealth management solutions for financial advisors and their clients. The Tax Preparation business consists of the operations of TaxAct and provides digital tax preparation solutions for consumers, small business owners, and tax professionals.

Prior to 2017, Blucora also operated an internet Search and Content business and an E-Commerce business. The Search and Content business, InfoSpace, operated a number of digital businesses in search, directory, online commerce, media, and mobile infrastructure markets, with operations since 2008 focusing on internet search services and content. The E-Commerce business consisted of the operations of Monoprice and sold self-branded electronics and accessories to both consumers and businesses.

Strategic Transformation

On October 14, 2015, the Company announced its plans to focus on the technology-enabled financial solutions market. Strategic Transformation refers to the Company's transformation into a technology-enabled financial solutions company comprised of TaxAct and HD Vest (see "Note 3: Business Combinations") and the divestitures of the Search and Content and E-Commerce businesses in 2016 (see "Note 4: Discontinued Operations"). As part of the Strategic Transformation and "One Company" operating model, the Company announced on October 27, 2016 plans to relocate its corporate headquarters by June 2017 from Bellevue, Washington to Irving, Texas. In connection with this plan, we have incurred restructuring costs of approximately $7.0 million. These costs are recorded within corporate-level activity for segment purposes. See "Note 5: Restructuring" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report for additional information. We also have incurred costs that were not included as restructuring, such as recruiting and overlap in personnel expenses as we transition positions to Texas (***"Strategic Transformation Costs"***). The actions to relocate corporate headquarters were intended to drive efficiencies and improve operational effectiveness (see "Note 5: Restructuring"). The restructuring is now substantially complete and it is expected to be completed by early 2018. For a discussion of the associated risks, see the section in our Risk Factors (Part I Item 1A. of this report) under the heading "Risks Associated With our Business."

Acquisitions: On December 31, 2015, we acquired HD Vest for $613.7 million, including cash acquired of $38.9 million and after a $1.8 million final working capital adjustment in the first quarter of 2016. The acquisition was funded by a combination of cash on hand and the TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facility, under which we borrowed $400.0 million (the "TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facility"). During the last half of 2015, we incurred transaction costs of $11.0 million.

On July 2, 2015, TaxAct acquired SimpleTax, a provider of online tax preparation services for individuals in Canada through its website www.simpletax.ca, for cash and additional consideration of up to $3.7 million that is contingent upon product availability and revenue performance over a three-year period.

See "Note 3: Business Combinations" and "Note 9: Debt" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report for additional information on the HD Vest acquisition, the SimpleTax acquisition, and the credit facility, respectively.

Business divestitures: On October 14, 2015, we announced plans to divest the Search and Content and E-Commerce businesses. Accordingly, our financial condition, results of operations, and cash flows reflect the Search and Content and E-Commerce businesses as discontinued operations for all periods presented. Unless otherwise specified, disclosures in "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations" reflect continuing operations.

We completed both divestitures in 2016. Specifically, on November 17, 2016, we closed on an agreement with YFC, under which YFC acquired the E-Commerce business for $40.5 million, which included a working capital adjustment. Of this amount, $39.5 million was received in the fourth quarter of 2016 and the remaining $1.0 million was received in the first half of 2017. On August 9, 2016, we closed on an agreement with OpenMail, under which OpenMail acquired substantially all of the assets and assumed certain specified liabilities of the Search and Content business for $45.2 million, which included a working capital adjustment. We used all of the proceeds from these sales to pay down debt. We also incurred employee-related business exit costs of approximately $4.5 million, which primarily were recorded in discontinued operations. See "Note 4: Discontinued Operations" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report for additional information on discontinued operations.

Our Continuing Businesses

Wealth Management

Our Wealth Management business provides financial advisors, who affiliate with HD Vest's registered broker-dealer investment adviser and/or insurance subsidiaries as independent contractors, an integrated, open platform that includes a broad variety of products offered through our brokerage, investment advisory, and insurance services to assist in making each financial advisor a financial service center for his/her clients. We regularly review the commissions and fees we charge for these products and services in light of the evolving regulatory and competitive environment and changes in client preferences and needs. We do not offer any proprietary products. HD Vest generates revenue primarily through commissions, quarterly investment advisory fees based on assets under management, and other fees.

HD Vest was founded to help tax and accounting professionals integrate financial services into their practices. HD Vest primarily recruits independent tax professionals with established tax practices and offers specialized training and support, which allows them to join the HD Vest platform as independent financial advisors. HD Vest's business model provides an open-architecture investment platform and technology tools to help financial advisors identify investment opportunities for their clients, while the long-standing tax advisory relationships provide a large client base of possible investment clients. This results in an experienced and stable network of financial advisors, who have multiple revenue-generating options to diversify their earnings sources. HD Vest also has a highly experienced home office team that is focused on solutions tailored to the advisor's practice. The home office team provides marketing, practice management, insurance and annuity, wealth management, succession planning, and other support to our advisors.

Our Wealth Management business is directly and indirectly sensitive to several macroeconomic factors and the state of financial markets, particularly in the United States. For additional information regarding the potential impact of these macroeconomic factors on our operations and results, see the Risk Factors "*Changes in domestic and international economic, political and other factors could have a Material Adverse Effect on our business*" in Part I Item 1A of this report.

Our Wealth Management business is subject to certain additional financial industry regulations and supervision, including by the SEC, FINRA, DOL, state securities and insurance regulators, and other regulatory authorities. For additional information regarding the potential impact of governmental regulation on our operations and results, see the Risk Factor "*Government regulation of our business, including increased regulation or the interpretation of existing laws, rules or regulations, could have a Material Adverse Effect*" and "*Our Wealth Management business is subject to extensive regulation, and failure to comply with these regulations could have a Material Adverse Effect*" in Part I Item 1A of this report.

Tax Preparation

Our Tax Preparation business provides DDIY tax preparation solutions for consumers and small business owners, and preparation software for tax professionals. TaxAct generates revenue primarily through its online service at www.TaxAct.com. The Company and its subsidiaries file income tax returns in the U.S. federal jurisdiction, various state jurisdictions and Canada.

TaxAct's offerings come with a price lock guarantee, whereby the price at the start of the tax return filing process is the price when the return is filed, rather than pricing the offering at the time that the tax return is filed. We believe this price lock guarantee ensures price transparency and differentiates TaxAct from its competitors.

We had three offerings for consumers for tax year 2016, which is the basis for TaxAct's 2017 operating results: a "free" federal and state edition that handled simple returns; a "plus" offering that contained all of the basic offering features in addition to tools to maximize credits and deductions, and enhanced reporting; and a "premium" offering that contained all of the plus offering features in addition to tools for self-employed individuals to maximize credits and deductions. For our offerings, state returns can be filed for free for free simple filers, or through the separately-sold state edition. We also had an offering for small business owners. In addition to these core offerings, TaxAct also offers ancillary services such as refund payment transfer, audit defense, stored value cards, and retirement investment accounts through HD Vest, and a marketplace for customers to take advantage of personalized tax and financial savings opportunities through third party product providers.

TaxAct's professional tax preparer software allows professional tax preparers to file individual and business returns for their clients. TaxAct offers flexible pricing and packaging options that help tax professionals save money by paying only for what they need.

Seasonality

Our Tax Preparation segment is highly seasonal, with a significant portion of its annual revenue earned in the first four months of our fiscal year. During the third and fourth quarters, the Tax Preparation segment typically reports losses because revenue from the segment is minimal while core operating expenses continue. We anticipate that the seasonal nature of that part of the business will continue in the foreseeable future.

RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

Summary

(In thousands, except percentages)	Years ended December 31,							
		2017	Percentage Change		2016	Percentage Change		2015
Revenue	$	509,557	12%	$	455,911	287%	$	117,708
Operating income (loss)	$	48,037	29%	$	37,117	872%	$	(4,807)

Year ended December 31, 2017 compared with year ended December 31, 2016

Revenue increased approximately $53.6 million due to increases of $32.1 million and $21.6 million in revenue related to our Wealth Management and Tax Preparation businesses, respectively, as discussed in the following "Segment Revenue/ Operating Income" section.

Operating income increased approximately $10.9 million, consisting of the $53.6 million increase in revenue and offset by a $42.7 million increase in operating expenses. Key changes in operating expenses were:

- $27.5 million increase in the Wealth Management segment's operating expenses due to higher commissions paid to our financial advisors, which fluctuated in proportion to the change in underlying commission and advisory revenues earned on client accounts, and higher net personnel expenses as we continue to standardize employee benefits across our businesses.

- $15.5 million increase in the Tax Preparation segment's operating expenses, primarily due to higher spending on marketing, higher professional services fees mostly related to marketing and development projects, higher data center costs related to software support and maintenance fees, increases in growth initiative investments, and higher personnel expenses.

- $0.3 million decrease in corporate-level expense activity primarily due to lower stock-based compensation costs due to fewer grants in the current year and higher expense recognized in the prior year related to grants made to HD Vest employees in 2016 in connection with the HD Vest acquisition, partially offset by activity within our Tax Preparation business due to prior forfeitures, and lower personnel costs, both offset by Strategic Transformation Costs.

- Segment results are discussed in the next section.

Year ended December 31, 2016 compared with year ended December 31, 2015

Revenue increased approximately $338.2 million due to increases of $316.5 million and $21.7 million in revenue related to our Wealth Management and Tax Preparation businesses, respectively. Wealth Management revenue increased due to the timing of the HD Vest acquisition, and Tax Preparation revenue increased as discussed in the following "Segment Revenue/ Operating Income" section.

Operating income increased approximately $41.9 million, consisting of the $338.2 million increase in revenue and offset by a $296.3 million increase in operating expenses. Key changes in operating expenses were:

- $270.3 million increase in the Wealth Management segment's operating expenses due to the timing of the HD Vest acquisition.
- $11.7 million increase in the Tax Preparation segment's operating expenses, primarily due to higher spending on marketing, higher personnel expenses resulting from overall increased headcount supporting most functions, higher data center costs mostly related to third-party technology fees (software support and maintenance, bandwidth and hosting, and professional services), higher third-party costs associated with additional features in the current year offerings, and an increase in professional services fees mostly related to development projects.
- $14.3 million increase in corporate-level expense activity, primarily due to (i) higher amortization expense related to HD Vest acquisition-related intangible assets, (ii) higher stock-based compensation mainly related to a net increase in stock award grants (including to HD Vest employees), (iii) restructuring incurred in connection with the relocation of our corporate headquarters, (iv) higher depreciation expense mainly related to HD Vest fixed assets, and (v) higher personnel expenses resulting mainly from increased costs incurred as part of our Strategic Transformation, offset by (vi) lower acquisition-related costs due to professional services fees and other direct transaction costs incurred in the prior year related to the HD Vest acquisition, (vii) lower amortization expense associated with concluding the useful life of certain TaxAct acquisition-related intangible assets during 2016, and (viii) separation-related costs incurred in the prior year in connection with the departure of our former chief executive officer.

Segment results are discussed in the next section.

SEGMENT REVENUE/OPERATING INCOME

The revenue and operating income amounts in this section are presented on a basis consistent with accounting principles generally accepted in the U.S. (***"GAAP"***) and include certain reconciling items attributable to the segments. Segment information appearing in "Note 13: Segment Information" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report is presented on a basis consistent with our current internal management financial reporting. We do not allocate certain general and administrative costs (including personnel and overhead costs), stock-based compensation, acquisition-related costs, depreciation, amortization of acquired intangible assets, restructuring, other loss, net, and income taxes to segment operating results. We analyze these separately.

Following the acquisition of HD Vest and the discontinued operations treatment of Search and Content and E-Commerce, we have two reportable segments: Wealth Management and Tax Preparation.

Wealth Management

(In thousands, except percentages)	Years ended December 31,		
	2017	Percentage Change	2016
Revenue	$ 348,620	10%	$ 316,546
Operating income	$ 50,916	10%	$ 46,296
Segment margin	15%	—%	15%

Wealth Management revenue is derived from multiple sources. We track sources of revenue, primary drivers of each revenue source, and recurring revenue. In addition, we focus on several business and key financial metrics in evaluating the success of our business relationships and our resulting financial position and operating performance. A summary of our sources of revenue and business metrics are as follows.

Sources of revenue

(In thousands, except percentages)			**Year ended December 31,**		
	Sources of Revenue	**Primary Drivers**	**2017**	**Percentage Change**	**2016**
Advisor-driven	Commission	- Transactions - Asset levels	$160,241	7%	$150,125
	Advisory	- Advisory asset levels	145,694	13%	129,417
Other revenue	Asset-based	- Cash balances - Interest rates - Number of accounts - Client asset levels	26,297	16%	22,653
	Transaction and fee	- Account activity - Number of clients - Number of advisors - Number of accounts	16,388	14%	14,351
	Total revenue		$348,620	10%	$316,546
	Total recurring revenue		$277,546	11%	$249,310
	Recurring revenue rate		79.6%		78.8%

Recurring revenue consists of trailing commissions, advisory fees, fees from cash sweep programs, and certain transaction and fee revenue, all as described further below in *Commission revenue*, *Advisory revenue*, *Asset-based revenue*, and *Transaction and fee revenue*, respectively. Certain recurring revenues are associated with asset balances and will fluctuate depending on market values and current interest rates. Accordingly, our recurring revenue can be negatively impacted by adverse external market conditions. However, recurring revenue is meaningful despite these fluctuations because it is not dependent upon transaction volumes or other activity-based revenues, which are more difficult to predict, particularly in declining or volatile markets.

Business metrics

(In thousands, except percentages and as otherwise indicated)	**Years ended December 31,**		
	2017	**Percentage Change**	**2016**
Total Assets Under Administration (“AUA”)	$ 44,178,710	14 %	$ 38,663,595
Advisory Assets Under Management (“AUM”)	$ 12,530,165	21 %	$ 10,397,071
Percentage of total AUA	28.4%		26.9%
Number of advisors (in ones)	3,999	(11)%	4,472
Advisor-driven revenue per advisor	20.4	25 %	16.3

Total assets under administration (***"AUA"***) includes assets that we hold directly or indirectly on behalf of clients under a safekeeping or custody arrangement or for which we provide administrative services for clients. To the extent that we provide more than one AUA service for a client’s assets, the value of the asset is only counted once in the total amount of AUA. AUA assets include Advisory Assets under Management, non-advisory brokerage accounts, annuities and mutual fund positions held directly with fund companies. These assets are not reported on the consolidated balance sheets.

Advisory assets under management (***"AUM"***) includes external client assets for which we provide investment advisory and management services, typically as a fiduciary under the Investment Advisers Act of 1940. Our compensation for providing such services is typically a fee based on the value of the AUM for each advisory client. These assets are not reported on the consolidated balance sheets.

As we reduce disengaged advisors, the number of advisors could continue to decrease before stabilizing. This decrease could improve the growth in advisor-driven revenues per advisor, prior to advisor stabilization.

Year ended December 31, 2017 compared with year ended December 31, 2016

Wealth Management revenue increased approximately $32.1 million by each source of revenue discussed below.

Wealth Management operating income increased approximately $4.6 million, consisting of the $32.1 million increase in revenue, offset by a $27.5 million increase in operating expenses. The increase in Wealth Management operating expenses was primarily due to higher commissions paid to our financial advisors, which fluctuated in proportion to the change in underlying commission and advisory revenues earned on client accounts, and higher net personnel expenses as we continue to standardize employee benefits across our businesses.

Year ended December 31, 2016 compared with year ended December 31, 2015

On December 31, 2015, we acquired HD Vest., which is included in Blucora's results of operations as of January 1, 2016.

Commission revenue: We generate two types of commissions: transaction-based sales commissions and trailing commissions. Transaction-based sales commissions, which occur when clients trade securities or purchase investment products, represent gross commissions generated by our financial advisors. The level of transaction-based sales commissions can vary from period-to-period based on the overall economic environment, number of trading days in the reporting period, and investment activity of our financial advisors' clients. We earn trailing commissions (a commission or fee that is paid periodically over time) on certain mutual funds and variable annuities held by clients. Trailing commissions are recurring in nature and are based on the market value of investment holdings in trail-eligible assets. Our commission revenue, by product category and by sales-based and trailing, was as follows:

(In thousands)	Years ended December 31,		
	2017	Percentage Change	2016
By product category:			
Mutual funds	$ 84,159	6%	$ 79,476
Variable annuities	51,385	8%	47,641
Insurance	13,146	10%	11,909
General securities	11,551	4%	11,099
Total commission revenue	$ 160,241	7%	$ 150,125
By sales-based and trailing:			
Sales-based	$ 68,199	6%	$ 64,452
Trailing	92,042	7%	85,673
Total commission revenue	$ 160,241	7%	$ 150,125

In 2017, sales-based commission revenue increased approximately $3.7 million primarily due to increased activity in mutual funds, insurance and general securities resulting from overall market performance, portfolio rebalancings, product availability and segment refocusing. General securities include equities, exchange-traded funds, bonds and alternative investments.

In 2017, trailing commission revenue increased approximately $6.4 million and reflects an increase in the market value of the underlying assets and the impact of new investments.

Advisory revenue: Advisory revenue primarily includes fees charged to clients in advisory accounts where HD Vest is the Registered Investment Adviser (***"RIA"***) and is based on the value of AUM. Advisory fees are typically billed to clients quarterly, in advance, and are recognized as revenue ratably during the quarter. The value of the assets in an advisory account on the billing date determines the amount billed and, accordingly, the revenues earned in the following three-month period. The majority of our accounts are billed in advance using values as of the last business day of the prior calendar quarter.

The activity within our AUM was as follows:

(In thousands)	Year ended December 31,	
	2017	2016
Balance, beginning of the period	$ 10,397,071	$ 9,692,244
Net increase in new advisory assets	794,184	150,701
Market impact and other	1,338,910	554,126
Balance, end of the period	$ 12,530,165	$ 10,397,071

Increases or decreases in advisory assets have a limited impact on advisory fee revenue in the period in which they occur. Rather, increases or decreases in advisory assets are a primary driver of future advisory fee revenue. Advisory revenue for a particular quarter is predominately driven by the prior quarter-end AUM.

In 2017, the increase in advisory revenue of approximately $16.3 million is consistent with the increase in the beginning-of-period AUM for 2017 compared with 2016.

Asset-based revenue: Asset-based revenue primarily includes fees from financial product manufacturer sponsorship programs and cash sweep programs.

In 2017, asset-based revenue increased $3.6 million, primarily from higher cash sweep revenues following increases in interest rates. In the current interest rate environment, and through our current clearing provider, we will not benefit from any future interest rate increases. We expect the 2018 transition of our clearing business to a new clearing firm to provide growth opportunities in asset-based revenues.

Transaction and fee revenue: Transaction and fee revenue primarily includes fees for executing certain transactions in client accounts and fees related to services provided and other account charges as generally outlined in agreements with financial advisors, clients, and financial institutions.

In 2017, transaction and fee revenue increased approximately $2.0 million primarily related to advisor fee increases.

Tax Preparation

(In thousands, except percentages)	Years ended December 31,				
	2017	Percentage Change	2016	Percentage Change	2015
Revenue	$ 160,937	15%	$ 139,365	18%	$ 117,708
Operating income	$ 72,921	9%	$ 66,897	17%	$ 56,984
Segment margin	45%		48%		48%

Tax Preparation revenue is derived primarily from sales of our consumer tax preparation software and online services as well as other offerings and ancillary services to consumers and small business owners. We also generate revenue through the professional tax preparer software that we sell to professional tax preparers who use it to prepare and file individual and business returns for their clients.

Revenue by category was as follows:

(In thousands, except percentages)	Years ended December 31,				
	2017	Percentage Change	2016	Percentage Change	2015
Consumer	$ 147,084	16%	$ 126,289	20%	$ 105,367
Professional	13,853	6%	13,076	6%	12,341
Total revenue	$ 160,937	15%	$ 139,365	18%	$ 117,708

We measure our consumer tax preparation customers using the number of accepted federal tax e-files made through our software and online services. We consider growth in the number of e-files to be the most important non-financial metric in measuring the performance of the consumer side of the Tax Preparation business. E-file metrics were as follows:

(In thousands, except percentages)	Years ended December 31,				
	2017	Percentage Change	2016	Percentage Change	2015
Online e-files	4,097	(14)%	4,759	(9)%	5,235
Desktop e-files	193	(21)%	244	(11)%	273
Sub-total e-files	4,290	(14)%	5,003	(9)%	5,508
Free File Alliance e-files [1]	176	5 %	167	(8)%	181
Total e-files	4,466	(14)%	5,170	(9)%	5,689

(1) Free File Alliance e-files are provided as part of an IRS partnership that provides free electronic tax filing services to taxpayers meeting certain income-based guidelines.

We measure our professional tax preparer customers using three metrics--the number of accepted federal tax e-files made through our software, the number of units sold, and the number of e-files per unit sold. We consider growth in these areas to be the most important non-financial metrics in measuring the performance of the professional tax preparer side of the Tax Preparation business. Those metrics were as follows:

(In thousands, except percentages and as otherwise indicated)	Years ended December 31,				
	2017	Percentage Change	2016	Percentage Change	2015
E-files	1,774	1 %	1,755	10%	1,590
Units sold (in ones)	20,694	2 %	20,290	5%	19,355
E-files per unit sold (in ones)	85.7	(1)%	86.5	5%	82.2

Year ended December 31, 2017 compared with year ended December 31, 2016

Tax Preparation revenue increased approximately $21.6 million primarily due to growth in revenue earned from online consumer users and, to a lesser extent, increased sales of our professional tax preparer software. Online consumer revenue grew, despite a decrease in e-files, due to growth in average revenue per user, primarily resulting from price increases, which are expected to continue to be the primary driver of growth in the near future. The decrease in e-files is consistent with our expectations as we are in the early stages of a multi-year pivot toward profitable customers. Revenue derived from professional tax preparers increased primarily due to an increase in the number of professional preparer units sold.

Tax Preparation operating income increased approximately $6.0 million, consisting of the $21.6 million increase in revenue and offset by a $15.5 million increase in operating expenses. The increase in Tax Preparation segment operating expenses was primarily due to higher spending on marketing, higher professional services fees mostly related to marketing and development projects, higher data center costs related to software support and maintenance fees, increases in growth initiative investments, and higher personnel expenses.

Year ended December 31, 2016 compared with year ended December 31, 2015

Tax Preparation revenue increased approximately $21.7 million primarily due to growth in revenue earned from online consumer users, increased sales of ancillary services, and increased sales of our professional tax preparer software. Online consumer revenue grew, despite a decrease in e-files, due to growth in average revenue per user, primarily resulting from the re-packaging of our offerings and related price increases for tax year 2015. Revenue derived from professional tax preparers increased, primarily due to an increase in the number of professional preparer units sold.

Tax Preparation operating income increased approximately $9.9 million, consisting of the $21.7 million increase in revenue and offset by an $11.7 million increase in operating expenses. The increase in Tax Preparation segment operating expenses primarily was due to increased spending on marketing, an increase in personnel expenses resulting from overall higher headcount supporting most functions, increased data center costs mostly related to third-party technology fees (software support and maintenance, bandwidth and hosting, and professional services), increased third-party costs associated with additional features in the current year offerings, and an increase in professional services fees mostly related to development projects.

Corporate-Level Activity

(In thousands)	Years ended December 31,				
	2017	Change	2016	Change	2015
Operating expenses	$ 22,907	$ 3,908	$ 18,999	$ 1,249	$ 17,750
Stock-based compensation	11,653	(2,475)	14,128	5,434	8,694
Acquisition-related costs	—	(391)	391	(10,597)	10,988
CEO separation-related costs	—	—	—	(1,769)	1,769
Depreciation	4,137	(408)	4,545	2,258	2,287
Amortization of acquired intangible assets	34,002	(141)	34,143	13,840	20,303
Restructuring	3,101	(769)	3,870	3,870	—
Total corporate-level activity	$ 75,800	$ (276)	$ 76,076	$ 14,285	$ 61,791

Certain corporate-level activity is not allocated to our segments, including certain general and administrative costs (including personnel and overhead costs), stock-based compensation, acquisition-related costs, separation-related costs related to the departure of our CEO in 2016, depreciation, amortization of acquired intangible assets, and restructuring. For further detail, refer to segment information appearing in "Note 13: Segment Information" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report.

Year ended December 31, 2017 compared with year ended December 31, 2016

Operating expenses included in corporate-level activity increased primarily due to Strategic Transformation Costs and costs associated with leadership changes at HD Vest. Strategic Transformation Costs primarily related to the relocation cost of our corporate headquarters and are not classified as restructuring. These costs are associated with transitioning of roles such as overlap in staffing and recruiting search fees.

Stock-based compensation decreased primarily due to fewer grants in the current year and higher expense recognized in the prior year related to grants made to HD Vest employees in 2016 that were made in connection with the HD Vest acquisition, partially offset by activity within our Tax Preparation business due to prior forfeitures.

Acquisition-related costs, depreciation and amortization of acquired intangible assets were comparable to the prior period.

Restructuring relates to expenses incurred in connection with the relocation of our corporate headquarters in 2017. Further detail is provided under the "Operating Expenses - Restructuring" section of the management's discussion and analysis of financial condition and results of operations below.

Year ended December 31, 2016 compared with year ended December 31, 2015

Operating expenses included in corporate-level activity increased primarily due to a $1.3 million net increase in personnel expenses, mainly due to Strategic Transformation costs, which primarily consisted of recruiting fees in connection with the move of our headquarters, offset by lower headcount.

Stock-based compensation increased primarily due to a net increase in stock award grants (including to HD Vest employees in connection with the HD Vest acquisition).

Acquisition-related costs include professional services fees and other direct transaction costs and changes in the fair value of contingent consideration liabilities related to acquired companies. The decrease relates to professional services fees and other direct transaction costs incurred in 2016 related to the HD Vest acquisition, offset by changes in the fair value of the SimpleTax contingent consideration liability, which was revalued in the second quarter of 2016.

On October 14, 2015, we announced the departure of our former chief executive officer. His departure became effective March 31, 2016. In conjunction with that 2015 announcement, we recorded $1.8 million of separation-related costs in 2015, most of which were pursuant to his employment agreement and were paid in April 2016.

Depreciation increased primarily due to depreciation expense on HD Vest fixed assets.

Amortization of acquired intangible assets increased primarily due to amortization expense on HD Vest acquisition-related intangible assets, offset by lower amortization expense associated with concluding the useful life of certain TaxAct acquisition-related intangible assets during 2016.

Restructuring relates to expenses incurred in connection with the relocation of our corporate headquarters in 2017. Further detail is provided under the "Operating Expenses - Restructuring" section of the management's discussion and analysis of financial condition and results of operations below.

OPERATING EXPENSES

Cost of Revenue

(In thousands, except percentages)	Years ended December 31,				
	2017	Change	2016	Change	2015
Wealth management services cost of revenue	$ 235,859	$ 21,863	$ 213,996	$ 213,996	$ —
Tax preparation services cost of revenue	10,018	1,650	8,368	2,201	6,167
Amortization of acquired technology	195	(617)	812	(6,734)	7,546
Total cost of revenue	$ 246,072	$ 22,896	$ 223,176	$ 209,463	$ 13,713
Percentage of revenue	48%		49%		12%

We record the cost of revenue for sales of services when the related revenue is recognized. Services cost of revenue consists of costs related to our Wealth Management and Tax Preparation businesses, which include commissions to financial advisors, third-party costs, and costs associated with the technical support team and the operation of our data centers. Data center costs include personnel expenses (salaries, stock-based compensation, benefits, and other employee-related costs), the cost of temporary help and contractors, professional services fees (which include technology project consulting fees), software support and maintenance, bandwidth and hosting costs, and depreciation. Cost of revenue also includes the amortization of acquired technology.

Year ended December 31, 2017 compared with year ended December 31, 2016

Wealth management services cost of revenue increased primarily due to an increase in commissions paid to our financial advisors, which fluctuated in proportion to the change in underlying commission and advisory revenues earned on client accounts, and higher stock-based compensation costs related to grants to certain HD Vest financial advisors made during 2017.

Tax preparation services cost of revenue increased primarily due to an increase in data center costs related to software support and maintenance fees.

Amortization of acquired technology decreased due to amortization expense associated with concluding the useful life of certain TaxAct acquisition-related intangible assets during 2016.

Year ended December 31, 2016 compared with year ended December 31, 2015

Wealth management services cost of revenue increased due to the timing of the HD Vest acquisition.

Tax preparation services cost of revenue increased primarily due to higher data center costs mostly related to third-party technology fees (software support and maintenance, bandwidth and hosting, and professional services) and higher third-party costs associated with additional features in the current year offerings.

Amortization of acquired technology decreased due to amortization expense associated with concluding the useful life of certain TaxAct acquisition-related intangible assets during 2016.

Engineering and Technology

(In thousands, except percentages)	Years ended December 31,				
	2017	Change	2016	Change	2015
Engineering and technology	$ 19,614	$ 1,834	$ 17,780	$ 12,673	$ 5,107
Percentage of revenue	4%		4%		4%

Engineering and technology expenses are associated with the research, development, support, and ongoing enhancements of our offerings, which include personnel expenses (salaries, stock-based compensation, benefits, and other employee-related costs), the cost of temporary help and contractors, software support and maintenance, bandwidth and hosting, and professional services fees.

Year ended December 31, 2017 compared with year ended December 31, 2016

Engineering and technology expenses increased primarily due to an increase in consulting and professional services fees, mostly related to Tax Preparation development projects.

Year ended December 31, 2016 compared with year ended December 31, 2015

Engineering and technology expenses increased, and $8.7 million of this increase was attributable to HD Vest (excluding stock-based compensation) and related to the timing of the HD Vest acquisition. The remaining increase primarily was due to a $3.1 million increase in personnel expenses, mainly related to higher headcount in our Tax Preparation business and higher stock-based compensation due to an increase in stock award grants (including to HD Vest employees), and, to a lesser extent, an increase in professional services fees mostly related to Tax Preparation development projects.

Sales and Marketing

(In thousands, except percentages)	Years ended December 31,				
	2017	Change	2016	Change	2015
Sales and marketing	$ 102,798	$ 13,438	$ 89,360	$ 43,506	$ 45,854
Percentage of revenue	20%		20%		39%

Sales and marketing expenses consist principally of personnel expenses (salaries, stock-based compensation, benefits, and other employee-related costs) and the cost of temporary help and contractors for those engaged in marketing, selling, and sales support operations activities, marketing expenses associated with our HD Vest and TaxAct businesses (which primarily include television, radio, online, text, email, and sponsorship channels), and back office processing support expenses associated with our HD Vest business (occupancy and general office expenses, regulatory fees, and license fees).

Year ended December 31, 2017 compared with year ended December 31, 2016

Sales and marketing expenses increased primarily due to a $7.8 million increase in marketing expenses and a $3.8 million increase in personnel expenses. The increase in marketing expenses was driven by increased marketing in our Tax Preparation business. Personnel expenses increased primarily due to the standardization of employee benefits across our businesses.

Year ended December 31, 2016 compared with year ended December 31, 2015

Sales and marketing expenses increased, and $34.9 million of this increase was attributable to HD Vest (excluding stock-based compensation) and related to the timing of the HD Vest acquisition. The remaining increase primarily was due to a $5.6 million increase in marketing expenses and a $2.8 million increase in personnel expenses. The increase in marketing expenses was driven by increased marketing in our Tax Preparation business. Personnel expenses increased primarily due to higher stock-based compensation with an increase in stock award grants (including to HD Vest employees) and higher headcount in our Tax Preparation business.

General and Administrative

(In thousands, except percentages)	Years ended December 31,				
	2017	Change	2016	Change	2015
General and administrative	$ 52,668	$ 5,272	$ 47,396	$ 3,833	$ 43,563
Percentage of revenue	10%		10%		37%

General and administrative (***"G&A"***) expenses consist primarily of personnel expenses (salaries, stock-based compensation, benefits, and other employee-related costs), the cost of temporary help and contractors, professional services fees (which include legal, audit, and tax fees), general business development and management expenses, occupancy and general office expenses, business taxes, and insurance expenses.

Year ended December 31, 2017 compared with year ended December 31, 2016

G&A expenses increased primarily due to a $4.9 million net increase in personnel expenses, mainly related to Strategic Transformation Costs and costs associated with leadership changes at HD Vest, offset by lower stock-based compensation due to fewer grants in the current year and higher expense recognized in the prior year related to the timing of grants.

Year ended December 31, 2016 compared with year ended December 31, 2015

G&A expenses increased, and $12.7 million of this increase was attributable to HD Vest (excluding stock-based compensation) and related to the timing of the HD Vest acquisition. There also was a $1.6 million net increase in personnel expenses. This net increase in personnel expenses included higher stock-based compensation, mainly related to a net increase in stock award grants (including to HD Vest employees), and costs incurred as part of our Strategic Transformation, which primarily consisted of recruiting fees, offset by $1.8 million of separation-related costs incurred in the prior year in connection with the departure of our former chief executive officer and lower headcount. These increases were offset by a $0.4 million net decrease in acquisition-related costs due to professional services fees and other direct transaction costs incurred in the prior year related to the HD Vest acquisition, offset by changes in the fair value of the SimpleTax contingent consideration liability, which was revalued in the second quarter of 2016.

Depreciation and Amortization of Acquired Intangible Assets

(In thousands, except percentages)	Years ended December 31,				
	2017	Change	2016	Change	2015
Depreciation	$ 3,460	$ (421)	$ 3,881	$ 2,360	$ 1,521
Amortization of acquired intangible assets	33,807	476	33,331	20,574	12,757
Total	$ 37,267	$ 55	$ 37,212	$ 22,934	$ 14,278
Percentage of revenue	7%		8%		12%

Depreciation of property and equipment includes depreciation of computer equipment and software, office equipment and furniture, and leasehold improvements not recognized in cost of revenue. Amortization of acquired intangible assets primarily includes the amortization of customer relationships, which are amortized over their estimated lives.

Year ended December 31, 2017 compared with year ended December 31, 2016

Depreciation and amortization of acquired intangible assets were comparable to the prior year.

Year ended December 31, 2016 compared with year ended December 31, 2015

Depreciation increased primarily due to depreciation expense on HD Vest fixed assets.

Amortization of acquired intangible assets increased primarily due to amortization expense on HD Vest acquisition-related intangible assets.

Restructuring

(In thousands, except percentages)	Years ended December 31,				
	2017	Change	2016	Change	2015
Restructuring	$ 3,101	$ (769)	$ 3,870	$ 3,870	$ —
Percentage of revenue	1%		1%		—%

In connection with the Strategic Transformation, including the relocation of our headquarters, we have incurred restructuring costs of approximately $7.0 million, which includes all costs associated with our non-cancelable operating lease. While the relocation and the related costs were substantially completed by June 2017, the Company expects some costs through early 2018, primarily related to employees who will continue to provide service through that time period.

See "Note 5: Restructuring" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report for additional information on restructuring.

Other Loss, Net

(In thousands)	Years ended December 31,				
	2017	Change	2016	Change	2015
Interest income	$ (110)	$ (29)	$ (81)	$ 528	$ (609)
Interest expense	21,211	(11,213)	32,424	23,380	9,044
Amortization of debt issuance costs	1,089	(751)	1,840	707	1,133
Accretion of debt discounts	1,947	(2,743)	4,690	824	3,866
Loss on debt extinguishment and modification expense	20,445	19,409	1,036	638	398
Gain on third party bankruptcy settlement	(116)	56	(172)	956	(1,128)
Other	85	41	44	206	(162)
Other loss, net	$ 44,551	$ 4,770	$ 39,781	$ 27,239	$ 12,542

Year ended December 31, 2017 compared with year ended December 31, 2016

The decrease in interest expense, amortization of debt issuance costs, and accretion of debt discounts primarily related to lower balances in the TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facility and the Notes due to prepayments on a portion of the TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facility in 2017 and 2016 and the redemption of all of the Notes in the second quarter of 2017. In 2017, the applicable interest rate margin of the Blucora senior secured credit facilities was repriced and lowered to 3.0% for Eurodollar Rate loans and 2.0% for ABR loans. This repricing should decrease future annual interest expense by approximately $2.0 million per year.

The gain on third party bankruptcy settlement related to amounts received in connection with ongoing distributions from the Lehman Brothers estate, of which we are a creditor.

See "Note 9: Debt" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report for additional information on the "Loss on debt extinguishment and modification expense."

Year ended December 31, 2016 compared with year ended December 31, 2015

The increase in interest expense, amortization of debt issuance costs, and accretion of debt discounts primarily related to the TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facility, which was entered into in December 2015, offset by a lower balance on the Notes, a portion of which were repurchased during the first quarter of 2016.

The loss on debt extinguishment and modification expense related to the prepayment of a portion of the TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facility in 2016, which resulted in the write-down of a portion of the unamortized debt discount and issuance costs. This was offset by a gain on debt extinguishment and modification expense related to the repurchase of a portion of the Notes below par value during the first quarter of 2016. Further detail is above.

Income Taxes

During 2017, we recorded an income tax benefit of $25.9 million. Income tax differed from taxes at the statutory rates primarily due to the January 1, 2017 implementation of Accounting Standards Update (***"ASU"***) 2016-09 on stock-based compensation (see "Note 2: Summary of Significant Accounting Policies" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report for additional information) and the impact of "H.R. 1", formerly known as the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act (the ***"Tax Legislation"***), which President Donald Trump signed into law on December 22, 2017.

The Tax Legislation, which was effective January 1, 2018, significantly revised the U.S. tax code by, among other things, lowering the corporate income tax rate from 35% to 21%. As a result of the reduction in the corporate income tax rate, we re-valued our net deferred tax liabilities during the year ended December 31, 2017. The re-measurement of our deferred tax assets and liabilities resulted in a reduction in the value of our net deferred tax liabilities of approximately $21.4 million, which is recorded as additional income tax benefit in 2017. For 2018, we expect our GAAP effective tax rate to be in the range of 5 to 10 percent, primarily driven by the release of the current portion of valuation allowances.

The Tax Legislation also repealed corporate alternative minimum tax (***"AMT"***) for tax years beginning January 1, 2018, and provides that existing AMT credit carryovers are refundable beginning in 2018. We have approximately $10.9 million of AMT credit carryovers that are expected to be fully refunded by 2022. Additionally, the change in tax law affected changes to statutes under I.R.C. 162(m) related to the deduction of compensation of officers, which may limit the total amount benefited by the Company in future years.

The impact of the Tax Legislation on our 2018 effective tax rate will depend on numerous factors and assumptions. Based on preliminary information, given the numerous net operating losses available and small international footprint, the change in tax law is not expected to significantly impact our income tax provision. The foregoing is based on information available as of the date of this report and is subject to change due to a variety of factors, including, among other things, (i) management’s further assessment of the Tax Legislation and related regulatory guidance, (ii) guidance that may be issued, and (iii) actions that we may take as a result of the Tax Legislation. For further discussion of the risks related to the Tax Legislation, see the paragraph in our Risk Factors (Part I Item IA of this report) under the heading "*We may be negatively impacted by the recently passed Tax Cuts and Jobs Act or by any future changes in tax laws.*"

During 2016, we recorded an income tax benefit of $1.3 million. Income tax differed from taxes at the statutory rates primarily due to the domestic manufacturing deduction, offset by non-deductible compensation and state income taxes.

During 2015, we recorded an income tax benefit of $4.6 million. Income tax differed from taxes at the statutory rates primarily due to the non-deductible acquisition-related transaction costs.

At December 31, 2017, we had gross temporary differences representing future tax deductions of $684.1 million, which represented deferred tax assets primarily comprised of $520.3 million of federal net operating loss carryforwards. We have applied a valuation allowance against the net operating loss carryforwards and certain other deferred tax assets. If in the future, we determine that any additional portion of the deferred tax assets is more likely than not to be realized, we will record a benefit to the income statement. We currently estimate that approximately $273.8 million and $144.6 million of federal net operating loss carryforwards will expire in 2020 and 2021, respectively.

Discontinued Operations, Net of Income Taxes

(In thousands)	Years ended December 31,				
	2017	Change	2016	Change	2015
Discontinued operations, net of income taxes	$ —	$ 63,121	$ (63,121)	$ (35,773)	$ (27,348)

On October 14, 2015, we announced our Strategic Transformation, which included plans to divest the Search and Content and E-Commerce businesses. Our results of operations reflect the Search and Content and E-Commerce businesses as discontinued operations for all periods presented. Amounts in discontinued operations include previously unallocated depreciation, amortization, stock-based compensation, income taxes, and other corporate expenses that were attributable to the Search and Content and E-Commerce businesses. We completed both divestitures in 2016:

- On November 17, 2016, we closed on an agreement with YFC, under which YFC acquired the E-Commerce business for $40.5 million, which included a working capital adjustment. As a result, we recognized a $52.2 million loss on sale of discontinued operations.

- On August 9, 2016, we closed on an agreement with OpenMail, under which OpenMail acquired substantially all of the assets and assumed certain specified liabilities of the Search and Content business for $45.2 million, which included a working capital adjustment. As a result, we recognized a $21.6 million loss on sale of discontinued operations.

In the fourth quarter of 2015, we recorded goodwill impairments of $15.1 million and $33.8 million related to the Search and Content and E-Commerce reporting units, respectively, and trade name impairments of $5.9 million and $4.2 million related to the HSW and Monoprice trade names, respectively.

See "Note 4: Discontinued Operations" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report for additional information on discontinued operations.

NON-GAAP FINANCIAL MEASURES

Adjusted EBITDA: We define Adjusted EBITDA as net income (loss) attributable to Blucora, Inc., determined in accordance with GAAP, excluding the effects of stock-based compensation, depreciation, amortization of acquired intangible assets (including acquired technology), restructuring, other loss, net, the impact of noncontrolling interests, income tax expense (benefit), the effects of discontinued operations, acquisition-related costs and CEO separation-related costs. Restructuring costs relate to the move of our corporate headquarters, which was announced in the fourth quarter of 2016. Acquisition-related costs include professional services fees and other direct transaction costs and changes in the fair value of contingent consideration liabilities related to acquired companies. The SimpleTax acquisition that was completed in 2015 included contingent consideration, for which the fair value of that liability was revalued in the second quarter of 2016. For further detail, see "Note 9: Debt" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report.

We believe that Adjusted EBITDA provides meaningful supplemental information regarding our performance. We use this non-GAAP financial measure for internal management and compensation purposes, when publicly providing guidance on possible future results, and as a means to evaluate period-to-period comparisons. We believe that Adjusted EBITDA is a common measure used by investors and analysts to evaluate our performance, that it provides a more complete understanding of the results of operations and trends affecting our business when viewed together with GAAP results, and that management and investors benefit from referring to this non-GAAP financial measure. Items excluded from Adjusted EBITDA are significant and necessary components to the operations of our business and, therefore, Adjusted EBITDA should be considered as a supplement to, and not as a substitute for or superior to, GAAP net income (loss). Other companies may calculate Adjusted EBITDA differently and, therefore, our Adjusted EBITDA may not be comparable to similarly titled measures of other companies. A reconciliation of our Adjusted EBITDA to net income (loss) attributable to Blucora, Inc., which we believe to be the most comparable GAAP measure, is presented below:

(In thousands)	Years ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Net income (loss) attributable to Blucora, Inc.	$ 27,039	$ (65,158)	$ (40,074)
Stock-based compensation	11,653	14,128	8,694
Depreciation and amortization of acquired intangible assets	38,139	38,688	22,590
Restructuring	3,101	3,870	—
Other loss, net	44,551	39,781	12,542
Net income attributable to noncontrolling interests	2,337	658	—
Income tax expense (benefit)	(25,890)	(1,285)	(4,623)
Discontinued operations, net of income taxes	—	63,121	27,348
Acquisition-related costs	—	391	10,988
CEO separation-related costs	—	—	1,769
Adjusted EBITDA	$ 100,930	$ 94,194	$ 39,234

Year ended December 31, 2017 compared with year ended December 31, 2016

The increase in Adjusted EBITDA primarily was due to increases in segment operating income of $4.6 million and $6.0 million related to our Wealth Management and Tax Preparation segments, respectively. Offsetting the increase in Adjusted

EBITDA was a $3.9 million increase in corporate operating expenses not allocated to the segments primarily related to costs incurred as part of our Strategic Transformation, which related to the relocation cost of our corporate headquarters, and costs associated with transitioning of roles such as overlap in staffing and recruiting search fees.

Year ended December 31, 2016 compared with year ended December 31, 2015

The increase in Adjusted EBITDA primarily was due to increases in segment operating income of $46.3 million and $9.9 million related to our Wealth Management and Tax Preparation segments, respectively. Offsetting the increase in Adjusted EBITDA was a $1.2 million increase in corporate operating expenses not allocated to the segments primarily related to costs incurred as part of our Strategic Transformation, which mainly consisted of recruiting fees.

Non-GAAP net income: We define non-GAAP net income (loss) as net income (loss) attributable to Blucora, Inc., determined in accordance with GAAP, excluding the effects of discontinued operations, stock-based compensation, amortization of acquired intangible assets (including acquired technology), accretion of debt discount and accelerated accretion of debt discount on the Notes, gain on the Notes repurchased, write-off of debt discount and debt issuance costs on the Notes that were redeemed and the terminated TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facility, acquisition-related costs (described further under *Adjusted EBITDA* above), restructuring costs (described further under *Adjusted EBITDA* above), the impact of noncontrolling interests, the related cash tax impact of those adjustments, and non-cash income taxes. The write-off of debt discount and debt issuance costs on the terminated Notes and the closed TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facility relates to the debt refinancing that occurred in the second quarter of 2017. We exclude the non-cash portion of income taxes because of our ability to offset a substantial portion of our cash tax liabilities by using deferred tax assets, which primarily consist of U.S. federal net operating losses. The majority of these net operating losses will expire, if unutilized, between 2020 and 2024.

We believe that non-GAAP net income (loss) and non-GAAP net income (loss) per share provide meaningful supplemental information to management, investors, and analysts regarding our performance and the valuation of our business by excluding items in the statement of operations that we do not consider part of our ongoing operations or have not been, or are not expected to be, settled in cash. Additionally, we believe that non-GAAP net income (loss) and non-GAAP net income (loss) per share are common measures used by investors and analysts to evaluate our performance and the valuation of our business. Non-GAAP net income (loss) should be evaluated in light of our financial results prepared in accordance with GAAP and should be considered as a supplement to, and not as a substitute for or superior to, GAAP net income (loss). Other companies may calculate non-GAAP net income differently, and, therefore, our non-GAAP net income may not be comparable to similarly titled measures of other companies. A reconciliation of our non-GAAP net income to net income attributable to Blucora, Inc., which we believe to be the most comparable GAAP measure, is presented below:

(In thousands, except per share amounts)	**Years ended December 31,**		
	2017	**2016**	**2015**
Net income (loss) attributable to Blucora, Inc.	$ 27,039	$ (65,158)	$ (40,074)
Discontinued operations, net of income taxes	—	63,121	27,348
Stock-based compensation	11,653	14,128	8,694
Amortization of acquired intangible assets	34,002	34,143	20,303
Accretion of debt discount on Convertible Senior Notes	1,567	3,666	3,866
Accelerated accretion of debt discount on Convertible Senior Notes	—	1,628	—
Gain on the Notes repurchased	—	(7,724)	—
Write-off of debt issuance costs on closed TaxAct 2013 credit facility	—	—	398
Write-off of debt discount and debt issuance costs on terminated Convertible Senior Notes	6,715	—	—
Write-off of debt discount and debt issuance costs on closed TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facility	9,593	—	—
Acquisition-related costs	—	391	10,988
CEO separation-related costs	—	—	1,769
Restructuring	3,101	3,870	—
Impact of noncontrolling interests	2,337	658	—
Cash tax impact of adjustments to GAAP net income	(6)	175	(236)
Non-cash income tax benefit	(26,853)	(3,802)	(4,857)
Non-GAAP net income	$ 69,148	$ 45,096	$ 28,199
Per diluted share:			
Net loss attributable to Blucora, Inc. [1]	$ 0.57	$ (1.53)	$ (0.98)
Discontinued operations, net of income taxes	—	1.48	0.68
Stock-based compensation	0.25	0.33	0.21
Amortization of acquired intangible assets	0.72	0.80	0.50
Accretion of debt discount on Convertible Senior Notes	0.03	0.09	0.09
Accelerated accretion of debt discount on Convertible Senior Notes	—	0.04	—
Gain on Convertible Senior Notes repurchased	—	(0.18)	—
Write-off of debt discount and debt issuance costs on terminated Convertible Senior Notes	0.14	—	—
Write-off of debt discount and debt issuance costs on closed TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facility	0.20	—	—
Acquisition-related costs	—	0.01	0.27
CEO separation-related costs	—	—	0.04
Restructuring	0.07	0.09	—
Impact of noncontrolling interests	0.05	0.02	—
Cash tax impact of adjustments to GAAP net income	0.00	0.00	(0.01)
Non-cash income tax benefit	(0.57)	(0.09)	(0.12)
Non-GAAP net income	$ 1.46	$ 1.06	$ 0.69
Weighted average shares outstanding used in computing per diluted share amounts	47,211	42,686	40,959

[1] Any difference in "per diluted share" between this table and the consolidated statements of comprehensive income is due to using different weighted average shares outstanding in the event that there is GAAP net loss but non-GAAP net income and vice versa.

Year ended December 31, 2017 compared with year ended December 31, 2016

The increase in non-GAAP net income primarily was due to increases in segment operating income of $4.6 million and $6.0 million related to our Wealth Management and Tax Preparation segments, respectively. The increase in non-GAAP net income was also due to (i) a $12.6 million decrease in interest expense, amortization of debt issuance costs, and accretion of debt discounts, mainly related to the TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facility, which was entered into in December 2015 and terminated in the second quarter of 2017, (ii) a $3.0 million loss on debt extinguishment and modification expense, mainly related to the prepayment of a portion of the TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facility in 2016, (iii) a $0.4 million decrease in depreciation expense, mainly related to depreciation expense on HD Vest fixed assets, and (iv) a $1.4 million decrease in cash income tax expense, mainly related to the addition of HD Vest. These increases were offset by a $3.9 million increase in corporate operating expenses not allocated to the segments primarily related to costs incurred as part of our Strategic Transformation, which related to the relocation cost of our corporate headquarters, and costs associated with transitioning of roles such as overlap in staffing and recruiting search fees.

Year ended December 31, 2016 compared with year ended December 31, 2015

The increase in non-GAAP net income primarily was due to increases in segment operating income of $4.6 million and $6.0 million related to our Wealth Management and Tax Preparation segments, respectively. This was offset by (i) a $12.6 million decrease in interest expense, amortization of debt issuance costs, and accretion of debt discounts, mainly related to the TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facility, which was entered into in December 2015, (ii) a $3.0 million loss on debt extinguishment and modification expense, mainly related to the prepayment of a portion of the TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facility in 2016, (iii) a $0.4 million decrease in depreciation expense, mainly related to depreciation expense on HD Vest fixed assets, (iv) a $1.4 million decrease in cash income tax expense, mainly related to the addition of HD Vest, (v) a $3.9 million increase in corporate operating expenses not allocated to the segments primarily related to costs incurred as part of our Strategic Transformation, which mainly consisted of recruiting fees, and (vi) a $0.1 million decrease in gain on third party bankruptcy settlement.

LIQUIDITY AND CAPITAL RESOURCES

Cash and Cash Equivalents

Our principal source of liquidity is our cash and cash equivalents. As of December 31, 2017, we had cash and cash equivalents of $60.0 million. Our HD Vest broker-dealer subsidiary operates in a highly regulated industry and is subject to various regulatory capital requirements. Failure to meet minimum capital requirements can initiate certain mandatory and possible additional discretionary actions by regulators that, if undertaken, could have substantial monetary and non-monetary impacts to HD Vest's operations. As of December 31, 2017, HD Vest met all capital adequacy requirements to which it was subject.

We generally invest our excess cash in high quality marketable investments. These investments generally include debt instruments issued by the U.S. federal government and its agencies, international governments, municipalities and publicly-held corporations, as well as commercial paper, insured time deposits with commercial banks, and money market funds invested in securities issued by agencies of the U.S., although specific holdings can vary from period to period depending upon our cash requirements. Our financial instrument investments held at December 31, 2017 had minimal default risk and short-term maturities.

We have financed our operations primarily from cash provided by operating activities. Accordingly, we believe that the cash generated from our operations and the cash and cash equivalents we have on hand will be sufficient to meet our operating, working capital, regulatory capital requirements at our broker-dealer subsidiary, and capital expenditure requirements for at least the next 12 months. However, the underlying levels of revenues and expenses that we project may not prove to be accurate. For further discussion of the risks to our business related to liquidity, see the paragraph in our Risk Factors (Part I Item 1A of this report) under the heading "*Existing cash and cash equivalents, and cash generated from operations may not be sufficient to meet our anticipated cash needs for servicing debt, working capital, and capital expenditures*."

Use of Cash

We may use our cash and cash equivalents balance in the future on investment in our current businesses, for repayment of debt, for acquiring companies or assets that complement our Wealth Management and Tax Preparation businesses, or for returning capital to shareholders.

On May 22, 2017, we entered into a credit agreement with a syndicate of lenders in order to (a) refinance the TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facility, (b) redeem our Notes that were outstanding at the time, and (c) provide a term loan and revolving line of credit for future working capital, capital expenditure and general business purposes. Consequently, the TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facility was repaid in full and the commitments thereunder were terminated. The Blucora senior secured credit facilities in the aggregate committed amount of $425.0 million consist of a committed $50.0 million revolving credit facility (including a letter of credit sub-facility), and a $375.0 million term loan facility. The final maturity dates of the revolving credit loan and term loan are May 22, 2022 and May 22, 2024, respectively. Obligations under the Blucora senior secured credit facility are guaranteed by certain of Blucora's subsidiaries and secured by the assets of Blucora and those subsidiaries.

The credit facility includes financial and operating covenants with respect to certain ratios, including a net leverage ratio, which are defined further in the credit facility agreement. We were in compliance with these covenants as of December 31, 2017. We initially borrowed $375.0 million under the term loan and have made prepayments of $30.0 million towards the term loan. We have not borrowed any amounts under the revolving credit loan and do not have any other debt outstanding. For further detail, see "Note 9: Debt" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report.

Related to the TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facility, we had repayment activity of $64.0 million and $140.0 million during the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively. Related to the Notes, we repurchased $28.4 million of the Notes for cash of $20.7 million during 2016. For further detail, see "Note 9: Debt" of the Notes to Unaudited Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report.

On July 2, 2015, TaxAct acquired SimpleTax, which included additional consideration of up to C$4.6 million (with C$ indicating Canadian dollars and amounting to approximately $3.7 million based on the acquisition-date exchange rate). The related payments are contingent upon product availability and revenue performance over a three-year period and are expected to occur annually over that period. The first payment was made in the first quarter of 2017, and the remaining payments of $2.7 million are expected through 2019. For further detail, see "Note 7: Fair Value Measurements" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report.

On October 14, 2015, we announced our Strategic Transformation, which refers to our transformation into a technology-enabled financial solutions company comprised of TaxAct and HD Vest, the divestitures of our Search and Content and E-Commerce businesses, and the relocation of corporate headquarters from Bellevue, Washington to Irving, Texas. See the "Strategic Transformation" subsection above for additional detail regarding the related use of cash.

Related to the acquisition of HD Vest, we paid $613.7 million (after a $1.8 million working capital adjustment in the first quarter of 2016) in cash, which was funded by a combination of cash on hand and the TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facility. The credit facility consisted of a $25.0 million revolving credit loan and a $400.0 million term loan for an aggregate $425.0 million credit facility. The final maturity dates of the revolving credit loan and term loan were December 31, 2020 and December 31, 2022, respectively. The interest rates on the revolving credit loan and term loan were variable. The credit facility includes financial and operating covenants with respect to certain ratios, including a net leverage to EBITDA ratio, which are defined further in the agreement. We were in compliance with these covenants as of December 31, 2017. TaxAct and HD Vest initially borrowed $400.0 million under the term loan and had repayment activity of $260.0 million in 2017. For further detail, see "Note 3: Business Combinations" and "Note 9: Debt" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report.

On August 30, 2013, TaxAct entered into an agreement to refinance a 2012 credit facility on more favorable terms. TaxAct had net repayment activity of $51.9 million in 2015. This credit facility was repaid in full in the second quarter of 2015 and subsequently closed.

In the third quarter of 2018 we expect to commence our new clearing services relationship with Fidelity Clearing & Custody Solutions, pursuant to the agreement we executed during 2017. We expect the new clearing relationship to provide tangible benefits to our advisors and customers in the form of improved technology, product offerings and service. We currently expect that this relationship will generate between approximately $60.0 and $100.0 million of incremental Wealth Management segment income over the ten years following the commencement of this relationship in late 2018.

Contractual Obligations and Commitments

Our contractual obligations and commitments are as follows for years ending December 31:

(In thousands)	2018	2019	2020	2021	2022	Thereafter	Total
Operating lease commitments:							
Operating lease obligations	$ 4,201	$ 4,281	$ 3,946	$ 2,493	$ 1,979	$ 1,678	$ 18,578
Sublease income	(1,265)	(1,288)	(991)	—	—	—	(3,544)
Net operating lease commitments	2,936	2,993	2,955	2,493	1,979	1,678	15,034
Purchase commitments	5,528	3,600	3,600	2,100	600	3,400	18,828
Debt commitments	—	2,000	3,500	3,500	3,500	332,500	345,000
Interest payable	15,172	15,157	15,068	14,872	14,719	20,584	95,572
Acquisition-related contingent consideration liability	1,304	1,385	—	—	—	—	2,689
Total	$ 24,940	$ 25,135	$ 25,123	$ 22,965	$ 20,798	$ 358,162	$ 477,123

For further detail see "Note 10: Commitments and Contingencies" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report.

Off-balance Sheet Arrangements

We have no off-balance sheet arrangements other than operating leases.

Unrecognized Tax Benefits

The above table does not reflect unrecognized tax benefits of approximately $4.2 million, the timing of which is uncertain. For additional discussion on unrecognized tax benefits see "Note 16: Income Taxes" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report.

Cash Flows

Our cash flows were comprised of the following:

(In thousands)	Years ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Net cash provided by operating activities from continuing operations	$ 72,846	$ 85,970	$ 24,308
Net cash provided (used) by investing activities from continuing operations	2,053	(1,560)	(332,517)
Net cash provided (used) by financing activities from continuing operations	(68,562)	(162,001)	320,652
Net cash provided (used) by continuing operations	6,337	(77,591)	12,443
Net cash provided by discontinued operations	1,028	72,655	4,586
Effect of exchange rate changes on cash and cash equivalents	78	(26)	(17)
Net increase (decrease) in cash and cash equivalents	$ 7,443	$ (4,962)	$ 17,012

Net cash from the operating activities of continuing operations: Net cash from the operating activities of continuing operations consists of income (loss) from continuing operations, offset by certain non-cash adjustments, and changes in our working capital.

Net cash provided by operating activities was $72.8 million, $86.0 million, and $24.3 million for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015, respectively. The activity in 2017 included a $(15.3) million working capital contribution and approximately $88.1 million of income from continuing operations (offset by non-cash adjustments). The working capital contribution was driven by accrued expenses, including accrued interest, and the expected realization (through 2022) of $10.9 million of repealed corporate AMT credit carryovers, and restructuring activities.

The activity in 2016 included an $44.8 million working capital contribution and approximately $41.2 million of non-cash adjustments and a loss from continuing operations. The working capital contribution continued to be driven by accrued expenses and the impact of excess tax benefits from stock-based activity primarily due to utilizing equity net operating loss carryforwards from prior years. In addition, we had placed into escrow $20.0 million of additional consideration that was contingent upon HD Vest's 2015 earnings performance, and that amount was returned to us in the first quarter of 2016 since it was not achieved (see "Note 3: Business Combinations" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report for additional information). Lastly, the timing of TaxAct's spending on marketing campaigns for the upcoming tax season and the addition of HD Vest provided further working capital contribution during the period.

The activity in 2015 included a $11.2 million working capital contribution and approximately $13.1 million of non-cash adjustments and a loss from continuing operations. The working capital contribution was driven by accrued expenses and the impact of excess tax benefits from stock-based activity, and also included separation-related costs accrued in connection with the upcoming departure of our chief executive officer that occurred in 2016.

Net cash from the investing activities of continuing operations: Net cash from the investing activities of continuing operations primarily consists of cash outlays for business acquisitions, transactions (purchases of and proceeds from sales and maturities) related to our investments, and purchases of property and equipment. Our investing activities tend to fluctuate from period to period primarily based upon the level of acquisition activity.

Net cash used by investing activities was $2.1 million, $1.6 million, and $332.5 million for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015, respectively. The activity in 2017 primarily consisted of net cash inflows on our available-for-sale investments of $7.1 million offset by approximately offset by $5.0 million in purchases of property and equipment. The activity in 2016 primarily consisted of $3.8 million in purchases of property and equipment and payment of the $1.8 million final working capital adjustment on the HD Vest acquisition, offset by net cash inflows on our available-for-sale investments of $4.0 million. The activity in 2015 primarily consisted of the acquisitions of HD Vest and SimpleTax for a combined $573.4 million and $1.5 million in purchases of property and equipment, offset by net cash inflows on our available-for-sale investments of $238.7 million.

Net cash from the financing activities of continuing operations: Net cash from the financing activities of continuing operations primarily consists of transactions related to the issuance of debt and stock. Our financing activities tend to fluctuate from period-to-period based upon our financing needs due to the level of acquisition activity and market conditions that present favorable financing opportunities.

Net cash used by financing activities was $68.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2017. The activity in 2017 primarily consisted of payments of $290.0 million in connection with the termination of the TaxAct - HD Vest credit facility, $172.8 million for redemption in full of the outstanding Notes, $9.1 million in tax payments from shares withheld for equity awards, payment of $3.2 million on the note payable with related party, and $0.9 million in contingent consideration paid related to the 2015 acquisition of SimpleTax. These cash outflows were offset by approximately $365.8 million in proceeds from the Blucora senior secured credit facility that was entered into in May 2017 and $41.7 million in combined proceeds from the issuance of common stock related to stock option exercises and the employee stock purchase plan.

Net cash provided by financing activities was $162.0 million for the year ended December 31, 2016. The activity in 2016 primarily consisted of payments of $140.0 million on the TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facility, the $20.7 million repurchase of the Notes, payment of $3.2 million on the note payable with related party, and $1.8 million in tax payments from shares withheld for equity awards. These cash outflows were offset by approximately $16.0 million in excess tax benefits from stock-based award activity primarily due to utilizing equity net operating loss carryforwards from prior years and $3.6 million in combined proceeds from the issuance of common stock related to stock option exercises and the employee stock purchase plan.

Net cash used by financing activities was $320.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2015. The activity in 2015 primarily consisted of $378.3 million in proceeds from the TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facility that was entered into on December 31, 2015, $8.0 million in excess tax benefits from stock-based activity primarily due to utilizing equity net operating loss carryforwards from prior years, and $3.6 million in combined proceeds from the issuance of common stock related to stock option exercises and the employee stock purchase plan. These cash inflows were offset by payments of $51.9 million on the TaxAct 2013 credit facility, stock repurchases of $7.7 million, and $1.5 million in tax payments from shares withheld for equity awards.

Critical Accounting Policies and Estimates

This Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations and the disclosures included elsewhere in this Annual Report on Form 10-K are based upon our consolidated financial statements, which have been prepared in accordance with GAAP. The preparation of these financial statements requires us to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets, liabilities, revenues, expenses, and disclosure of contingencies. In some cases, we could have reasonably used different accounting policies and estimates.

The SEC has defined a company's most critical accounting policies as the ones that are the most important to the portrayal of the company's financial condition and results of operations and which require the company to make its most difficult and subjective judgments, often as a result of the need to make estimates of matters that are inherently uncertain. On an ongoing basis, we evaluate the estimates used. We base our estimates on historical experience, current conditions, and on various other assumptions that we believe to be reasonable under the circumstances and, based on information available to us at that time, we make judgments about the carrying values of assets and liabilities that are not readily apparent from other sources as well as identify and assess our accounting treatment with respect to commitments and contingencies. Actual results may differ significantly from these estimates under different assumptions, judgments, or conditions. We believe the following critical accounting policies involve the more significant judgments and estimates used in the preparation of our consolidated financial statements. We also have other accounting policies that involve the use of estimates, judgments, and assumptions that are significant to understanding our results. For additional information, see "Note 2: Summary of Significant Accounting Policies" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report.

Wealth management revenue recognition: Wealth management revenue consists primarily of commission revenue, advisory revenue, asset-based revenue, and transaction and fee revenue. Revenue is recognized in the periods in which the related services are performed, provided that persuasive evidence of an arrangement exists, the fee is fixed or determinable, and collectibility is reasonably assured. Payments received in advance of the performance of service are deferred and recognized as revenue when earned. Of Wealth management revenues, commissions revenue contains subjective judgments and the use of estimates.

Commissions represent amounts generated by HD Vest's financial advisors for their clients' purchases and sales of securities and various investment products. We generate two types of commissions: transaction-based sales commissions that occur at the point of sale, as well as trailing commissions for which we provide ongoing account support to clients of our financial advisors.

Transaction-based sales commission revenue is recorded on a trade-date basis, which is when our performance obligations in generating the commissions have been substantially completed. Trailing commission revenue is based on a percentage of the current market value of clients' investment holdings in trail-eligible assets and recognized over the period during which services are performed. Since trailing commission revenue is generally paid in arrears, we estimate it based on a number of factors, including market levels and the amount of trailing commission revenues received in prior periods, and also considers historical payout ratios. These estimates are primarily based on historical information and there is not significant judgment involved.

A substantial portion of commission revenue is ultimately paid to financial advisors. Such amounts are recorded as "Commissions and advisory fees payable" on the consolidated balance sheets and "Wealth management services cost of revenue" on the consolidated statements of comprehensive income.

Tax preparation revenue recognition: We derive revenue from the sale of tax preparation online services, ancillary services, packaged tax preparation software, and multiple element arrangements that may include a combination of these items. Ancillary services primarily include tax preparation support services, data archive services and e-filing services. The Company recognizes revenue from the sale of its packaged software when legal title transfers. This is generally when its customers download the software from the Internet or, to a lesser extent, when the software ships. Of Tax Preparation revenues, revenues from bank or reloadable prepaid debit card services, and software and/or services that consist of multiple elements contain subjective judgments and the use of estimates.

The bank or reloadable prepaid debit card services are offered to taxpayers as an option to receive their tax refunds in the form of a prepaid bank card or to have the fees for the software and/or services purchased by the customers deducted from their refunds. Other value-added service revenue consists of revenue from revenue sharing and royalty arrangements with third party partners. Revenue for these transactions is recognized when the revenue recognition criteria are met; for some arrangements that is upon filing and for other arrangements that is upon our determination of when collectibility is probable.

For software and/or services that consist of multiple elements, we must: (1) determine whether and when each element has been delivered; (2) determine the fair value of each element using the selling price hierarchy of vendor-specific objective evidence (***"VSOE"***) of fair value if available, third-party evidence (***"TPE"***) of fair value if VSOE is not available, and estimated selling price (***"ESP"***) if neither VSOE nor TPE is available; and (3) allocate the total price among the various elements based on the relative selling price method. Once we have allocated the total price among the various elements, we recognize revenue when the revenue recognition criteria described above are met for each element.

VSOE generally exists when we sell the deliverable separately. When VSOE cannot be established, we attempt to establish a selling price for each element based on TPE. TPE is determined based on competitor prices for similar deliverables when sold separately. When we are unable to establish selling price using VSOE or TPE, we use ESP in our allocation of arrangement consideration. ESP is the estimated price at which we would sell the software or service if it were sold on a stand-alone basis. We determine ESP for the software or service by considering multiple factors including, but not limited to, historical stand-alone sales, pricing practices, market conditions, competitive landscape, internal costs, and gross margin objectives. However, the impact of multiple element arrangements are not material and primarily impact the timing of revenue recognition over the tax filing season, which is concentrated within the first two quarters of the filing period.

Income taxes: We account for income taxes under the asset and liability method, under which deferred tax assets, including net operating loss carryforwards, and liabilities are determined based on temporary differences between the book and tax bases of assets and liabilities. We periodically evaluate the likelihood of the realization of deferred tax assets and reduce the carrying amount of the deferred tax assets by a valuation allowance to the extent we believe a portion will not be realized. We consider many factors when assessing the likelihood of future realization of the deferred tax assets, including expectations of future taxable income, recent cumulative earnings experience by taxing jurisdiction, and other relevant factors. There is a wide range of possible judgments relating to the valuation of our deferred tax assets.

We record liabilities to address uncertain tax positions that have been taken in previously filed tax returns or that are expected to be taken in a future tax return. The determination for required liabilities is based upon an analysis of each individual tax position, taking into consideration whether it is more likely than not that the tax position, based on technical merits, will be sustained upon examination. The tax benefit to be recognized in the financial statements from such a position is measured as the largest amount of benefit that has a greater than 50% likelihood of being realized upon ultimate settlement with the taxing authority. The difference between the amount recognized and the total tax position is recorded as a liability. The ultimate resolution of these tax positions may be greater or less than the liabilities recorded.

For additional information about the realization of our deferred tax assets and our valuation allowance, see "Note 16: Income Taxes" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report. For additional information about our net operating loss carryforwards, see the Risk Factor "*Our utilization of our net operating loss carryforwards ("NOLs") may be severely limited or potentially eliminated*" in Part I Item 1A of this report.

Recent Accounting Pronouncements

See "Note 2: Summary of Significant Accounting Policies" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report.

Quarterly Results of Operations (Unaudited)

The following table presents a summary of our unaudited consolidated results of operations for the eight quarters ended December 31, 2017. The information for each of these quarters has been prepared on a basis consistent with our annual audited consolidated financial statements. You should read this information in conjunction with our consolidated financial statements and notes thereto in Part II Item 8. The operating results for any quarter are not necessarily indicative of results for any future period.

	March 31, 2016	June 30, 2016	September 30, 2016	December 31, 2016	March 31, 2017	June 30, 2017	September 30, 2017	December 31, 2017
	(In thousands except per share data and percentages) [1]							
Revenue:								
Wealth management services revenue	$ 77,291	$ 76,117	$ 80,088	$ 83,050	$ 82,667	$ 85,296	$ 86,809	$ 93,848
Tax preparation services revenue	88,474	43,991	3,149	3,751	99,708	53,866	3,362	4,001
Total revenue	165,765	120,108	83,237	86,801	182,375	139,162	90,171	97,849
Operating expenses:								
Cost of revenue:								
Wealth management services cost of revenue	52,269	51,023	54,921	55,783	55,874	56,963	59,607	63,415
Tax preparation services cost of revenue	3,207	2,023	1,319	1,819	3,818	2,411	1,314	2,475
Amortization of acquired technology	667	49	49	47	48	47	50	50
Total cost of revenue	56,143	53,095	56,289	57,649	59,740	59,421	60,971	65,940
Engineering and technology	4,295	3,959	4,588	4,938	4,748	4,242	5,051	5,573
Sales and marketing	43,837	19,913	11,965	13,645	48,998	22,296	13,680	17,824
General and administrative	12,753	11,508	11,638	11,497	13,483	13,715	12,207	13,263
Depreciation	975	963	968	975	940	873	867	780
Amortization of other acquired intangible assets	8,316	8,316	8,297	8,402	8,288	8,289	8,615	8,615
Restructuring [2]	—	—	—	3,870	2,289	331	106	375
Total operating expenses	126,319	97,754	93,745	100,976	138,486	109,167	101,497	112,370
Operating income (loss)	39,446	22,354	(10,508)	(14,175)	43,889	29,995	(11,326)	(14,521)
Other loss, net	(7,514)	(10,916)	(11,453)	(9,898)	(9,708)	(24,200)	(5,241)	(5,402)
Income (loss) from continuing operations before income taxes	31,932	11,438	(21,961)	(24,073)	34,181	5,795	(16,567)	(19,923)
Income tax benefit (expense)	(11,643)	(5,793)	8,537	10,184	(3,471)	(2,315)	(166)	31,842
Income (loss) from continuing operations	20,289	5,645	(13,424)	(13,889)	30,710	3,480	(16,733)	11,919
Discontinued operations, net of income taxes [3]	2,522	(19,975)	(40,528)	(5,140)	—	—	—	—
Net income (loss)	22,811	(14,330)	(53,952)	(19,029)	30,710	3,480	(16,733)	11,919
Net income attributable to noncontrolling interests	(144)	(115)	(167)	(232)	(126)	(176)	(164)	(1,871)
Net income (loss) attributable to Blucora, Inc.	$ 22,667	$ (14,445)	$ (54,119)	$ (19,261)	$ 30,584	$ 3,304	$ (16,897)	$ 10,048
Net income (loss) per share attributable to Blucora, Inc. - basic:								
Continuing operations	$ 0.49	$ 0.13	$ (0.33)	$ (0.34)	$ 0.73	$ 0.08	$ (0.37)	$ 0.22
Discontinued operations	0.06	(0.48)	(0.97)	(0.12)	—	—	—	—
Basic net income (loss) per	$ 0.55	$ (0.35)	$ (1.30)	$ (0.46)	$ 0.73	$ 0.08	$ (0.37)	$ 0.22
Net income (loss) per share attributable to Blucora, Inc. - diluted:								
Continuing operations	$ 0.48	$ 0.13	$ (0.33)	$ (0.34)	$ 0.67	$ 0.07	$ (0.37)	$ 0.21
Discontinued operations	0.06	(0.47)	(0.97)	(0.12)	—	—	—	—
Diluted net income (loss)	$ 0.54	$ (0.34)	$ (1.30)	$ (0.46)	$ 0.67	$ 0.07	$ (0.37)	$ 0.21
Weighted average shares outstanding:								
Basic	41,171	41,405	41,635	41,766	42,145	43,644	45,459	46,231
Diluted	41,610	42,298	41,635	41,766	45,428	46,937	45,459	48,406

	March 31, 2016	June 30, 2016	September 30, 2016	December 31, 2016	March 31, 2017	June 30, 2017	September 30, 2017	December 31, 2017
Revenue:								
Wealth management services revenue	46.6%	63.4 %	96.2 %	95.7 %	45.3%	61.3%	96.3 %	95.9%
Tax preparation services revenue	53.4	36.6	3.8	4.3	54.7	38.7	3.7	4.1
Total revenue	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Operating expenses:								
Cost of revenue [4]:								
Wealth management services cost of revenue	67.6	67.0	68.6	67.2	67.6	66.8	68.7	67.6
Tax preparation services cost of revenue	3.6	4.6	41.9	48.5	3.8	4.5	39.1	61.9
Amortization of acquired technology	0.4	0.0	0.1	0.1	0.0	0.0	0.1	0.1
Total cost of revenue	33.9	44.2	67.6	66.4	32.8	42.7	67.6	67.4
Engineering and technology	2.6	3.3	5.5	5.7	2.6	3.0	5.6	5.7
Sales and marketing	26.4	16.6	14.4	15.7	26.9	16.0	15.2	18.2
General and administrative	7.7	9.6	14.0	13.2	7.4	9.9	13.5	13.6
Depreciation	0.6	0.8	1.2	1.1	0.5	0.6	1.0	0.8
Amortization of other acquired intangible assets	5.0	6.9	10.0	9.7	4.5	6.0	9.6	8.8
Restructuring	—	—	—	4.5	1.3	0.2	0.1	0.4
Total operating expenses	76.2	81.4	112.7	116.3	76.0	78.4	112.6	114.9
Operating income (loss)	23.8	18.6	(12.7)	(16.3)	24.0	21.6	(12.6)	(14.9)
Other loss, net	(4.5)	(9.1)	(13.8)	(11.4)	(5.3)	(17.4)	(5.8)	(5.5)
Income (loss) from continuing operations before income taxes	19.3	9.5	(26.5)	(27.7)	18.7	4.2	(18.4)	(20.4)
Income tax benefit (expense)	(7.0)	(4.8)	10.3	11.7	(1.9)	(1.7)	(0.2)	32.5
Income (loss) from continuing operations	12.3	4.7	(16.2)	(16.0)	16.8	2.5	(18.6)	12.1
Discontinued operations, net of income taxes	1.5	(16.6)	(48.7)	(5.9)	—	—	—	—
Net income (loss)	13.8	(11.9)	(64.9)	(21.9)	16.8	2.5	(18.6)	12.1
Net income attributable to noncontrolling interests	(0.1)	(0.1)	(0.2)	(0.3)	(0.1)	(0.1)	(0.2)	(1.9)
Net income (loss) attributable to Blucora, Inc.	13.7%	(12.0)%	(65.1)%	(22.2)%	16.7%	2.4%	(18.8)%	10.2%

(1) On December 31, 2015, we acquired HD Vest. See "Note 3: Business Combinations" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report.

(2) On October 27, 2016, we announced plans to relocate our corporate headquarters by June 2017 from Bellevue, Washington to Irving, Texas. In connection with this plan, we incurred restructuring costs. See "Note 5: Restructuring" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report for more information.

(3) We sold the Search and Content business and the E-Commerce business on August 9, 2016 and November 17, 2016, respectively. See "Note 4: Discontinued Operations" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report for more information.

(4) "Wealth management services cost of revenue" and "Tax preparation services cost of revenue" are calculated based on their respective revenue bases of "Wealth management services revenue" and "Tax Preparation services revenue," respectively. "Total cost of revenue" is calculated based on "Total revenue."

ITEM 7A. Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures about Market Risk

We are exposed to financial market risks, including changes in the market values of our marketable debt securities and interest rates.

Financial market risk: We do not invest in financial instruments or their derivatives for trading or speculative purposes. By policy, we limit our credit exposure to any one issuer, other than securities issued by the U.S. federal government and its agencies, and do not have any derivative instruments in our investment portfolio. The three primary goals that guide our investment decisions, with the first being the most important, are: preserve capital, maintain ease of conversion into immediate liquidity, and achieve a rate of return over a pre-determined benchmark. As of December 31, 2017, we principally invest in money market fund securities. We consider the market value, default, and liquidity risks of our investments to be low at December 31, 2017.

Interest rate risk: At December 31, 2017, our cash equivalent balance of $10.9 million was held in money market funds. We consider the interest rate risk for our cash equivalent securities held at December 31, 2017 to be low. For further detail on our cash equivalents, see "Note 7: Fair Value Measurements" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report.

In addition, as of December 31, 2017, we have $345.0 million of debt outstanding under the Blucora senior secured credit facilities, which carries a degree of interest rate risk. This debt has a floating portion of its interest rate tied to the London Interbank Offered Rate (***"LIBOR"***). For further information on our outstanding debt, see "Note 9: Debt" of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in Part II Item 8 of this report. A hypothetical 100 basis point increase in LIBOR on December 31, 2017 would result in a $22.0 million increase in our interest expense until the scheduled maturity date in 2024.

The following table provides information about our cash equivalent securities as of December 31, 2017, including principal cash flows for 2018 and thereafter and the related weighted average interest rates. The change in fair values during 2017 for our cash equivalent securities was not material and was recorded in other comprehensive income. Principal amounts and weighted average interest rates by expected year of maturity are as follows:

(In thousands, except percentages)	2018		Thereafter		Total		Fair Value
Money market and other funds	10,857	1.00%	—	—%	10,857	1.00%	10,857
Cash equivalents	$ 10,857		$ —		$ 10,857		$ 10,857

ITEM 8. Financial Statements and Supplementary Data

INDEX TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

	Page
Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm	57
Consolidated Balance Sheets	58
Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income (Loss)	59
Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' Equity	60
Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows	61
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements	62

REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

To the Stockholders and the Board of Directors of Blucora, Inc.

Opinion on the Financial Statements

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheets of Blucora, Inc. (the Company) as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, the related consolidated statements of comprehensive income (loss), stockholders' equity and cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 2017, and the related notes (collectively referred to as the "consolidated financial statements"). In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Company at December 31, 2017 and 2016, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 2017, in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

We also have audited, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) (PCAOB), the Company's internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2017, based on criteria established in Internal Control-Integrated Framework issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (2013 framework), and our report dated March 1, 2018 expressed an unqualified opinion thereon.

Basis for Opinion

These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company's financial statements based on our audits. We are a public accounting firm registered with the PCAOB and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether due to error or fraud. Our audits included performing procedures to assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to error or fraud, and performing procedures that respond to those risks. Such procedures included examining, on a test basis, evidence regarding the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. Our audits also included evaluating the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

/s/ Ernst & Young LLP

We have served as the Company's auditor since 2012.

Dallas, Texas

March 1, 2018

BLUCORA, INC.
CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEETS
(In thousands, except per share data)

	December 31,	
	2017	2016
ASSETS		
Current assets:		
Cash and cash equivalents	$ 59,965	$ 51,713
Cash segregated under federal or other regulations	1,371	2,355
Available-for-sale investments	—	7,101
Accounts receivable, net of allowance	10,694	10,209
Commissions receivable	16,822	16,144
Other receivables	3,180	4,004
Prepaid expenses and other current assets, net	7,365	6,321
Total current assets	99,397	97,847
Long-term assets:		
Property and equipment, net	9,831	10,836
Goodwill, net	549,037	548,741
Other intangible assets, net	328,205	362,178
Other long-term assets	15,201	3,057
Total long-term assets	902,274	924,812
Total assets	$ 1,001,671	$ 1,022,659
LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY		
Current liabilities:		
Accounts payable	$ 4,413	$ 4,536
Commissions and advisory fees payable	17,813	16,587
Accrued expenses and other current liabilities	19,577	18,528
Deferred revenue	9,953	12,156
Current portion of long-term debt, net	—	2,560
Total current liabilities	51,756	54,367
Long-term liabilities:		
Long-term debt, net	338,081	248,221
Convertible senior notes, net	—	164,176
Deferred tax liability, net	43,433	111,126
Deferred revenue	804	1,849
Other long-term liabilities	8,177	10,205
Total long-term liabilities	390,495	535,577
Total liabilities	442,251	589,944
Redeemable noncontrolling interests	18,033	15,696
Commitments and contingencies (Note 10)		
Stockholders' equity:		
Common stock, par $0.0001—authorized shares, 900,000; issued and outstanding shares, 46,366 and 41,845	5	4
Additional paid-in capital	1,555,560	1,510,152
Accumulated deficit	(1,014,174)	(1,092,756)
Accumulated other comprehensive loss	(4)	(381)
Total stockholders' equity	541,387	417,019
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	$ 1,001,671	$ 1,022,659

See notes to consolidated financial statements.

BLUCORA, INC.
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF COMPREHENSIVE INCOME (LOSS)
(In thousands, except per share data)

	Years ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Revenue:			
Wealth management services revenue	$ 348,620	$ 316,546	$ —
Tax preparation services revenue	160,937	139,365	117,708
Total revenue	509,557	455,911	117,708
Operating expenses:			
Cost of revenue:			
Wealth management services cost of revenue	235,859	213,996	—
Tax preparation services cost of revenue	10,018	8,368	6,167
Amortization of acquired technology	195	812	7,546
Total cost of revenue	246,072	223,176	13,713
Engineering and technology	19,614	17,780	5,107
Sales and marketing	102,798	89,360	45,854
General and administrative	52,668	47,396	43,563
Depreciation	3,460	3,881	1,521
Amortization of other acquired intangible assets	33,807	33,331	12,757
Restructuring	3,101	3,870	—
Total operating expenses	461,520	418,794	122,515
Operating income (loss)	48,037	37,117	(4,807)
Other loss, net	(44,551)	(39,781)	(12,542)
Income (loss) from continuing operations before income taxes	3,486	(2,664)	(17,349)
Income tax benefit	25,890	1,285	4,623
Income (loss) from continuing operations	29,376	(1,379)	(12,726)
Discontinued operations, net of income taxes	—	(63,121)	(27,348)
Net income (loss)	29,376	(64,500)	(40,074)
Net income attributable to noncontrolling interests	(2,337)	(658)	—
Net income (loss) attributable to Blucora, Inc.	$ 27,039	$ (65,158)	$ (40,074)
Net income (loss) per share attributable to Blucora, Inc. - basic:			
Continuing operations	$ 0.61	$ (0.05)	$ (0.31)
Discontinued operations	—	(1.52)	(0.67)
Basic net income (loss) per share	$ 0.61	$ (1.57)	$ (0.98)
Net income (loss) per share attributable to Blucora, Inc. - diluted:			
Continuing operations	$ 0.57	$ (0.05)	$ (0.31)
Discontinued operations	—	(1.52)	(0.67)
Diluted net income (loss) per share	$ 0.57	$ (1.57)	$ (0.98)
Weighted average shares outstanding:			
Basic	44,370	41,494	40,959
Diluted	47,211	41,494	40,959
Other comprehensive income:			
Net income (loss)	$ 29,376	$ (64,500)	$ (40,074)
Unrealized gain (loss) on available-for-sale investments, net of tax	1	9	(236)
Foreign currency translation adjustment	376	137	(517)
Reclassification adjustment for realized loss on available-for-sale investments, net of tax, included in net income as Other loss, net	—	—	375
Reclassification adjustment for other-than-temporary impairment loss on available-for-sale investments, included in net income as discontinued operations	—	—	964
Other comprehensive income	377	146	586
Comprehensive income (loss)	29,753	(64,354)	(39,488)
Comprehensive income attributable to noncontrolling interests	(2,337)	(658)	—
Comprehensive income (loss) attributable to Blucora, Inc.	$ 27,416	$ (65,012)	$ (39,488)

See notes to consolidated financial statements.

BLUCORA, INC.
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY
(In thousands)

	Redeemable Noncontrolling Interests	Common stock		Additional-paid-in capital	Accumulated deficit	Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss)	Total
		Shares	Amount				
Balance as of December 31, 2014	$ —	40,882	$ 4	$ 1,467,658	$ (987,524)	$ (1,113)	$ 479,025
Common stock issued for stock options and restricted stock units	—	520	—	2,409	—	—	2,409
Common stock issued for employee stock purchase plan	—	103	—	1,193	—	—	1,193
Stock repurchases	—	(551)	—	(7,735)	—	—	(7,735)
Other comprehensive income	—	—	—	—	—	586	586
Stock-based compensation	—	—	—	13,047	—	—	13,047
Tax effect of equity compensation	—	—	—	15,378	—	—	15,378
Tax payments from shares withheld for equity awards	—	—	—	(1,545)	—	—	(1,545)
Net loss	—	—	—	—	(40,074)	—	(40,074)
Purchase of redeemable non-controlling interests	15,038	—	—	—	—	—	—
Balance as of December 31, 2015	15,038	40,954	4	1,490,405	(1,027,598)	(527)	462,284
Common stock issued for stock options and restricted stock units	—	700	—	2,216	—	—	2,216
Common stock issued for employee stock purchase plan	—	191	—	1,402	—	—	1,402
Other comprehensive income	—	—	—	—	—	146	146
Stock-based compensation	—	—	—	15,235	—	—	15,235
Tax effect of equity compensation	—	—	—	2,461	—	—	2,461
Tax payments from shares withheld for equity awards	—	—	—	(1,752)	—	—	(1,752)
Reclassification of equity award to liability award	—	—	—	185	—		185
Net income (loss)	658	—	—	—	(65,158)	—	(65,158)
Balance as of December 31, 2016	15,696	41,845	4	1,510,152	(1,092,756)	(381)	417,019
Common stock issued for stock options and restricted stock units	—	4,382	1	40,271	—	—	40,272
Common stock issued for employee stock purchase plan	—	139	—	1,429	—	—	1,429
Other comprehensive income	—	—	—	—	—	377	377
Stock-based compensation and impact of recent ASU	—	—	—	12,801	51,543	—	64,344
Tax payments from shares withheld for equity awards	—	—	—	(9,095)	—	—	(9,095)
Other	—	—	—	2	—	—	2
Net income	2,337	—	—	—	27,039	—	27,039
Balance as of December 31, 2017	$ 18,033	46,366	$ 5	$ 1,555,560	$ (1,014,174)	$ (4)	$ 541,387

See notes to consolidated financial statements.

BLUCORA, INC.

CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS
(In thousands)

	Years ended December 31, 2017	2016	2015
Operating Activities:			
Net income (loss)	$ 29,376	$ (64,500)	$ (40,074)
Less: Discontinued operations, net of income taxes	—	(63,121)	(27,348)
Net income (loss) from continuing operations	29,376	(1,379)	(12,726)
Adjustments to reconcile net income (loss) from continuing operations to net cash from operating activities:			
Stock-based compensation	11,653	14,128	8,694
Depreciation and amortization of acquired intangible assets	38,139	38,688	22,590
Restructuring (non-cash)	1,569	(364)	—
Deferred income taxes	(16,159)	(18,055)	(12,607)
Amortization of premium on investments, net	10	174	1,589
Amortization of debt issuance costs	1,089	1,840	1,133
Accretion of debt discounts	1,947	4,690	3,866
Loss on debt extinguishment and modification expense	20,445	1,036	398
Revaluation of acquisition-related contingent consideration liability	—	391	—
Other	30	19	203
Cash provided (used) by changes in operating assets and liabilities:			
Accounts receivable	(483)	(2,340)	(1,862)
Commissions receivable	(678)	184	—
Other receivables	(204)	22,875	651
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	(869)	3,741	(493)
Other long-term assets	(12,281)	(887)	(15)
Accounts payable	(123)	(153)	369
Commissions and advisory fees payable	1,226	(395)	—
Deferred revenue	(3,248)	582	1,875
Accrued expenses and other current and long-term liabilities	1,407	21,195	10,643
Net cash provided by operating activities from continuing operations	72,846	85,970	24,308
Investing Activities:			
Business acquisitions, net of cash acquired	—	(1,788)	(569,709)
Purchases of property and equipment	(5,039)	(3,812)	(1,512)
Proceeds from sales of investments	249	—	156,506
Proceeds from maturities of investments	7,252	12,807	296,455
Purchases of investments	(409)	(8,767)	(214,257)
Net cash provided (used) by investing activities from continuing operations	2,053	(1,560)	(332,517)
Financing Activities:			
Proceeds from credit facility, net of debt issuance costs and debt discount of $5,913 and $1,875 in 2017 and $9,730 and $12,000 in 2015, respectively	365,836	—	378,270
Repurchase of convertible notes	(172,827)	(20,667)	—
Repayment of credit facility	(290,000)	(140,000)	(51,940)
Repayment of note payable with related party	(3,200)	(3,200)	—
Stock repurchases	—	—	(7,735)
Proceeds from stock option exercises	40,271	2,216	2,409
Proceeds from issuance of stock through employee stock purchase plan	1,429	1,402	1,193
Tax payments from shares withheld for equity awards	(9,095)	(1,752)	(1,545)
Contingent consideration payments for business acquisition	(946)	—	—
Other	(30)	—	—
Net cash provided (used) by financing activities from continuing operations	(68,562)	(162,001)	320,652
Net cash provided (used) by continuing operations	6,337	(77,591)	12,443
Net cash provided by operating activities from discontinued operations	—	14,047	22,126
Net cash provided (used) by investing activities from discontinued operations	1,028	83,608	(540)
Net cash used in financing activities from discontinued operations	—	(25,000)	(17,000)
Net cash provided by discontinued operations	1,028	72,655	4,586
Effect of exchange rate changes on cash and cash equivalents	78	(26)	(17)
Net increase (decrease) in cash, cash equivalents, and restricted cash	7,443	(4,962)	17,012
Cash and cash equivalents, beginning of period	54,868	59,830	42,818
Cash and cash equivalents, end of period	$ 62,311	$ 54,868	$ 59,830
Non-cash investing and financing activities from continuing operations:			
Cash paid for income taxes from continuing operations	$ 1,267	$ 2,012	$ 614
Cash paid for interest from continuing operations	$ 23,316	$ 32,377	$ 8,994

See notes to consolidated financial statements.

BLUCORA, INC.
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
Years Ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015

Note 1: Description of the Business

Blucora, Inc. (the ***"Company"*** or ***"Blucora"***) operates two businesses: a Wealth Management business and an online Tax Preparation business. The Wealth Management business consists of the operations of HDV Holdings, Inc. and its subsidiaries (***"HD Vest"***). HDV Holdings, Inc. is the parent company of the Wealth Management business and owns all outstanding shares of HD Vest, Inc., which serves as a holding company for the various financial services subsidiaries. Those subsidiaries include HD Vest Investment Securities, Inc. (an introducing broker-dealer), H.D. Vest Advisory Services, Inc. (a registered investment adviser), and H.D. Vest Insurance Agency, LLC (an insurance broker) (collectively referred to as the ***"Wealth Management business"*** or the ***"Wealth Management segment"***). The Tax Preparation business consists of the operations of TaxAct, Inc. and its subsidiary (***"TaxAct"***) and provides digital tax preparation solutions for consumers, small business owners, and tax professionals through its website www.TaxAct.com (collectively referred to as the ***"Tax Preparation business"*** or the ***"Tax Preparation segment"***).

Prior to 2017, the Company also operated an internet Search and Content business and an E-Commerce business. The Search and Content business operated through the InfoSpace LLC subsidiary (***"InfoSpace"***) and provided search services to users of its owned and operated and distribution partners' web properties, as well as online content through HowStuffWorks (***"HSW"***). The E-Commerce business consisted of the operations of Monoprice, Inc. (***"Monoprice"***) and sold self-branded electronics and accessories to both consumers and businesses primarily through its website.

The Company completed both divestitures in 2016. Specifically, on November 17, 2016, the Company closed on an agreement with YFC-Boneagle Electric Co., Ltd (***"YFC"***), under which YFC acquired the E-Commerce business for $40.5 million. On August 9, 2016, the Company closed on an agreement with OpenMail LLC (***"OpenMail"***), under which OpenMail acquired substantially all of the assets and assumed certain specified liabilities of the Search and Content business for $45.2 million.

The financial condition, results of operations, cash flows, and the notes to financial statements reflect the Search and Content and E-Commerce businesses as discontinued operations for all periods presented. Except for disclosures related to equity and unless otherwise specified, disclosures in these consolidated financial statements reflect continuing operations.

On October 14, 2015, the Company announced its plans to focus on the technology-enabled financial solutions market (the ***"Strategic Transformation"***). Strategic Transformation refers to the Company's transformation into a technology-enabled financial solutions company comprised of TaxAct and HD Vest and the divestitures of the Search and Content and E-Commerce businesses in 2016. As part of the Strategic Transformation and "One Company" operating model, the Company announced on October 27, 2016 plans to relocate its corporate headquarters by June 2017 from Bellevue, Washington to Irving, Texas. The actions to relocate corporate headquarters were intended to drive efficiencies and improve operational effectiveness. The restructuring is now substantially complete and it is expected to be completed by early 2018.

Segments: The Company has two reportable segments: the Wealth Management segment, which is the HD Vest business, and the Tax Preparation segment, which is the TaxAct business. Unless the context indicates otherwise, the Company uses the term ***"Wealth Management"*** to represent services sold through the HD Vest business, the term ***"Tax Preparation"*** to represent services and software sold through the TaxAct business, the term ***"Search and Content"*** to represent search and content services, and the term ***"E-Commerce"*** to represent products sold through the Monoprice business.

Reclassification: The Company reclassified certain amounts on its consolidated statements of cash flows related to excess tax benefits generated from stock-based compensation and restricted cash, both in connection with the implementation of new accounting pronouncements. See the *"Recent accounting pronouncements"* section of "Note 2: Summary of Significant Accounting Policies" for additional information.

Principles of consolidation: The consolidated financial statements include the accounts of the Company and its subsidiaries. Intercompany accounts and transactions have been eliminated.

Use of estimates: The preparation of financial statements in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America (***"GAAP"***) requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets, liabilities, revenues, expenses, and disclosure of contingencies. Estimates include those used for impairment

of goodwill and other intangible assets, useful lives of other intangible assets, acquisition accounting, valuation of investments, revenue recognition, the estimated allowance for sales returns and doubtful accounts, internally developed software, accrued contingencies, stock option valuation, and valuation allowance for deferred tax assets. Actual amounts may differ from estimates.

Net capital and regulatory requirements: The Company's HD Vest broker-dealer subsidiary operates in a highly regulated industry and is subject to various regulatory capital requirements. Failure to meet minimum capital requirements can initiate certain mandatory and possible additional discretionary actions by regulators that, if undertaken, could have substantial monetary and non-monetary impacts to HD Vest's operations. As of December 31, 2017, HD Vest met all capital adequacy requirements to which it was subject.

Seasonality: Blucora's Tax Preparation segment is highly seasonal, with a significant portion of its annual revenue earned in the first four months of the Company's fiscal year. During the third and fourth quarters, the Tax Preparation segment typically reports losses because revenue from the segment is minimal while core operating expenses continue.

Note 2: Summary of Significant Accounting Policies

Cash equivalents: The Company considers all highly liquid debt instruments with an original maturity of ninety days or less at date of acquisition to be cash equivalents.

Cash segregated under federal or other regulations: Cash segregated under federal and other regulations is held in a special bank account for the exclusive benefit of the Company's wealth management customers.

Available-for-sale investments: The Company principally invests its available cash in fixed-rate debt securities. Fixed-rate debt securities generally include debt instruments issued by the U.S. federal government and its agencies, international governments, municipalities and publicly-held corporations, as well as commercial paper, insured time deposits with commercial banks, and money market funds invested in securities issued by agencies of the U.S., although specific holdings can vary from period to period depending upon the Company's cash requirements. Such investments are included in "Cash and cash equivalents" and "Available-for-sale investments" on the consolidated balance sheets and reported at fair value with unrealized gains and losses included in "Accumulated other comprehensive loss" on the consolidated balance sheets.

The Company reviews its available-for-sale investments for impairment and classifies the impairment of any individual available-for-sale investment as either temporary or other-than-temporary. The differentiating factors between temporary and other-than-temporary impairments are primarily the length of the time and the extent to which the fair value has been less than cost, the financial condition and near-term prospects of the issuer, and the intent and ability of the Company to retain its investment in the issuer for a period of time sufficient to allow for any anticipated recovery in fair value. An impairment classified as temporary is recognized in "Accumulated other comprehensive loss" on the consolidated balance sheets. An impairment classified as other-than-temporary is recognized in "Other loss, net" on the consolidated statements of comprehensive income.

Accounts receivable: Accounts receivable are stated at amounts due from customers net of an allowance for doubtful accounts, which was not material at December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

Property and equipment: Property and equipment are stated at cost. Depreciation is computed under the straight-line method over the following estimated useful lives:

Computer equipment and software	3 years
Data center servers	3 years
Internally-developed software	3 years
Office equipment	7 years
Office furniture	7 years
Leasehold improvements	Shorter of lease term or economic life

The Company capitalizes certain internal-use software development costs, consisting primarily of contractor costs and employee salaries and benefits allocated on a project or product basis. The Company capitalized $3.5 million, $1.0 million, and $0.3 million of internal-use software costs in the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015, respectively.

Business combinations and intangible assets including goodwill: The Company accounts for business combinations using the acquisition method. The acquisition-date fair value of total consideration includes cash and contingent consideration. Since the Company is contractually obligated to pay contingent consideration upon the achievement of specified objectives, a contingent consideration liability is recorded at the acquisition date. The Company reviews its assumptions related to the fair value of the contingent consideration liability each reporting period and, if there are material changes, revalues the contingent consideration liability based on the revised assumptions, until such contingency is satisfied through payment upon the achievement of the specified objectives. The change in the fair value of the contingent consideration liability is recognized in "General and administrative" expense on the consolidated statements of comprehensive income for the period in which the fair value changes.

Goodwill is calculated as the excess of the acquisition-date fair value of total consideration over the acquisition-date fair value of net assets, including the amount assigned to identifiable intangible assets, and is assigned to reporting units that are expected to benefit from the synergies of the business combination as of the acquisition date. Reporting units are consistent with reportable segments and included the former Search and Content and E-Commerce segments. Identifiable intangible assets with finite lives are amortized over their useful lives on a straight-line basis, except for advisor relationships which are amortized proportional to expected revenue. Acquisition-related costs, including advisory, legal, accounting, valuation, and other similar costs, are expensed in the periods in which the costs are incurred. The results of operations of acquired businesses are included in the consolidated financial statements from the acquisition date.

Goodwill and intangible assets impairment: The Company evaluates goodwill and indefinite-lived intangible assets for impairment annually, as of November 30, or more frequently when events or circumstances indicate that impairment may have occurred. As part of the impairment evaluation, the Company may elect to perform an assessment of qualitative factors. If this qualitative assessment indicates that it is more likely than not that the fair value of a reporting unit or an indefinite-lived intangible asset is less than its carrying value, or if the Company elects to bypass the qualitative assessment, the Company then would proceed with the quantitative impairment test.

The Company performed a qualitative assessment as of November 30, 2017, and determined that no conditions existed that would make it more likely than not that goodwill and the indefinite-lived assets were impaired. Therefore, no further quantitative assessment was required.

Definite-lived intangible assets are reviewed for impairment when events or circumstances indicate that the carrying value of an asset or group of assets may not be recoverable. The determination of recoverability is based on an estimate of pre-tax undiscounted future cash flows, using the Company's best estimates of future net sales and operating expenses, expected to result from the use and eventual disposition of the asset or group of assets over the remaining economic life of the primary asset in the asset group. The Company measures the amount of the impairment as the excess of the asset's carrying value over its fair value.

See "Note 4: Discontinued Operations" for discussion of impairment of goodwill and intangible assets in the fourth quarter of 2015.

Fair value of financial instruments: The Company measures its cash equivalents, available-for-sale investments, and contingent consideration liability at fair value. The Company considers the carrying values of accounts receivable, commissions receivable, other receivables, prepaid expenses, other current assets, accounts payable, commissions and advisory fees payable, accrued expenses, and other current liabilities to approximate fair values primarily due to their short-term natures.

Fair value is the price that would be received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction between market participants at the measurement date. Cash equivalents and debt securities are classified within Level 2 (see "Note 7: Fair Value Measurements") of the fair value hierarchy because the Company values them utilizing market observable inputs. Unrealized gains and losses are included in "Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss)" on the consolidated balance sheets, and amounts reclassified out of comprehensive income into net income are determined on the basis of specific identification.

The Company has a contingent consideration liability that is related to the Company's 2015 acquisition of SimpleTax Software Inc. (***"SimpleTax"***) and is classified within Level 3 (see "Note 7: Fair Value Measurements") of the fair value hierarchy because the Company values it utilizing inputs not observable in the market. The Company accounts for contingent consideration in accordance with applicable accounting guidance pertaining to business combinations.

Redeemable noncontrolling interests: Noncontrolling interests that are redeemable at the option of the holder and not solely within the control of the issuer are classified outside of stockholders' equity. In connection with the acquisition of HD Vest, management of that business has retained an ownership interest. The Company is party to put and call arrangements with respect to these interests. These put and call arrangements allow HD Vest management to require the Company to purchase their interests or allow the Company to acquire such interests, respectively. The put arrangements do not meet the definition of a derivative instrument as the put agreements do not provide for net settlement. To the extent that the redemption value of these interests exceeds the value determined by adjusting the carrying value for the subsidiary's attribution of net income (loss), the value of such interests is adjusted to the redemption value with a corresponding adjustment to additional paid-in capital. The redemption amount at December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016 was $12.4 million and $11.6 million, respectively.

Revenue recognition, general: The Company recognizes revenue when all four revenue recognition criteria have been met: persuasive evidence of an arrangement exists, the Company has delivered the product or performed the service, the fee is fixed or determinable, and collectibility is probable. Determining whether and when these criteria have been satisfied involves judgment, estimates and assumptions that can have an impact on the timing and amount of revenue that the Company recognizes.

Revenue is recognized net of allowances, which are management's estimates of fees to be paid to a third party service provider for fulfillment of the Company's audit defense services. These fees are not material and generally include an estimate of audit defense fees to be paid, based on an analysis of historical data and contractual terms, and are recorded when revenue is recognized. The Company believes that it can reasonably and reliably estimate fees to the third party service provider in a timely manner.

The Company evaluates whether revenue should be presented on a gross basis, which is the amount that a customer pays for the service or product, or on a net basis, which is the customer payment less amounts the Company pays to suppliers. In making that evaluation, the Company primarily considers indicators such as whether the Company is the primary obligor in the arrangement and assumes the risks and rewards as a principal in the customer transaction.

Wealth management revenue recognition: Wealth management revenue consists primarily of commission revenue, advisory revenue, asset-based revenue, and transaction and fee revenue. Revenue is recognized in the periods in which the related services are performed, provided that persuasive evidence of an arrangement exists, the fee is fixed or determinable, and collectibility is reasonably assured. Payments received by the Company in advance of the performance of service are deferred and recognized as revenue when earned. Of Wealth management revenues, commissions revenue contains subjective judgments and the use of estimates.

Commissions represent amounts generated by HD Vest's financial advisors for their clients' purchases and sales of securities and various investment products. The Company generates two types of commissions: transaction-based sales commissions that occur at the point of sale, as well as trailing commissions for which the Company provides ongoing account support to clients of its financial advisors.

The Company records transaction-based sales commission revenue on a trade-date basis, which is when the Company's performance obligations in generating the commissions have been substantially completed. Trailing commission revenue is based on a percentage of the current market value of clients' investment holdings in trail-eligible assets and recognized over the period during which services are performed. Since trailing commission revenue is generally paid in arrears, the Company estimates it based on a number of factors, including stock market index levels and the amount of trailing commission revenues received in prior periods, and also considers historical payout ratios. These estimates are primarily based on historical information and there is not significant judgment involved.

A substantial portion of commission revenue is ultimately paid to financial advisors. The Company records an estimate for transaction-based commissions payable based upon the payout rate of the financial advisor generating the accrued commission revenue. The Company records an estimate for trailing commissions payable based upon historical payout ratios.

Such amounts are recorded as "Commissions and advisory fees payable" on the consolidated balance sheets and "Wealth management services cost of revenue" on the consolidated statements of comprehensive income.

Tax preparation revenue recognition: The Company derives revenue from the sale of tax preparation online services, ancillary services, packaged tax preparation software, and multiple element arrangements that may include a combination of these items. Ancillary services primarily include tax preparation support services, data archive services and e-filing services. The Company recognizes revenue from the sale of its packaged software when legal title transfers. This is generally when its customers download the software from the Internet or, to a lesser extent, when the software ships. This revenue is recorded in the Tax Preparation segment. Of Tax Preparation revenues, revenues from bank or reloadable prepaid debit card services, and software and/or services that consist of multiple elements contain subjective judgments and the use of estimates.

The bank or reloadable prepaid debit card services are offered to taxpayers as an option to receive their tax refunds in the form of a prepaid bank card or to have the fees for the software and/or services purchased by the customers deducted from their refunds. Other value-added service revenue consists of revenue from revenue sharing and royalty arrangements with third party partners. Revenue for these transactions is recognized when the revenue recognition criteria are met; for some arrangements that is upon filing and for other arrangements that is upon the Company's determination of when collectibility is probable.

For software and/or services that consist of multiple elements, the Company must: (1) determine whether and when each element has been delivered; (2) determine the fair value of each element using the selling price hierarchy of vendor-specific objective evidence (***"VSOE"***) of fair value if available, third-party evidence (***"TPE"***) of fair value if VSOE is not available, and estimated selling price (***"ESP"***) if neither VSOE nor TPE is available; and (3) allocate the total price among the various elements based on the relative selling price method. Once the Company has allocated the total price among the various elements, it recognizes revenue when the revenue recognition criteria described above are met for each element.

VSOE generally exists when the Company sells the deliverable separately. When VSOE cannot be established, the Company attempts to establish a selling price for each element based on TPE. TPE is determined based on competitor prices for similar deliverables when sold separately. When the Company is unable to establish selling price using VSOE or TPE, it uses ESP in its allocation of arrangement consideration. ESP is the estimated price at which the Company would sell the software or service if it were sold on a stand-alone basis. The Company determines ESP for the software or service by considering multiple factors including, but not limited to, historical stand-alone sales, pricing practices, market conditions, competitive landscape, internal costs, and gross margin objectives. However, the impact of multiple element arrangements are not material and primarily impact the timing of revenue recognition over the tax filing season, which is concentrated within the first two quarters of the filing period.

Advertising expenses: Costs for advertising are recorded as expense, and classified within "Sales and marketing" on the consolidated statements of comprehensive income, when the advertisement appears. Advertising expense totaled $51.7 million, $44.0 million, and $35.5 million for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015, respectively. Prepaid advertising costs were $0.3 million and $0.6 million at December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

Stock-based compensation: The Company measures stock-based compensation at the grant date based on the fair value of the award and recognizes it as expense, net of estimated forfeitures, over the vesting or service period, as applicable, of the stock award using the straight-line method. The Company recognizes stock-based compensation over the vesting period for each separately vesting portion of a share-based award as if they were individual share-based awards. The Company estimates forfeitures at the time of grant and revises those estimates, if necessary, in subsequent periods if actual forfeitures differ from those estimates.

Income taxes: The Company accounts for income taxes under the asset and liability method, under which deferred tax assets, including net operating loss carryforwards, and liabilities are determined based on temporary differences between the book and tax bases of assets and liabilities. The Company periodically evaluates the likelihood of the realization of deferred tax assets and reduces the carrying amount of the deferred tax assets by a valuation allowance to the extent the Company believes a portion will not be realized. The Company considers many factors when assessing the likelihood of future realization of the deferred tax assets, including expectations of future taxable income, recent cumulative earnings experience by taxing jurisdiction, and other relevant factors. There is a wide range of possible judgments relating to the valuation of the Company's deferred tax assets.

The Company records liabilities to address uncertain tax positions that have been taken in previously filed tax returns or that are expected to be taken in a future tax return. The determination for required liabilities is based upon an analysis of each individual tax position, taking into consideration whether it is more likely than not that the tax position, based on technical merits, will be sustained upon examination. The tax benefit to be recognized in the financial statements from such a position is measured as the largest amount of benefit that has a greater than 50% likelihood of being realized upon ultimate settlement with the taxing authority. The difference between the amount recognized and the total tax position is recorded as a liability. The ultimate resolution of these tax positions may be greater or less than the liabilities recorded. The Company recognizes interest and penalties related to uncertain tax positions in interest expense and general and administrative expense, respectively.

Foreign currency: The financial position and operating results of the Company's foreign operations are consolidated using the local currency as the functional currency. Assets and liabilities recorded in local currencies are translated at the exchange rate on the balance sheet date, while revenues and expenses are translated at the average exchange rate for the applicable period. Translation adjustments resulting from this process are recorded in "Accumulated other comprehensive loss" on the consolidated balance sheets. The gain or loss on foreign currency transactions, calculated as the difference between the historical exchange rate and the exchange rate at the applicable measurement date, are recorded in "Other loss, net" on the consolidated statements of comprehensive income.

Concentration of credit risk: Financial instruments that potentially subject the Company to concentrations of credit risk consist primarily of cash equivalents, short-term investments, trade accounts receivable, and commissions receivable. These instruments are generally unsecured and uninsured.

For cash equivalents, short-term investments, and commissions receivable, the Company attempts to manage exposure to counterparty credit risk by only entering into agreements with major financial institutions and investment sponsors that are expected to be able to fully perform under the terms of the agreement.

Accounts receivable are typically unsecured and are derived from revenues earned from customers primarily located in the United States operating in a variety of geographic areas. The Company performs ongoing credit evaluations of its customers and maintains allowances for potential credit losses.

Geographic revenue information: Almost all of the Company's revenue for 2017, 2016, and 2015 was generated from customers located in the United States.

Recent accounting pronouncements: Changes to GAAP are established by the Financial Accounting Standards Board (***"FASB"***) in the form of accounting standards updates (***"ASUs"***) to the FASB's Accounting Standards Codification (***"ASC"***). The Company considers the applicability and impact of all recent ASUs. ASUs not listed below were assessed and determined to be either not applicable or are expected to have minimal impact on the Company's consolidated financial position and results of operations. The Company currently is considering ASUs that impact the following areas:

Revenue recognition - In May 2014, the FASB issued guidance codified in ASC 606, "Revenue from Contracts with Customers," which amends the guidance in former ASC 605 "Revenue Recognition." The core principle of the guidance is that an entity should recognize revenue to depict the transfer of promised goods or services to customers in an amount that reflects the consideration to which the entity expects to be entitled in exchange for those goods or services. This will be achieved in a five-step process. Enhanced disclosures also will be required. This guidance is effective on a retrospective basis--either to each reporting period presented or with the cumulative effect of initially applying this guidance recognized at the date of initial application--for annual reporting periods, including interim reporting periods within those annual reporting periods, beginning after December 15, 2017.

The Company will adopt the requirements of the new standard on January 1, 2018, utilizing the modified retrospective transition method. Upon adoption, the Company will recognize a $1.8 million cumulative effect of adopting this ASU as an adjustment to the opening balance of retained earnings, and will recognize approximately $2.0 million of certain licensing fees as a reduction to both revenues and operating expenses on the consolidated statements of comprehensive income. Prior periods will not be retrospectively adjusted.

Leases - In February 2016, the FASB issued an ASU on lease accounting, whereby lease assets and liabilities, whether arising from leases that are considered operating or finance (capital) and have a term of twelve months or less, will be

recognized on the balance sheet. Enhanced qualitative disclosures also will be required. This guidance is effective on a modified retrospective basis--with various practical expedients related to leases that commenced before the effective date--for annual reporting periods, including interim reporting periods within those annual reporting periods, beginning after December 15, 2018. Early adoption is permitted. The Company expects that the adoption of this ASU will not have a material impact to its consolidated financial statements and related disclosures, and it will adopt this ASU on January 1, 2019.

Stock-based compensation - In March 2016, the FASB issued an ASU on employee share-based payment accounting. The ASU requires that excess tax benefits and deficiencies be recognized as income tax benefit or expense, rather than as additional paid-in capital. In addition, the ASU requires that excess tax benefits be recorded in the period that shares vest or settle, regardless of whether the benefit reduces taxes payable in the same period. Cash flows related to excess tax benefits will be included as an operating activity, and no longer classified as a financing activity, in the statement of cash flows. This guidance was effective for annual reporting periods, including interim reporting periods within those annual reporting periods, beginning after December 15, 2016. The guidance related to the recognition of excess tax benefits and deficiencies as income tax benefit or expense was effective on a prospective basis, and the guidance related to the timing of excess tax benefit recognition was effective using a modified retrospective transition method with a cumulative-effect adjustment to equity as of the beginning of the period in which the guidance is adopted. The cash flow presentation guidance was effective on a retrospective or prospective basis.

The Company implemented this ASU on January 1, 2017 and recorded a cumulative-effect adjustment of $51.5 million to credit retained earnings for deferred tax assets related to net operating losses that arose from excess tax benefits, which the Company has deemed realizable. In addition to this:

- At the time of adoption and on a prospective basis, the primary impact of adoption was the recognition of excess tax benefits and deficiencies, including deferred tax assets related to net operating losses that arose from excess tax benefits which the Company has deemed realizable, in the income tax provision (rather than in additional paid-in capital). This caused income taxes to differ from taxes at the statutory rates in 2017. For the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company recognized an estimated $20.1 million decrease to the income tax provision, which resulted in a $20.1 million increase to income from continuing operations and net income attributable to Blucora, a $0.45 increase to basic earnings per share, and a $0.43 increase to diluted earnings per share.

- The Company applied the cash flow presentation guidance on a retrospective basis, restating the consolidated statements of cash flows to present excess tax benefits as an operating activity (rather than a financing activity). For the year ended December 31, 2016, this resulted in an increase to cash provided by operating activities from continuing operations of $16.0 million and a corresponding decrease to cash used by financing activities from continuing operations. The restatement had no impact on total cash flows for the period presented.

The ASU also clarifies that payments made to tax authorities on an employee's behalf for withheld shares should be presented as a financing activity in the statement of cash flows, allows the repurchase of more of an employee's shares for tax withholding purposes without triggering liability accounting, and provides an accounting policy election to account for forfeitures as they occur. The cash flow presentation requirements for payments made to tax authorities on an employee's behalf had no impact to any periods presented, since such cash flows historically have been presented as a financing activity. The Company is not planning to change tax withholdings and will continue to estimate forfeitures in determining the amount of compensation cost to be recognized in each period.

Measurement of Credit Losses - In June 2016, the FASB issued an ASU which requires companies to measure credit losses utilizing a methodology that reflects expected credit losses and requires a consideration of a broader range of reasonable and supportable information to inform credit loss estimates. This ASU is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2019, including those interim periods within those fiscal years. The Company is currently assessing the impact of adopting this ASU, but based on a preliminary assessment, does not expect the adoption of this guidance to have a material impact on its consolidated financial statements and related disclosures.

Statement of cash flows and restricted cash - In November 2016, the FASB issued an ASU on the classification and presentation of changes in restricted cash on the statement of cash flows. The ASU requires that the statement of cash flows explains the change during the period in the total of cash, cash equivalents, and restricted cash; therefore, the amounts described as restricted cash should be included with cash and cash equivalents when reconciling the beginning and end of period total

amounts on the statement of cash flows. This guidance is effective for annual reporting periods, including interim reporting periods within those annual reporting periods, beginning after December 15, 2017. Early adoption is permitted. The guidance is effective on a retrospective basis. The Company elected to early adopt this guidance as of January 1, 2017. The reclassification was not material to the periods presented and had no impact on total cash flows, income from continuing operations, or net income attributable to Blucora for the periods presented.

Note 3: Business Combinations

HD Vest: On December 31, 2015 and pursuant to the Purchase Agreement dated October 14, 2015, the Company acquired HD Vest for $613.7 million, including cash acquired of $38.9 million and after a $1.8 million final working capital adjustment in the first quarter of 2016. In connection with the acquisition, certain members of HD Vest management rolled over a portion of the proceeds they would have otherwise received at the closing into shares of the acquisition subsidiary through which the Company consummated the purchase of HD Vest. A portion of those shares were sold to the Company in exchange for a promissory note. After giving effect to the rollover shares and related purchase of the rollover shares for the promissory note, the Company indirectly owns 95.52% of HDV Holdings, Inc., with the remaining 4.48% non-controlling interest held collectively by the rollover management members and subject to put and call arrangements exercisable beginning in 2019.

The acquisition was funded by a combination of cash on hand and the TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facility, under which the Company borrowed $400.0 million (see "Note 9: Debt").

Valuations were as follows (in thousands):

		Fair value
Tangible assets acquired, including cash acquired of $38,874	$	78,681
Liabilities assumed		(21,212)
Identifiable net assets acquired	$	57,469
Fair value adjustments for intangible assets:		
Advisor relationships	$	240,300
Sponsor relationships		16,500
Curriculum		800
Proprietary technology		13,600
Trade name		52,500
Fair value of intangible assets acquired	$	323,700
Purchase price allocation:		
Cash paid	$	612,288
Plus: promissory note		6,400
Plus: noncontrolling interest		15,038
Less: escrow receivable		(20,000)
Purchase price		613,726
Less: identifiable net assets acquired		(57,469)
Less: fair value of intangible assets acquired		(323,700)
Plus: deferred tax liability related to intangible assets		123,484
Excess of purchase price over net assets acquired, allocated to goodwill	$	356,041

The Company's estimates, at the time of acquisition, of the economic lives of the acquired intangible assets are 20 years for the advisor relationships, 18 years for the sponsor relationships, 4 years for the curriculum, 6 years for the proprietary technology, and the trade name is estimated to have an indefinite life. Goodwill consists largely of the increased cross-serving opportunities and expanded addressable markets for both HD Vest and TaxAct, neither of which apply for separate recognition, and is not expected to be deductible for income tax purposes.

The primary areas of the acquisition accounting that were not yet finalized at the time of the acquisition related to income and non-income based taxes, certain contingent liability matters, indemnification assets, and residual goodwill. In the third and fourth quarters of 2016, the Company recorded a combined $2.1 million increase to net assets acquired and a corresponding decrease to goodwill, predominantly related to the finalization of federal and state tax returns and associated analyses for pre-acquisition tax periods. Acquisition accounting is now considered closed.

The promissory note was with the President of HD Vest and was scheduled to be paid over a three-year period. In December 2017, the Company fully repaid the remaining $3.2 million outstanding. The note bore interest at a rate of 5% per year.

The Purchase Agreement dictated that the Company place into escrow $20.0 million of additional consideration that was contingent upon HD Vest's 2015 earnings performance. The contingent consideration threshold was not achieved; therefore, the amount was recorded as a receivable as of December 31, 2015 and paid to the Company in the first quarter of 2016.

The gross contractual amount of accounts receivable, including commissions receivable, acquired was $21.6 million, all of which the Company has substantially collected.

During 2015, the Company incurred transaction costs of $11.0 million, which were recognized in "General and administrative expense," and $21.8 million in debt discount and issuance-related costs on the new credit facility.

Pro Forma Financial Information of the HD Vest Acquisition (unaudited):

The financial information in the table below summarizes the combined results of operations of Blucora and HD Vest on a pro forma basis, for the period in which the acquisition occurred and the prior reporting period as though the companies had been combined as of the beginning of each period presented. Pro forma adjustments have been made to include (a) amortization expense on the definite-lived intangible assets identified in this acquisition, debt-related expenses associated with the credit facility that was used to finance the acquisition, and estimated stock-based compensation related to Blucora share-based award grants to HD Vest employees; and to remove (b) acquisition-related transaction costs and debt-related expenses associated with HD Vest's previous debt facility, the latter of which was paid off and closed at the acquisition date. Income taxes also have been adjusted for the effect of these items. The following pro forma financial information is presented for informational purposes only and is not necessarily indicative of the results of operations that would have been achieved had the acquisition occurred at the beginning of the period presented (in thousands):

	Year ended December 31, 2015
Revenue	$ 437,447
Loss from continuing operations	$ (12,793)

SimpleTax: On July 2, 2015, TaxAct acquired all of the equity of SimpleTax, a provider of online tax preparation services for individuals in Canada, for approximately $1.9 million in cash and additional consideration of up to $3.7 million that is contingent upon product availability and revenue performance over a three-year period. The estimated fair value of the contingent consideration as of the acquisition date was $3.3 million. See "Note 7: Fair Value Measurements" for additional information related to the fair value measurement of the contingent consideration.

The acquisition of SimpleTax is strategic to TaxAct and intended to expand its operations. SimpleTax is included in the Tax Preparation segment. Intangible assets acquired amounted to approximately $0.9 million, consisting of customer relationships and proprietary technology both of which have finite lives. Identifiable net liabilities assumed were not material. Goodwill amounted to $4.5 million. Pro forma results of operations have not been presented because the effects of this acquisition were not material to the Company’s consolidated results of operations.

Note 4: Discontinued Operations

On October 14, 2015, the Company announced its plans to focus on the technology-enabled financial solutions market, as more fully described in "Note 1: Description of the Business." The Strategic Transformation included plans to divest the Search and Content and E-Commerce businesses. Financial condition, results of operations, cash flows, and the notes to financial statements reflect the Search and Content and E-Commerce businesses as discontinued operations for all periods presented. Amounts in discontinued operations include previously unallocated depreciation, amortization, stock-based compensation, income taxes, and other corporate expenses that were attributable to the Search and Content and E-Commerce businesses.

On November 17, 2016, the Company closed on an agreement with YFC, under which YFC acquired the E-Commerce business for $40.5 million, which included a working capital adjustment. Of this amount, $39.5 million was received in the fourth quarter of 2016 and the remaining $1.0 million was received in the first half of 2017. The Company used all of the proceeds to pay down debt and recognized a loss on sale of the E-Commerce business of approximately $52.2 million.

On August 9, 2016, the Company closed on an agreement with OpenMail, under which OpenMail acquired substantially all of the assets and assumed certain specified liabilities of the Search and Content business for $45.2 million. The Company used all of the proceeds to pay down debt and recognized a loss on sale of the Search and Content business of approximately $21.6 million. Under a separate agreement, the Company is subleasing to InfoSpace the office space that InfoSpace is using currently. The rent payments and September 2020 termination date are consistent with the underlying non-cancelable operating lease.

Summarized financial information for discontinued operations is as follows (in thousands):

	Years ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Major classes of items in net income (loss):			
Revenues	$ —	$ 227,989	$ 352,077
Operating expenses	—	(211,395)	(391,702)
Other income (loss), net	—	(719)	(2,673)
Income (loss) from discontinued operations before income taxes	—	15,875	(42,298)
Loss on sale of discontinued operations before income taxes	—	(73,800)	—
Discontinued operations, before income taxes	—	(57,925)	(42,298)
Income tax benefit (expense)	—	(5,196)	14,950
Discontinued operations, net of income taxes	$ —	$ (63,121)	$ (27,348)

Business exit costs: In conjunction with the Strategic Transformation, the Company incurred business exit costs of approximately $4.5 million, which primarily were recorded in discontinued operations in the fourth quarter of 2015 and the first quarter of 2016. The following table summarizes the activity in the business exit cost liability (in thousands):

	Employee-Related Termination Costs
Balance as of December 31, 2015	$ 994
Charges	3,552
Payments	(4,396)
Balance as of December 31, 2016	150
Charges	—
Payments	—
Balance as of December 31, 2017	$ 150

Goodwill and other intangible assets: The Company tested the goodwill and trade names related to Search and Content and E-Commerce for impairment as of October 31, 2015, due to the Company's October 2015 announcement of its plans to divest these businesses and their resulting classification as held for sale. In the fourth quarter of 2015, the Company recorded goodwill impairments of $15.1 million and $33.8 million related to these reporting units, respectively. In addition, in the fourth quarter of 2015, the Company recorded trade name impairments of $5.9 million and $4.2 million related to the HSW and Monoprice trade names, respectively.

The impairments of goodwill and intangible assets were recorded in discontinued operations. The Company classified the fair value of its reporting units, goodwill, and trade names within Level 3 because they were valued using discounted cash flows, which have significant unobservable inputs related to the weighted-average cost of capital and forecasts of future cash flows.

The Company determined that the impairments related to Search and Content and E-Commerce were indicators requiring the review of the Search and Content and E-Commerce long-lived assets for recoverability. The results of this review indicated that the carrying values of the Search and Content and E-Commerce long-lived assets were recoverable.

Debt: On November 22, 2013, Monoprice entered into a credit facility agreement, which consisted of a $30.0 million revolving credit loan and a $40.0 million term loan, both of which have since been settled. The final maturity date of the credit facility was November 22, 2018 but became immediately due and payable upon the sale of Monoprice in November 2016.

Monoprice initially borrowed $50.0 million under the credit facility, from both the revolving credit loan and the term loan, and had net repayment activity of $25.0 million in 2016 and no repayment activity in 2017 as Monoprice was no longer owned by the Company. Monoprice had the right to permanently reduce, without premium or penalty, the credit facility at any time. In accordance with this provision, Monoprice repaid the outstanding amount under the term loan in full in 2015, which was included in the net repayment activity for 2015 and resulted in the write-down of the remaining unamortized discount and debt issuance costs related to the term loan.

Note 5: Restructuring

On October 27, 2016, the Company announced plans to relocate its corporate headquarters by June 2017 from Bellevue, Washington to Irving, Texas. In connection with this plan, the Company has incurred restructuring costs of approximately $7.0 million. These costs will primarily be recorded in "Restructuring" on the consolidated statements of comprehensive income and within corporate-level activity for segment purposes. The Company has also incurred costs that were not included as restructuring, such as recruiting and overlap in personnel expenses as it transitions positions to Texas (***"Strategic Transformation Costs"***). The restructuring is now substantially complete and it is expected to be completed by early 2018.

The following table summarizes the activity in the restructuring liability (in thousands):

	Employee-Related Termination Costs	Contract Termination Costs	Fixed Asset Impairments	Stock-Based Compensation	Other Costs	Total
Balance as of December 31, 2015	$ —	$ —	$ —	$ —	$ —	$ —
Restructuring charges	4,234	—	—	(364)	—	3,870
Non-cash	—	—	—	364	—	364
Balance as of December 31, 2016	$ 4,234	$ —	$ —	$ —	$ —	$ 4,234
Restructuring charges	261	(241)	1,878	1,148	55	3,101
Payments	(3,293)	(535)	—	—	(55)	(3,883)
Non-cash	—	1,457	(1,878)	(1,148)	—	(1,569)
Balance as of December 31, 2017	$ 1,202	$ 681	$ —	$ —	$ —	$ 1,883

Employee-related termination costs primarily include severance benefits, under both ongoing and one-time benefit arrangements that were paid at termination dates throughout 2017, with the majority paid in the second half of 2017. Contract termination costs and fixed asset impairments were incurred in connection with the Bellevue facility's operating lease and related fixed assets, which are described further in the next two paragraphs, respectively. Stock-based compensation primarily includes the impact of equity award modifications associated with employment contracts for certain individuals impacted by the relocation, as well as forfeitures that were recorded for severed employees. Other costs include office relocation costs.

The Company has a non-cancelable operating lease that runs through 2020 for its former corporate headquarters in Bellevue, Washington, which the Company occupied until May 2017. In March 2017, the Company agreed to a sublease for the entire Bellevue facility, which was effective June 1, 2017 and expires on September 30, 2020, consistent with the underlying operating lease. Under that sublease agreement, the Company will not recover all of its remaining lease rental obligations (including common area maintenance costs and real estate taxes) and, therefore, recognized a net loss on sublease of $0.4 million.

The Company fully impaired the $1.9 million carrying value of the leasehold improvements and the office furniture and equipment that would not be fully recovered in connection with this lease.

All of these items were recorded in the first quarter of 2017.

Note 6: Goodwill and Other Intangible Assets

The following table presents goodwill by reportable segment (in thousands):

	Wealth Management	Tax Preparation	Total
Balance as of December 31, 2015	$ 356,386	$ 192,573	$ 548,959
Purchase accounting adjustments	(345)	—	(345)
Foreign currency translation adjustment	—	127	127
Balance as of December 31, 2016	356,041	192,700	548,741
Foreign currency translation adjustment	—	296	296
Balance as of December 31, 2017	$ 356,041	$ 192,996	$ 549,037

The purchase accounting adjustment in 2016 primarily related to the final working capital adjustment and the finalization of federal and state tax returns associated with the acquisition of HD Vest. The 2016 activity is described in "Note 3: Business Combinations."

Intangible assets other than goodwill consisted of the following (in thousands):

		December 31, 2017			December 31, 2016		
	Weighted Average Amortization Period (months)	Gross carrying amount	Accumulated amortization	Net	Gross carrying amount	Accumulated amortization	Net
Definite-lived intangible assets:							
Customer relationships	25	$101,711	$ (75,105)	$ 26,606	$101,690	$ (62,381)	$ 39,309
Advisor relationships	216	240,300	(34,211)	206,089	240,300	(17,138)	223,162
Sponsor relationships	192	16,500	(1,833)	14,667	16,500	(917)	15,583
Curriculum	24	800	(400)	400	800	(200)	600
Technology	47	43,895	(35,452)	8,443	43,855	(32,331)	11,524
Total definite-lived intangible assets	189	403,206	(147,001)	256,205	403,145	(112,967)	290,178
Indefinite-lived intangible assets:							
Trade names		72,000	—	72,000	72,000	—	72,000
Total		$475,206	$ (147,001)	$328,205	$475,145	$ (112,967)	$362,178

Amortization expense was as follows (in thousands):

	Years ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Statement of comprehensive income line item:			
Cost of revenue	$ 195	$ 812	$ 7,546
Amortization of other acquired intangible assets	33,807	33,331	12,757
Total	$ 34,002	$ 34,143	$ 20,303

Expected amortization of definite-lived intangible assets held as of December 31, 2017 is as follows (in thousands):

	2018	2019	2020	2021	2022	Thereafter	Total
Statement of comprehensive income (loss) line item:							
Cost of revenue	$ 101	$ —	$ —	$ —	$ —	$ —	$ 101
Amortization of other acquired intangible assets	33,061	32,321	19,969	17,138	14,843	138,772	256,104
Total	$ 33,162	$ 32,321	$ 19,969	$ 17,138	$ 14,843	$138,772	$256,205

Note 7: Fair Value Measurements

In accordance with ASC 820, "Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures," certain of the Company's assets and liabilities, which are carried at fair value, are classified in one of the following three categories:

Level 1: Quoted market prices in active markets for identical assets or liabilities.

Level 2: Observable market-based inputs, other than Level 1, or unobservable inputs that are corroborated by market data.

Level 3: Unobservable inputs that are not corroborated by market data and reflect the Company's own assumptions.

The fair value hierarchy of the Company's financial assets and liabilities carried at fair value and measured on a recurring basis was as follows (in thousands):

		Fair value measurements at the reporting date using		
	December 31, 2017	Quoted prices in active markets using identical assets (Level 1)	Significant other observable inputs (Level 2)	Significant unobservable inputs (Level 3)
Cash equivalents: money market and other funds	$ 10,857	$ —	$ 10,857	$ —
Total assets at fair value	$ 10,857	$ —	$ 10,857	$ —
Acquisition-related contingent consideration liability	$ 2,689	$ —	$ —	$ 2,689
Total liabilities at fair value	$ 2,689	$ —	$ —	$ 2,689

		Fair value measurements at the reporting date using		
	December 31, 2016	Quoted prices in active markets using identical assets (Level 1)	Significant other observable inputs (Level 2)	Significant unobservable inputs (Level 3)
Cash equivalents:				
U.S. government securities	$ 2,749	$ —	$ 2,749	$ —
Money market and other funds	4,090	—	4,090	—
Commercial paper	1,999	—	1,999	—
Taxable municipal bonds	1,301	—	1,301	—
Total cash equivalents	10,139	—	10,139	—
Available-for-sale investments:				
Debt securities:				
U.S. government securities	2,000	—	2,000	—
Commercial paper	1,998	—	1,998	—
Time deposits	807	—	807	—
Taxable municipal bonds	2,296	—	2,296	—
Total debt securities	7,101	—	7,101	—
Total assets at fair value	$ 17,240	$ —	$ 17,240	$ —
Acquisition-related contingent consideration liability	$ 3,421	$ —	$ —	$ 3,421
Total liabilities at fair value	$ 3,421	$ —	$ —	$ 3,421

A reconciliation of Level 3 items measured at fair value on a recurring basis was as follows (in thousands):

	Years ended December 31,	
	2017	2016
Acquisition-related contingent consideration liability:		
Balance at beginning of year	$ 3,421	$ 2,951
Payment	(946)	—
Revaluation	—	391
Foreign currency transaction loss	214	79
Balance at end of year	$ 2,689	$ 3,421

The contingent consideration liability is related to the Company's acquisition of SimpleTax (see "Note 3: Business Combinations"), and the related payments that began in 2017 and are expected to continue annually through 2019.As of December 31, 2017, the Company could be required to pay up to an undiscounted amount of $2.7 million. This liability is included within Level 3 of the fair value hierarchy because the Company values it utilizing inputs not observable in the market. Specifically, the Company has determined the fair value of the contingent consideration liability based on a probability-weighted discounted cash flow analysis, which includes assumptions related to estimating revenues, the probability of payment (100%), and the discount rate (9%). A decrease in estimated revenues or an increase in the discount rate would decrease the fair value of the contingent consideration liability. As of December 31, 2017, the Company recorded approximately $1.3 million in "Accrued expenses and other current liabilities" and $1.4 million in "Other long-term liabilities" on the consolidated balance sheets.

In 2016, the Company had non-recurring Level 3 fair value measurements related to the repurchase of its Notes. See "Note 9: Debt" for details. In 2015, the Company had non-recurring Level 3 fair value measurements related to its reporting units and various intangible assets as part of goodwill and intangible asset impairment reviews. See "Note 4: Discontinued Operations" for details.

The contractual maturities of the debt securities classified as available-for-sale at December 31, 2016 were less than one year.

The cost and fair value of available-for-sale investments were as follows (in thousands):

	Amortized cost	Gross unrealized gains	Gross unrealized losses	Fair value
Balance as of December 31, 2016	$ 7,102	$ —	$ (1)	$ 7,101

Note 8: Balance Sheet Components

Prepaid expenses and other current assets, net consisted of the following (in thousands):

	December 31,	
	2017	2016
Prepaid expenses	$ 6,972	$ 5,990
Other current assets, net	393	331
Total prepaid expenses and other current assets, net	$ 7,365	$ 6,321

Property and equipment, net consisted of the following (in thousands):

	December 31,	
	2017	2016
Computer equipment and data center	$ 7,121	$ 6,884
Purchased software	4,200	4,420
Internally-developed software	2,728	2,478
Office equipment	557	745
Office furniture	801	1,532
Leasehold improvements and other	3,244	6,246
	18,651	22,305
Accumulated depreciation	(12,081)	(12,269)
	6,570	10,036
Capital projects in progress	3,261	800
Total property and equipment, net	$ 9,831	$ 10,836

Total depreciation expense was $4.1 million, $4.5 million, and $2.3 million for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015, respectively.

Unamortized internally-developed software, which excludes software projects in progress that are included in capital projects in progress above, was $4.1 million and $1.7 million at December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively. The Company recorded amortization expense for internally-developed software of $0.9 million, $1.0 million, and $0.3 million for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015, respectively.

Accrued expenses and other current liabilities consisted of the following (in thousands):

	December 31,	
	2017	2016
Salaries and related expenses	$ 12,451	$ 12,506
Accrued interest on Notes (see Note 9)	—	1,837
Other	7,126	4,185
Total accrued expenses and other current liabilities	$ 19,577	$ 18,528

Note 9: Debt

The Company's debt consisted of the following (in thousands):

	December 31, 2017				December 31, 2016			
		Unamortized				Unamortized		
	Principal amount	Discount	Debt issuance costs	Net carrying value	Principal amount	Discount	Debt issuance costs	Net carrying value
Senior secured credit facility	$ 345,000	$ (1,455)	$ (5,464)	$ 338,081	$ —	$ —	$ —	$ —
TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facility	—	—	—	—	260,000	(7,124)	(5,295)	247,581
Convertible Senior Notes	—	—	—	—	172,859	(6,913)	(1,770)	164,176
Note payable, related party	—	—	—	—	3,200	—	—	3,200
Total debt	$ 345,000	$ (1,455)	$ (5,464)	$ 338,081	$ 436,059	$ (14,037)	$ (7,065)	$ 414,957

Senior secured credit facility: In May 2017, Blucora entered into a credit agreement with a syndicate of lenders in order to (a) refinance the credit facilities previously entered into in 2015 to finance the HD Vest acquisition (the ***"TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facility"***), (b) redeem its Notes that were outstanding at the time, and (c) provide a term loan and revolving line of credit for future working capital, capital expenditure and general business purposes (the ***"Blucora senior secured credit facilities"***). Consequently, the TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facility was repaid in full and the commitments thereunder were terminated. The Blucora senior secured credit facilities in the aggregate amount of $425.0 million consist of a committed $50.0 million revolving credit facility (including a letter of credit sub-facility), and a $375.0 million term loan facility, and mature in May 2022 and May 2024, respectively. Obligations under the Blucora senior secured credit facilities are guaranteed by certain of Blucora's subsidiaries and secured by the assets of Blucora and those subsidiaries. The Blucora senior secured credit facilities include financial and operating covenants, including a consolidated total net leverage ratio, which are set forth in detail in the credit agreement. As of December 31, 2017, Blucora was in compliance with all of the financial and operating covenants.

Principal payments on the term loan are payable quarterly in an amount equal to 0.25% of the initial outstanding principal. Under the initial term loan, the applicable interest rate margin was 3.75% for Eurodollar Rate loans and 2.75% for ABR loans. In November 2017, the Blucora senior secured credit facilities agreement was amended in order to refinance and reprice the initial term loan, such that the applicable interest rate margin is 3.0% for Eurodollar Rate loans and 2.0% for ABR loans. Through December 31, 2017, Blucora has made prepayments of $30.0 million towards the term loan.

Depending on Blucora’s Consolidated First Lien Net Leverage Ratio (as defined in the credit agreement), the applicable interest rate margin on the revolving credit facility is from 2.75% to 3.00% for Eurodollar Rate loans and 1.75% to 2.00% for ABR loans. Interest is payable at the end of each interest period. Blucora has not borrowed any amounts under the revolving credit facility.

Blucora also has the right to prepay the term loan or outstanding amounts under the revolving credit facility without any premium or penalty (other than customary Eurodollar breakage costs). Prepayments of the term loan are subject to certain prepayment minimums. Beginning with the fiscal year ending December 31, 2018, Blucora will be required to make annual prepayments of the term loan in an amount equal to a percentage of excess cash flow of Blucora during the applicable fiscal year from 0% to 50.0%, depending on the Consolidated First Lien Net Leverage Ratio (as defined in the credit agreement) for such fiscal year.

As of December 31, 2017, the credit facility's principal amount approximated its fair value as it is a variable rate instrument and the current applicable margin approximates current market conditions.

In connection with the refinancing, the Company performed an analysis by creditor and determined that the refinancing qualified as an extinguishment of the TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facilities and the Notes. As a result, the Company recognized a loss on debt extinguishment during the three months ended June 30, 2017, which was recorded in "Other loss, net" on the consolidated statements of comprehensive income and consisted of the following (in thousands):

Loss on debt extinguishment - TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facility	$	9,593
Loss on debt extinguishment - Convertible Senior Notes		6,715
Total loss on debt extinguishment	$	16,308

The amount for the TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facility included the write-off of the remaining unamortized discount and debt issuance costs. For the Notes, the Company allocated the cash paid first to the liability component of the Notes based on the fair value of the redeemed Notes. The fair value was based on a discounted cash flow analysis of the Notes' principal and related interest payments, using a discount rate that approximated the current market rate for similar debt without conversion rights. The difference between the fair value and net carrying value of the repurchased Notes was recognized as a loss and recorded in "Other loss, net" on the consolidated statements of comprehensive income. No amount was allocated to the equity component of the Notes, since the fair value of the liability component exceeded the cash paid.

TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facility: On December 31, 2015, TaxAct and HD Vest entered into an agreement with a syndicate of lenders for the purposes of financing the HD Vest acquisition and providing future working capital flexibility for TaxAct and HD Vest. The credit facility consisted of a $25.0 million revolving credit loan--which included a letter of credit and

swingline loans--and a $400.0 million term loan for an aggregate $425.0 million credit facility. The final maturity dates of the revolving credit loan and term loan were December 31, 2020 and December 31, 2022, respectively. Obligations under the credit facility were guaranteed by TaxAct Holdings, Inc. and HD Vest Holdings, Inc. and were secured by the equity of the TaxAct and HD Vest businesses. While Blucora was not a party to the agreement, it had guaranteed the obligations of TaxAct and HD Vest under the credit facility, secured by its equity in TaxAct Holdings, Inc.

TaxAct and HD Vest borrowed $400.0 million under the term loan and had net repayment activity of $140.0 million in 2016. Principal payments on the term loan were payable quarterly and were between 0.625% and 1.875% of outstanding principal, depending upon TaxAct and HD Vest's combined net leverage of EBITDA ratio. The interest rate on the term loan was variable at the London Interbank Offered Rate (***"LIBOR"***), subject to a floor of 1.00%, plus a margin of 6.00%, payable at the end of each interest period.

The Company had repayment activity of $64.0 million and $140.0 million during 2017 and 2016, respectively. These repayments resulted in the acceleration of a portion of the unamortized discount and debt issuance costs, which were recorded in "Other loss, net" on the consolidated statements of comprehensive income.

TaxAct 2013 credit facility: On August 30, 2013, TaxAct entered into an agreement to refinance a 2012 credit facility on more favorable terms. TaxAct had net repayment activity of $51.9 million in 2015. This credit facility was repaid in full in the second quarter of 2015 and subsequently closed, at which point the remaining debt issuance costs were written off. The write-off of the debt issuance costs was recorded in "Other loss, net" on the consolidated statements of comprehensive income (see "Note 14: Other Loss, Net" for details).

Convertible Senior Notes: On March 15, 2013, the Company issued $201.3 million aggregate principal amount of its Notes, inclusive of the underwriters' exercise in full of their over-allotment option of $26.3 million. In June 2017, the Company redeemed almost all of the outstanding Notes for cash with proceeds from the senior secured credit facility. The Company received net proceeds from the offering of approximately $194.8 million after adjusting for debt issuance costs, including the underwriting discount.

The Notes were issued under an indenture dated March 15, 2013 (the ***"Indenture"***) by and between the Company and The Bank of New York Mellon Trust Company, N.A., as Trustee. There were no financial or operating covenants relating to the Notes.

During 2016, the Company repurchased $28.4 million of the Notes' principal for cash of $20.7 million. The Company allocated the cash paid first to the liability component of the Notes based on the fair value of the repurchased Notes. The fair value was based on a discounted cash flow analysis of the Notes' principal and related interest payments, using a discount rate that approximated the current market rate for similar debt without conversion rights. The difference between the fair value and net carrying value of the repurchased Notes was recognized as a gain, since the Notes were repurchased below par value, and recorded in "Other loss, net" on the consolidated statements of comprehensive income (see "Note 14: Other Loss, Net" for details). No amount was allocated to the equity component of the Notes, since the fair value of the liability component exceeded the cash paid. The repurchase also resulted in the write-down of a portion of the unamortized discount and debt issuance costs, which was also recorded in "Other loss, net" on the consolidated statements of comprehensive income.

The following table sets forth total interest expense related to the Notes (in thousands):

	Years ended December 31,		
	2017	**2016**	**2015**
Contractual interest expense (Cash)	$ 3,141	$ 7,619	$ 8,553
Amortization of debt issuance costs (Non-cash)	401	939	989
Accretion of debt discount (Non-cash)	1,567	3,666	3,866
Total interest expense	$ 5,109	$ 12,224	$ 13,408
Effective interest rate of the liability component	7.32%	7.32%	7.32%

Note payable, related party: In December 2017, the Company fully repaid $3.2 million of a note payable with the former President of HD Vest that arose in connection with the acquisition of HD Vest. The note was scheduled to be paid over a three-

year period, with 50% paid in year one ($3.2 million paid in December 2016), 40% to be paid in 2017, and 10% to be paid in 2018. Certain members of HD Vest management rolled over a portion of the proceeds they would have otherwise received at the acquisition's closing into shares of the acquisition subsidiary through which the Company consummated the purchase of HD Vest. The former President of HD Vest sold a portion of his shares to the Company in exchange for the note. The note bore interest at a rate of 5% per year.

Note 10: Commitments and Contingencies

The Company's contractual commitments are as follows for years ending December 31 (in thousands):

	2018	2019	2020	2021	2022	Thereafter	Total
Operating lease commitments:							
Operating lease obligations	$ 4,201	$ 4,281	$ 3,946	$ 2,493	$ 1,979	$ 1,678	$ 18,578
Sublease income	(1,265)	(1,288)	(991)	—	—	—	(3,544)
Net operating lease commitments	2,936	2,993	2,955	2,493	1,979	1,678	15,034
Purchase commitments	5,528	3,600	3,600	2,100	600	3,400	18,828
Debt commitments	—	2,000	3,500	3,500	3,500	332,500	345,000
Interest payable	15,172	15,157	15,068	14,872	14,719	20,584	95,572
Acquisition-related contingent consideration liability	1,304	1,385	—	—	—	—	2,689
Total	$ 24,940	$ 25,135	$ 25,123	$ 22,965	$ 20,798	$ 358,162	$ 477,123

Operating lease commitments: As discussed in "Note 5: Restructuring", the Company has a non-cancelable operating lease that runs through 2020 for its former corporate headquarters in Bellevue, Washington, which the Company occupied until May 2017. In March 2017, the Company agreed to a sublease for the entire Bellevue facility, which was effective June 1, 2017 and expires on September 30, 2020, consistent with the underlying operating lease.

The Company leases office space, and these leases are classified as operating leases. Net rent expense under those operating leases was as follows (in thousands):

	Years ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Rent expense	$ 2,972	$ 3,793	$ 1,237
Less: sublease rent income	(594)	(342)	—
Net rent expense	$ 2,378	$ 3,451	$ 1,237

Purchase commitments: The Company's purchase commitments consist primarily of non-cancelable service agreements for its data centers, a sponsorship marketing agreement, commitments with a vendor to provide cloud computation services of $10.1 million over the next four years, and a commitment to switch to a new clearing firm provider that has been selected by the Company by the third quarter of 2018.

Debt commitments and interest on Notes: The Company’s debt commitments are based upon contractual payment terms and consist of the outstanding principal related to the Blucora senior secured credit facility. For further detail regarding the credit facility, see "Note 9: Debt."

Acquisition-related contingent consideration liability: The contingent consideration liability is related to the Company's acquisition of SimpleTax (see "Note 3: Business Combinations" and "Note 7: Fair Value Measurements"), and the related payments that began in 2017 and are expected to continue annually through 2019.

Collateral pledged: The Company has pledged a portion of its cash as collateral for certain of its property lease-related banking arrangements. At December 31, 2017, the total amount of collateral pledged under these standby letters of credit was $0.7 million.

Off-balance sheet arrangements: The Company has no off-balance sheet arrangements other than operating leases.

Litigation: From time to time, the Company is subject to various legal proceedings or claims that arise in the ordinary course of business. The Company accrues a liability when management believes that it is both probable that a liability has been incurred and the amount of loss can be reasonably estimated. Following is a brief description of the more significant legal proceedings. Although the Company believes that resolving such claims, individually or in aggregate, will not have a material adverse impact on its financial statements, these matters are subject to inherent uncertainties.

On December 12, 2016, a shareholder derivative action was filed by Jeffrey Tilden against the Company, as a nominal defendant, Andrew Snyder, who was a director of the Company at that time, certain companies affiliated with Mr. Snyder, a former officer of the Company, GCA Savvian Advisors, LLC ("GCA Savvian"), and certain other current and former members of the Blucora Board of Directors, in the Superior Court of the State of California in and for the County of San Francisco. The complaint asserted claims for breaches of fiduciary duty against certain current and former directors of the Company related to the Company's share repurchases and the Company's acquisitions of HD Vest and Monoprice. The complaint asserted a claim against GCA Savvian, the Company's financial advisor in connection with the HD Vest acquisition, for aiding and abetting breaches of fiduciary duty. The complaint also asserted a claim for insider trading against Mr. Snyder, a former director of the Company, and certain companies affiliated with Mr. Snyder. The derivative action did not seek monetary damages from the Company. The complaint sought corporate governance reforms, declaratory relief, monetary damages from the other defendants, attorney's fees and prejudgment interest.

On March 10, 2017, the Company filed a motion to dismiss for improper venue as a result of a forum selection provision in the Company's bylaws that required the plaintiff to file his derivative fiduciary duty claims in Delaware. Other defendants also filed motions to quash the summons due to a lack of personal jurisdiction over them. On July 25, 2017, the Court granted the Company's motion to dismiss. The case was stayed by the Court until November 22, 2017 so that Tilden could file a complaint in Delaware, after which the case was dismissed without further order of the Court.

On November 21, 2017, Tilden filed a shareholder derivative action in the Delaware Court of Chancery asserting the same claims against the same defendants and seeking the same relief as the San Francisco Superior Court lawsuit. On January 31, 2018, Blucora filed a motion to dismiss the Delaware complaint and the court has not yet ruled on this motion.

The Company has entered into indemnification agreements in the ordinary course of business with its officers and directors, and the agreement entered into with GCA Savvian in connection with the acquisition of HD Vest also contained indemnification provisions. Pursuant to these agreements, the Company may be obligated to advance payment of legal fees and costs incurred by the defendants pursuant to the Company's obligations under these indemnification agreements and applicable Delaware law.

Note 11: Stockholders' Equity

Stock incentive plan: The Company may grant incentive or non-qualified stock options, stock, restricted stock, RSUs, stock appreciation rights and performance shares or performance units to employees, non-employee directors, and consultants.

The Company granted options and RSUs during 2017 and 2016 under its 2015 Incentive Plan (as amended and restated), as well as options and RSUs during 2016 under its 2016 Inducement Plan. The Company granted options and RSUs during 2015 under its Restated 1996 Flexible Stock Incentive Plan. Options and RSUs generally vest over a period of three years, with one-third vesting one year from the date of grant and the remainder vesting ratably thereafter on a semi-annual basis, and expire seven years from the date of grant. There are a few exceptions to this vesting schedule, which provide for vesting at different rates or based on achievement of performance targets.

The Company issues new shares upon the exercise of options and upon the vesting of RSUs. If an option or RSU is surrendered or otherwise unused, the related shares will continue to be available.

Employee Stock Purchase Plan: The 2016 Employee Stock Purchase Plan *("ESPP")* permits eligible employees to contribute up to 15% of their base earnings toward the twice-yearly purchase of Company common stock, subject to an annual maximum dollar amount. The purchase price is the lesser of 85% of the fair market value of common stock on the first day or on the last day of an offering period. An aggregate of 1.0 million shares of common stock are authorized for issuance under the ESPP. Of this amount, 0.9 million shares were available for issuance as of December 31, 2017. The Company issues new shares upon purchase through the ESPP.

Stock repurchase program: In February 2013, the Company's Board of Directors approved a stock repurchase program whereby the Company could purchase its common stock in open-market transactions. The repurchase period concluded in May 2016. Repurchased shares were retired and resumed the status of authorized but unissued shares of common stock. The Company had the following open-market share purchase activity, exclusive of purchase and administrative costs (in thousands, except per share data):

	Total Number of Shares Purchased	Average Price Paid per Share	Total Cost
Year ended December 31, 2017	—	$ —	$ —
Year ended December 31, 2016	—	$ —	$ —
Year ended December 31, 2015	551	$ 14.01	$ 7,713

Other comprehensive income: The following table provides information about activity in other comprehensive income (in thousands):

	Unrealized gain (loss) on investments	Foreign currency translation adjustment	Total
Balance as of December 31, 2014	$ (1,113)	$ —	$ (1,113)
Other comprehensive income (loss)	1,103	(517)	586
Balance as of December 31, 2015	(10)	(517)	(527)
Other comprehensive income	9	137	146
Balance as of December 31, 2016	(1)	(380)	(381)
Other comprehensive income	1	376	377
Balance as of December 31, 2017	$ —	$ (4)	$ (4)

Note 12: Stock-Based Compensation

A summary of the general terms of stock options and RSUs at December 31, 2017 was as follows:

Number of shares authorized for awards	11,333,964
Options and RSUs outstanding	4,720,099
Options and RSUs expected to vest	4,347,251
Options and RSUs available for grant	5,160,506

The following activity occurred under the Company's stock incentive plans:

	Options	Weighted average exercise price	Intrinsic value (in thousands)	Weighted average remaining contractual term (in years)
Stock options:				
Outstanding December 31, 2016	8,635,815	$ 11.21		
Granted	1,474,266	$ 16.87		
Forfeited	(1,233,344)	$ 9.94		
Expired	(197,957)	$ 19.71		
Exercised	(4,872,858)	$ 11.41		
Outstanding December 31, 2017	3,805,922	$ 13.13	$ 35,855	5.2
Exercisable December 31, 2017	1,225,062	$ 13.37	$ 12,389	4.1
Vested and expected to vest after December 31, 2017	3,538,301	$ 13.17	$ 33,301	5.2

	Stock units	Weighted average grant date fair value	Intrinsic value (in thousands)	Weighted average remaining contractual term (in years)
RSUs:				
Outstanding December 31, 2016	1,473,797	$ 8.45		
Granted	373,529	$ 18.39		
Forfeited	(169,202)	$ 10.34		
Vested	(763,947)	$ 8.43		
Outstanding December 31, 2017	914,177	$ 12.10	$ 20,205	0.8
Expected to vest after December 31, 2017	808,950	$ 12.00	$ 17,878	0.8

Supplemental information is presented below:

	Years ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Stock options:			
Weighted average grant date fair value per share granted	$ 6.25	$ 2.46	$ 3.65
Total intrinsic value of options exercised (in thousands)	$ 44,405	$ 437	$ 1,072
Total fair value of options vested (in thousands)	$ 5,566	$ 7,064	$ 4,416
RSUs:			
Weighted average grant date fair value per unit granted	$ 18.39	$ 7.82	$ 13.67
Total intrinsic value of units vested (in thousands)	$ 14,642	$ 5,755	$ 5,437
Total fair value of units vested (in thousands)	$ 6,469	$ 8,981	$ 6,742

The Company included the following amounts for stock-based compensation expense, which related to stock options, RSUs, and the ESPP, in the consolidated statements of comprehensive income (in thousands):

	Years ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Cost of revenue	$ 774	$ 166	$ 96
Engineering and technology	984	1,640	484
Sales and marketing	2,376	2,548	771
General and administrative	7,519	9,774	7,343
Restructuring	1,148	(364)	—
Total in continuing operations	12,801	13,764	8,694
Discontinued operations	—	1,471	4,402
Total	$ 12,801	$ 15,235	$ 13,096
Total excluded and capitalized as part of internal-use software	$ —	$ —	$ 135

In the fourth quarter of 2016, the Company recorded stock-based compensation expense in connection with the corporate headquarters relocation announcement. See "Note 5: Restructuring" for additional information.

To estimate stock-based compensation expense, the Company used the Black-Scholes-Merton valuation method with the following assumptions for stock options granted:

	Years ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Risk-free interest rate	1.2% - 1.94%	0.83% - 1.59%	0.21% - 1.33%
Expected dividend yield	0%	0%	0%
Expected volatility	39% - 45%	35% - 45%	34% - 40%
Expected life	3.8	3.4	3.0

The risk-free interest rate was based on the implied yield available on U.S. Treasury issues with an equivalent remaining term. The Company last paid a dividend in 2008. The expected volatility was based on historical volatility of the Company's stock for the related expected life of the award. The expected life of the award was based on historical experience, including historical post-vesting termination behavior.

As of December 31, 2017, total unrecognized stock-based compensation expense related to unvested stock awards is as follows:

	Expense (in thousands)	Weighted average period over which to be recognized (in years)
Stock options	$ 5,569	1.9
RSUs	4,016	1.2
Total for continuing operations	$ 9,585	1.6

Note 13: Segment Information

The Company has two reportable segments: the Wealth Management segment and the Tax Preparation segment. The Wealth Management segment consists of the HD Vest business, which was acquired on December 31, 2015. HD Vest is included in Blucora's results of operations beginning on January 1, 2016. The Tax Preparation segment consists of the TaxAct business. As a result of the Strategic Transformation and the 2016 divestitures of the Search and Content and E-Commerce segments, those former segments are included in discontinued operations.

The Company’s chief executive officer is its chief operating decision maker and reviews financial information presented on a disaggregated basis. This information is used for purposes of allocating resources and evaluating financial performance.

The Company does not allocate certain general and administrative costs (including personnel and overhead costs), stock-based compensation, depreciation, and amortization of intangible assets to the reportable segments. Such amounts are reflected in the table under the heading "Corporate-level activity." In addition, the Company does not allocate other loss, net and income taxes to the reportable segments. The Company does not account for, and does not report to management, its assets or capital expenditures by segment other than goodwill and intangible assets used for impairment analysis purposes.

Information on the reportable segments currently presented to the Company’s chief operating decision maker and a reconciliation to consolidated net income are presented below (in thousands):

	Years ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Revenue:			
Wealth Management	$ 348,620	$ 316,546	$ —
Tax Preparation	160,937	139,365	117,708
Total revenue	509,557	455,911	117,708
Operating income (loss):			
Wealth Management	50,916	46,296	—
Tax Preparation	72,921	66,897	56,984
Corporate-level activity	(75,800)	(76,076)	(61,791)
Total operating income (loss)	48,037	37,117	(4,807)
Other loss, net	(44,551)	(39,781)	(12,542)
Income tax benefit	25,890	1,285	4,623
Discontinued operations, net of income taxes	—	(63,121)	(27,348)
Net income (loss)	$ 29,376	$ (64,500)	$ (40,074)

Revenues by major category within each segment are presented below (in thousands):

	Years ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Wealth Management:			
Commission	$ 160,241	$ 150,125	$ —
Advisory	145,694	129,417	—
Asset-based	26,297	22,653	—
Transaction and fee	16,388	14,351	—
Total Wealth Management revenue	$ 348,620	$ 316,546	$ —
Tax Preparation:			
Consumer	$ 147,084	$ 126,289	$ 105,367
Professional	13,853	13,076	12,341
Total Tax Preparation revenue	$ 160,937	$ 139,365	$ 117,708

Note 14: Other Loss, Net

"Other loss, net" consisted of the following (in thousands):

	Years ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Interest income	$ (110)	$ (81)	$ (609)
Interest expense	21,211	32,424	9,044
Amortization of debt issuance costs	1,089	1,840	1,133
Accretion of debt discounts	1,947	4,690	3,866
Loss on debt extinguishment and modification expense (see Note 9 and next table)	20,445	1,036	398
Gain on third party bankruptcy settlement	(116)	(172)	(1,128)
Other	85	44	(162)
Other loss, net	$ 44,551	$ 39,781	$ 12,542

The gain on third party bankruptcy settlement related to amounts received in connection with ongoing distributions from the Lehman Brothers estate, of which the Company is a creditor.

As discussed in Note 9: Debt, the Company repurchased some of the Notes and prepaid a portion of the TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facility in 2016. In addition, the Company repaid the TaxAct 2013 credit facility in full in 2015 and subsequently closed it. This activity resulted in the following amounts recorded to loss on debt extinguishment and modification expense (in thousands):

	Years ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Write-off of debt discount and debt issuance costs on TaxAct - HD Vest 2015 credit facility (related to closure)	$ 9,593	$ —	$ —
Write-off of debt discount and debt issuance costs on the Notes (related to termination)	6,715	—	—
Accelerated accretion of debt discount and amortization of debt issuance costs on credit facilities (related to prepayments)	2,990	6,716	—
Gain on the Notes repurchased	—	(7,724)	—
Accelerated accretion of debt discount on the Notes (related to repurchase)	—	1,628	—
Accelerated amortization of debt issuance costs on the Notes (related to repurchase)	1,147	416	398
Total loss on debt extinguishment	$ 20,445	$ 1,036	$ 398

Note 15: 401(k) Plan

The Company has a 401(k) savings plan covering its employees. Eligible employees may contribute through payroll deductions. The Company may match the employees' 401(k) contributions at the discretion of the Company's Board of Directors. Pursuant to a continuing resolution, the Company has matched a portion of the 401(k) contributions made by its employees. The amount contributed by the Company ranges from 1% to 4% of an employee's salary, depending upon the percentage contributed by the employee. For the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015, the Company contributed $1.6 million, $1.4 million, and $0.6 million, respectively, for employees, with the increase in 2016 due to the acquisition of HD Vest on December 31, 2015.

Note 16: Income Taxes

Income tax benefit consisted of the following (in thousands):

	Years ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Current:			
U.S. federal	$ 123	$ 14,695	$ 7,470
State	962	2,048	514
Foreign	122	27	—
Total current expense	1,207	16,770	7,984
Deferred:			
U.S. federal	(26,012)	(16,608)	(12,004)
State	(1,022)	(1,421)	(538)
Foreign	(63)	(26)	(65)
Total deferred benefit	(27,097)	(18,055)	(12,607)
Income tax benefit	$ (25,890)	$ (1,285)	$ (4,623)

Income tax benefit differed from the amount computed by applying the statutory federal income tax rate of 35% as follows (in thousands):

	Years ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Income tax expense (benefit) at the statutory federal income tax rate	$ 1,220	$ (930)	$ (6,072)
State income taxes, net of federal benefit	582	454	(15)
Deductible domestic manufacturing costs	—	(1,225)	(787)
Non-deductible compensation	283	249	27
Non-deductible acquisition-related transaction costs	—	37	2,524
Tax Legislation impact	(21,430)	—	—
Excess tax benefit due to stock-based compensation	(11,558)	—	—
Change in liabilities for uncertain tax positions	(321)	(86)	—
Change in valuation allowance	4,974	15	(223)
Other	360	201	(77)
Income tax benefit	$ (25,890)	$ (1,285)	$ (4,623)

The tax effect of temporary differences and net operating loss carryforwards that gave rise to the Company's deferred tax assets and liabilities were as follows (in thousands):

	December 31,	
	2017	2016
Deferred tax assets:		
Net operating loss carryforwards	$ 111,416	$ 176,722
Accrued compensation	4,586	12,069
Deferred revenue	1,638	3,740
Tax credit carryforwards	—	10,925
Stock-based compensation	3,592	9,689
Capital loss	22,579	37,680
Other, net	3,466	5,798
Total gross deferred tax assets	147,277	256,623
Valuation allowance	(109,242)	(226,813)
Deferred tax assets, net of valuation allowance	38,035	29,810
Deferred tax liabilities:		
Depreciation and amortization	(81,182)	(138,034)
Discount on Notes	—	(2,385)
Other, net	(286)	(517)
Total gross deferred tax liabilities	(81,468)	(140,936)
Net deferred tax liabilities	$ (43,433)	$ (111,126)

At December 31, 2017, the Company evaluated the need for a valuation allowance for certain deferred tax assets based upon its assessment of whether it is more likely than not that the Company will generate sufficient future taxable income necessary to realize the deferred tax benefits. The Company maintains a valuation allowance against its deferred tax assets that are capital in nature to the extent that it is more likely than not that the related deferred tax benefit will not be realized. The Company also has a deferred tax asset related to the net operating losses (***"NOLs"***) that it believes are more likely than not to expire before utilization. If assumptions change and the Company determines it will be able to realize these NOLs, the tax benefit relating to any reversal of the valuation allowance on deferred tax assets as of December 31, 2017 will be recognized as a reduction of income tax expense.

On December 22, 2017, President Donald Trump signed into law "H.R. 1", formerly known as the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act (the ***"Tax Legislation"***). The Tax Legislation, which was effective January 1, 2018, significantly revised the U.S. tax code by, among other things, lowering the corporate income tax rate from 35% to 21%. At December 31, 2017, the Company has not completed its accounting for the tax effects of the Tax Legislation; however, in certain cases, as described below, we have made a reasonable estimate of the effects on the Company's existing deferred tax balances and the one-time transition tax. In other cases, the Company has not been able to make a reasonable estimate and continues to account for those items based on its existing accounting under ASC 740, Income Taxes, and the provisions of the tax laws that were in effect immediately prior to enactment. For the items for which the Company was able to determine a reasonable estimate, the Company recognized a provisional amount of approximately $21.4 million, which is recorded as additional income tax benefit in 2017. In all cases, the Company will continue to make and refine its calculations as additional analysis is completed. In addition, the Company's estimates may also be affected as it gains a more thorough understanding of the tax law.

Provisional amounts: The Company remeasured certain deferred tax assets and liabilities based on the rates at which they are expected to reverse in the future, which is generally 21%. However, the Company is still analyzing certain aspects of the Tax Legislation and refining its calculations, which could potentially affect the measurement of these balances or potentially give rise to new deferred tax amounts. The provisional amounts recorded related to the remeasurement of the Company's net deferred tax liabilities was approximately $21.4 million.

The changes in the valuation allowance for deferred tax assets are shown below (in thousands):

	Years ended December 31,	
	2017	2016
Balance at beginning of year	$ 226,813	$ 217,452
Increase (decrease) in valuation allowance - capital items	(15,980)	14,926
Decrease in valuation allowance - utilization of equity-based deferred tax assets	(101,830)	(5,684)
Increase in valuation allowance - other	239	119
Balance at end of year	$ 109,242	$ 226,813

For the year ended December 31, 2017, the decrease in valuation allowance for capital items related primarily to the enactment of a change in the federal tax rate from 35% to 21% for tax years beginning after December 31, 2017. The decrease in valuation allowance for utilization of equity-based deferred tax assets related primarily to the enactment of a change in the federal tax rate from 35% to 21% for tax years beginning after December 31, 2017, a $50.2 million decrease related to the adoption of ASU 2016-09, which required a cumulative-effect adjustment for historical equity net operation losses (see Note 2: Summary of Significant Accounting Policies for additional details) and a $0.4 million adjustment related to the future taxable income expected to be available to partially utilize the carryforwards, offset by a $5.6 million increase related to the current year generation of NOLs.

For the year ended December 31, 2016, the valuation allowance change included an increase of $14.9 million for increases in deferred tax assets that were capital in nature, and a decrease of $5.7 million for the utilization of equity-based deferred tax assets to reduce taxes payable.

As of December 31, 2017, the Company's U.S. federal and state net operating loss carryforwards for income tax purposes were $520.3 million and $32.7 million, respectively, which primarily related to excess tax benefits for stock-based compensation. Prior to January 1, 2017, when the net operating loss carryforwards related to stock-based compensation were recognized, the income tax benefit of those losses was accounted for as a credit to stockholders' equity on the consolidated balance sheets. Beginning on January 1, 2017, we recognized such income tax benefit on the consolidated financial statements, as further described in the *Recent accounting pronouncements* section of "Note 2: Summary of Significant Accounting Policies." If not utilized, the Company's federal net operating loss carryforwards will expire between 2020 and 2037, with the majority of them expiring between 2020 and 2024. Additionally, changes in ownership, as defined by Section 382 of the Internal Revenue Code, may limit the amount of net operating loss carryforwards used in any one year.

A reconciliation of the unrecognized tax benefit balances is as follows (in thousands):

	Years ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Balance at beginning of year	$ 22,919	$ 21,741	$ 18,403
Gross increases for tax positions of prior years	93	331	2,708
Gross decreases for tax positions of prior years	(31)	(93)	(9)
Gross increases for tax positions of current year	—	997	751
Settlements	(66)	(57)	(112)
Lapse of statute of limitations	(290)	—	—
Balance at end of year	$ 22,625	$ 22,919	$ 21,741

The total amount of unrecognized tax benefits that could affect the Company's effective tax rate if recognized was $4.2 million and $4.5 million as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively. The remaining $18.4 million has not been recognized on the consolidated balance sheets as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, if recognized, would create a deferred tax asset subject to a valuation allowance. The Company and its subsidiaries file income tax returns in the U.S. federal jurisdiction, various state jurisdictions, and Canada. With few exceptions, the Company is no longer subject to U.S. federal, state and local, or non-U.S. income tax examinations by tax authorities for years before 2013, although NOL carryforwards and tax credit carryforwards from any year are subject to examination and adjustment for at least three years following the year in which they

are fully utilized. As of December 31, 2017, no significant adjustments have been proposed relative to the Company's tax positions.

During the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015, the Company recognized less than $0.2 million of interest and penalties related to uncertain tax positions. The Company had approximately $1.1 million and $1.0 million accrued for interest and penalties as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

Note 17: Net Income (Loss) Per Share

"Basic net income (loss) per share" is computed using the weighted average number of common shares outstanding during the period. "Diluted net income (loss) per share" is computed using the weighted average number of common shares outstanding plus the number of dilutive potential common shares outstanding during the period. Dilutive potential common shares consist of the incremental common shares issuable upon the exercise of outstanding stock options, vesting of unvested RSUs, and conversion or maturity of the Notes. Dilutive potential common shares are excluded from the computation of earnings per share if their effect is antidilutive.

The computation of basic and diluted net income (loss) per share attributable to Blucora, Inc. is as follows (in thousands):

	Years ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Numerator:			
Income (loss) from continuing operations	$ 29,376	$ (1,379)	$ (12,726)
Net income attributable to noncontrolling interests	(2,337)	(658)	—
Income (loss) from continuing operations attributable to Blucora, Inc.	27,039	(2,037)	(12,726)
Income (loss) from discontinued operations attributable to Blucora, Inc.	—	(63,121)	(27,348)
Net income (loss) attributable to Blucora, Inc.	$ 27,039	$ (65,158)	$ (40,074)
Denominator:			
Weighted average common shares outstanding, basic	44,370	41,494	40,959
Dilutive potential common shares	2,841	—	—
Weighted average common shares outstanding, diluted	47,211	41,494	40,959
Net income (loss) per share attributable to Blucora, Inc. - basic:			
Continuing operations	$ 0.61	$ (0.05)	$ (0.31)
Discontinued operations	—	(1.52)	(0.67)
Basic net income (loss) per share	$ 0.61	$ (1.57)	$ (0.98)
Net income (loss) per share attributable to Blucora, Inc. - diluted:			
Continuing operations	$ 0.57	$ (0.05)	$ (0.31)
Discontinued operations	—	(1.52)	(0.67)
Diluted net income (loss) per share	$ 0.57	$ (1.57)	$ (0.98)
Shares excluded	1,058	9,774	5,975

Shares were excluded from the computation of diluted earnings per common share for these periods because their effect would have been anti-dilutive.

ITEM 9. Changes in and Disagreements with Accountants on Accounting and Financial Disclosure

None.

ITEM 9A. Controls and Procedures

Evaluation of Disclosure Controls and Procedures

Our management evaluated, with the participation of our Chief Executive Officer and our Chief Financial Officer, the effectiveness of our disclosure controls and procedures as of the end of the period covered by this Annual Report on Form 10-K. Based on this evaluation, our Chief Executive Officer and our Chief Financial Officer have concluded that our disclosure controls and procedures were effective as of December 31, 2017 to ensure that information we are required to disclose in reports that we file or submit under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 is accumulated and communicated to our management, including our principal executive and principal financial officers, as appropriate to allow timely decisions regarding required disclosure, and that such information is recorded, processed, summarized, and reported within the time periods specified in the Securities and Exchange Commission rules and forms.

Management's Report on Internal Control over Financial Reporting

Our management is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate internal control over financial reporting, as such term is defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f). Our internal control over financial reporting is designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. Because of its inherent limitations, internal control over financial reporting may not prevent or detect misstatements. Also, projections of any evaluation of effectiveness to future periods are subject to the risk that controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate.

Under the supervision and with the participation of management, including our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer, we conducted an evaluation of the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting based on the framework in *Internal Control – Integrated Framework* (2013 framework) issued by the Committee of the Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission.

Based on our evaluation under the framework in *Internal Control – Integrated Framework* (2013 framework), our management concluded that our internal control over financial reporting was effective as of December 31, 2017.

Ernst & Young LLP has audited the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2017 and its report is included below.

Changes in Internal Control over Financial Reporting

There was no change in our internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the fourth quarter of 2017 that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, our internal control over financial reporting.

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

To the Stockholders and the Board of Directors of Blucora, Inc.

Opinion on Internal Control over Financial Reporting

We have audited Blucora, Inc.'s internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2017, based on criteria established in Internal Control-Integrated Framework issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (2013 framework) (the COSO criteria). In our opinion, Blucora, Inc. (the Company) maintained, in all material respects, effective internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2017, based on the COSO criteria.

We also have audited, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) (PCAOB), the consolidated balance sheets of Blucora, Inc. as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, the related consolidated statements of comprehensive income (loss), stockholders' equity and cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 2017, and the related notes, and our report dated March 1, 2018 expressed an unqualified opinion thereon.

Basis for Opinion

The Company's management is responsible for maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting and for its assessment of the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting included in the accompanying Management's Report on Internal Control over Financial Reporting. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company's internal control over financial reporting based on our audit. We are a public accounting firm registered with the PCAOB and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audit in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether effective internal control over financial reporting was maintained in all material respects.

Our audit included obtaining an understanding of internal control over financial reporting, assessing the risk that a material weakness exists, testing and evaluating the design and operating effectiveness of internal control based on the assessed risk, and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

Definition and Limitations of Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

A company's internal control over financial reporting is a process designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. A company's internal control over financial reporting includes those policies and procedures that (1) pertain to the maintenance of records that, in reasonable detail, accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of the assets of the company; (2) provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and that receipts and expenditures of the company are being made only in accordance with authorizations of management and directors of the company; and (3) provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use, or disposition of the company's assets that could have a material effect on the financial statements.

Because of its inherent limitations, internal control over financial reporting may not prevent or detect misstatements. Also, projections of any evaluation of effectiveness to future periods are subject to the risk that controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate.

/s/ Ernst & Young LLP

Dallas, Texas

March 1, 2018

ITEM 9B. Other Information

None.

PART III

As permitted by the rules of the Securities and Exchange Commission, we have omitted certain information from Part III of this Annual Report on Form 10-K. We intend to file a definitive Proxy Statement with the Securities and Exchange Commission relating to our annual meeting of stockholders not later than 120 days after the end of the fiscal year covered by this Annual Report on Form 10-K, and such information is incorporated by reference herein.

ITEM 10. Directors, Executive Officers and Corporate Governance

Certain information concerning our directors required by this Item is incorporated by reference to our Proxy Statement under the heading "Information Regarding the Board of Directors."

Certain information regarding our executive officers required by this Item is incorporated by reference to our Proxy Statement under the heading "Information Regarding Executive Officers."

Other information concerning our officers and directors required by this Item is incorporated by reference to our Proxy Statement under the heading "Beneficial Ownership."

ITEM 11. Executive Compensation

The information required by this Item is incorporated by reference to our Proxy Statement under the headings "Compensation Committee Report," "Compensation Committee Interlocks and Insider Participation," "Compensation Discussion and Analysis," and "Compensation of Named Executive Officers."

ITEM 12. Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management and Related Stockholder Matters

The information required by this Item is incorporated by reference to our Proxy Statement under the headings "Beneficial Ownership" and "Equity Compensation Plans."

ITEM 13. Certain Relationships and Related Transactions, and Director Independence

The information required by this Item is incorporated by reference to our Proxy Statement under the headings "Information Regarding the Board of Directors" and "Audit Committee Report."

ITEM 14. Principal Accounting Fees and Services

The information required by this Item is incorporated by reference to our Proxy Statement under the heading "Audit Committee Report."

PART IV

ITEM 15. Exhibits, Financial Statement Schedules

(a)

1. ***Consolidated Financial Statements***

See Index to Consolidated Financial Statements at Item 8 of this report.

2. ***Financial Statement Schedules***

All financial statement schedules required by Item 15(a)(2) have been omitted because they are not applicable or the required information is presented in the Consolidated Financial Statements or Notes thereto.

3. ***Exhibits***

The exhibits required by Item 601 of Regulation S-K are set forth below.

(b) ***Exhibits***

INDEX TO EXHIBITS

Exhibit Number	Exhibit Description	Form	Date of First Filing	Exhibit Number	Filed Herewith
2.1#	Stock Purchase Agreement by an among HDV Holdings, LLC, Blucora, Inc., Project Baseball Sub, Inc. and HDV Holdings, Inc., dated October 14, 2015	8-K	October 14, 2015	10.1	
2.2#	Asset Purchase Agreement between Blucora, Inc., Infospace LLC, OpenMail LLC and InfoSpace Holdings LLC dated July 1, 2016	8-K	July 5, 2016	2.1	
2.3#	Stock Purchase Agreement between Blucora, Inc., Monoprice Holdings, Inc. and YFC-Boneagle Electric Co., LTD, dated November 14, 2016	8-K	November 15, 2016	2.1	
3.1	Restated Certificate of Incorporation, as filed with the Secretary of the State of Delaware on August 10, 2012	8-K (No. 000-25131)	August 13, 2012	3.1	
3.2	Certificate of Amendment to the Restated Certificate of Incorporation of Blucora, Inc. filed with the Secretary of State of Delaware on June 1, 2017	8-K	June 5, 2017	3.1	
3.3	Amended and Restated Bylaws of Blucora, Inc.	8-K	February 28, 2017	3.2	
10.1*	Restated 1996 Flexible Stock Incentive Plan, as amended and restated effective as of June 5, 2012	S-8 (No. 333-198645)	September 8, 2014	99.1	
10.2*	Blucora, Inc. 2015 Incentive Plan, as Amended and Restated	DEF 14A	April 25, 2016	App-endix A	
10.3*	Form of Blucora, Inc. 2015 Incentive Plan Nonqualified Stock Option Grant Notice	10-Q	July 30, 2015	10.2	
10.4*	Form of Blucora, Inc. 2015 Incentive Plan Restricted Stock Unit Grant Notice	10-Q	July 30, 2015	10.3	
10.5*	Form of Nonqualified Stock Option Agreement for Executive Officers under the Blucora, Inc. 2015 Incentive Plan, as amended and restated	8-K	February 23, 2018	10.2	
10.6*	Form of Time-Based Restricted Stock Unit Agreement for Executive Officers under the Blucora, Inc. 2015 Incentive Plan, as amended and restated	8-K	February 23, 2018	10.3	
10.7*	Form of Performance-Based Restricted Stock Unit Agreement for Executive Officers under the Blucora, Inc. 2015 Incentive Plan, as amended and restated	8-K	February 23, 2018	10.4	
10.8*	Form of Nonqualified Stock Option Grant Notice and Agreement for Nonemployee Directors	10-Q	April 28, 2016	10.3	
10.9*	Form of Nonqualified Stock Option Grant Notice and Agreement for Nonemployee Chairman of the Board	10-Q	April 28, 2016	10.4	
10.10*	Form of Director Restricted Stock Unit Grant Notice and Award Agreement for Initial Grants to New Directors under the Amended and Restated Blucora, Inc. 2015 Incentive Plan	10-Q	July 27, 2017	10.3	
10.11*	Form of Director Restricted Stock Unit Grant Notice and Award Agreement for Annual Grants to Directors under the Amended and Restated Blucora, Inc. 2015 Incentive Plan	10-Q	July 27, 2017	10.4	
10.12*	Blucora, Inc. 2016 Equity Inducement Plan	S-8	January 29, 2016	99.1	
10.13*	Amendment No. 1 to Blucora, Inc. 2016 Inducement Plan	S-8	October 14, 2016	99.1	
10.14*	Form of Blucora, Inc. 2016 Inducement Plan Nonqualified Stock Option Grant Notice	10-K	February 24, 2016	10.41	
10.15*	Form of Blucora, Inc. 2016 Inducement Plan Restricted Stock Unit Grant Notice	10-K	February 24, 2016	10.42	

10.16*	Blucora, Inc. 2017 Executive Bonus Plan	8-K	February 8, 2017	10.1
10.17*	Blucora, Inc. 2018 Annual Incentive Plan	8-K	February 23, 2018	10.1
10.18*	Employment Agreement between Blucora, Inc. and John S. Clendening dated March 12, 2016	8-K	March 15, 2016	10.1
10.19*	First Amendment to Employment Agreement dated September 5, 2017 between Blucora, Inc. and John S. Clendening	8-K	September 5, 2017	10.1
10.20*	Employment Agreement by and between Blucora, Inc. and Sanjay Baskaran dated January 12, 2017	8-K/A	January 13, 2017	10.1
10.21*	Employment Agreement by and between Blucora, Inc., HD Vest, Inc., and Robert D. Oros dated January 22, 2017	8-K	January 23, 2017	10.1
10.22*	Employment Agreement by and between Blucora, Inc. and Ann Bruder dated June 19, 2017	10-Q	July 27, 2017	10.2
10.23*	Employment Agreement by and between Blucora, Inc. and Davinder Athwal dated February 14, 2018	8-K	February 15, 2018	10.1
10.24*	Second Amended and Restated Employment Agreement dated August 9, 2016, by and between Project Baseball Sub, Inc. and Roger Ochs	10-Q	October 27, 2016	10.3
10.25*	Transition and Separation Agreement by and between H. D. Vest, Inc. and Roger C. Ochs dated January 22, 2017	8-K	January 23, 2017	10.2
10.26*	Amended and Restated Employment Agreement, amended and restated effective January 6, 2015 between Blucora, Inc. and Eric M. Emans	8-K	January 22, 2015	10.1
10.27*	Amendment No. 1 to Amended and Restated Employment Agreement by and between Blucora, Inc. and Eric M. Emans dated January 22, 2016	8-K	January 22, 2016	10.1
10.28*	Amendment No. 2 to Amended and Restated Employment Agreement by and between Blucora, Inc. and Eric M. Emans dated January 6, 2015, as amended	10-Q	October 27, 2016	10.4
10.29*	Consulting Agreement, dated October 25, 2017, between Blucora, Inc. and Eric M. Emans	10-Q	October 26, 2017	10.2
10.30*	Employment Agreement between Blucora, Inc. and Mark Finkelstein, dated September 30, 2014	10-Q	November 5, 2014	10.3
10.31*	Amendment No. 1 to Employment Agreement between Blucora, Inc. and Mark A. Finkelstein dated September 30, 2014	8-K	January 22, 2016	10.2
10.32*	Amendment No. 2 to Employment Agreement by and between Blucora, Inc., and Mark. A. Finkelstein dated September 30, 2014, as amended January 22, 2016	10-Q	October 27, 2016	10.5
10.33	Credit Agreement, dated May 22, 2017, among Blucora, Inc., as borrower, and most of its direct and indirect domestic subsidiaries, as guarantors, and Credit Suisse AG, Cayman Islands Branch, as administrative agent and collateral agent, and each lender from time to time a party to the Credit Agreement	8-K	May 23, 2017	10.1
10.34	First Amendment, dated November 28, 2017, among Blucora, Inc., as borrower, and most of its direct and indirect domestic subsidiaries, as guarantors, and Credit Suisse AG, Cayman Islands Branch, as administrative agent and collateral agent, and each lender party to the First Amendment	8-K	November 29, 2017	10.1
10.35	Office Lease between Blucora, Inc. and Plaza Center Property LLC dated July 19, 2012	10-Q (No. 000-25131)	November 1, 2012	10.2

Exhibit	Description	Form	Date	Number	Filed Herewith
10.36	First Amendment to Office Lease between Blucora, Inc. and Plaza Center Property LLC dated November 5, 2013	10-K	February 27, 2014	10.8	
10.37	Sublease dated April 13, 2017, by and between Blucora, Inc. and Xevo, Inc. related to that certain Office Lease dated July 13, 2012 by and between Blucora, Inc. and KBS SOR Plaza Bellevue, LLC (as successor to Plaza Property Center LLC)	10-Q	May 4, 2017	10.5	
10.38	Lease Agreement, dated January 28, 2008, by and between 2nd Story Software, Inc., PBI Properties, Larry Kane Investments, L.C., and Swati Dandekar for office space located at 1425 60th Street NE, Suite 300, Cedar Rapids, Iowa	10-K (No. 000-25131)	March 9, 2012	10.13	
10.39	Amendment to Lease Agreement by and between 2nd Story Software, Inc., PBI Properties, Larry Kane Investments, L.C., and Swati Dandekar for office space located at 1425 60th Street NE, Suite 300, Cedar Rapids, Iowa, dated March 14, 2013	10-Q	May 2, 2013	10.5	
10.40	Blucora, Inc., 2016 Employee Stock Purchase Plan	DEF 14A	April 25, 2016	App-endix B	
10.41	Blucora, Inc. Non-Employee Director Compensation Policy	8-K	June 5, 2017	10.1	
21.1	Subsidiaries of the registrant				X
23.1	Consent of Ernst & Young LLP, Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm				X
24.1	Power of Attorney (contained on the signature page hereto)				X
31.1	Certification of Principal Executive Officer pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002				X
31.2	Certification of Principal Financial Officer pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002				X
32.1	Certification of Principal Executive Officer pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002				X
32.2	Certification of Principal Financial Officer pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002				X
101	The following financial statements from the Company's 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017, formatted in XBRL: (i) Consolidated Balance Sheets, (ii) Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income, (iii) Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' Equity, (iv) Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows, and (v) Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements				X

* Indicates a management contract or compensatory plan or arrangement.

Schedules and exhibits have been omitted pursuant to Item 601(b)(2) of Regulation S-K. Blucora, Inc. hereby undertakes to furnish supplemental copies of any of the omitted schedules and exhibits upon request by the Securities and Exchange Commission.

(c) ***Financial Statements and Schedules***

See Item 15(a) above.

SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, the registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized.

BLUCORA, INC.

By: /s/ John S. Clendening

John S. Clendening
Chief Executive Officer and President

Date: March 1, 2018

POWER OF ATTORNEY

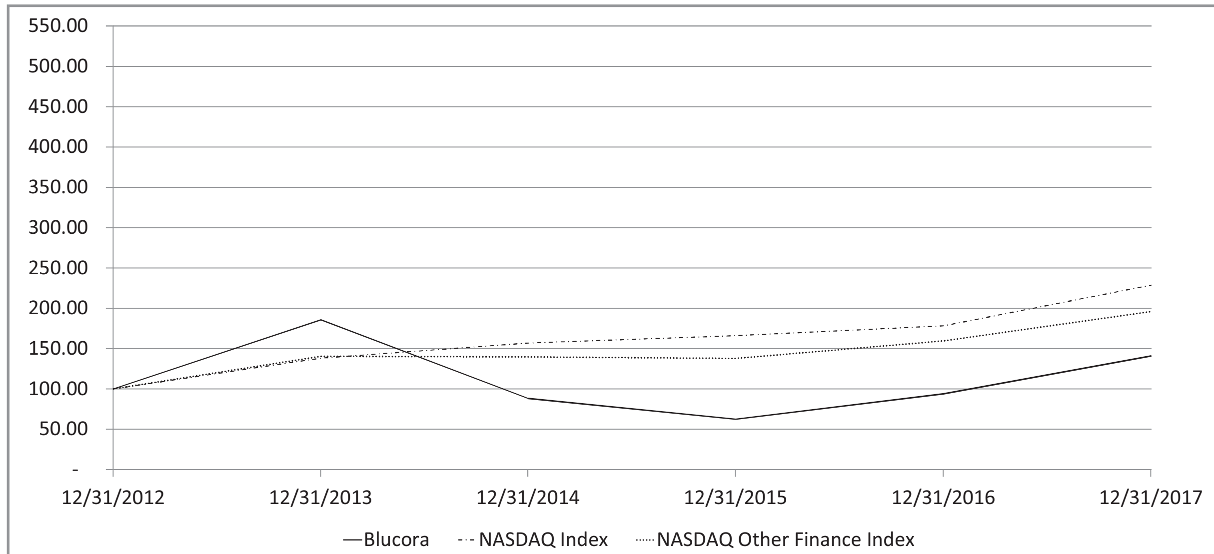
KNOW ALL PERSONS BY THESE PRESENTS, that each person whose signature appears below constitutes and appoints Davinder Athwal and Ann J. Bruder, jointly and severally, his or her attorneys-in-fact, each with the power of substitution, for him or her in any and all capacities to execute any amendments to this Annual Report on Form 10-K, and to file the same, exhibits thereto and other documents in connection therewith, with the Securities and Exchange Commission, hereby ratifying and confirming all that each of said attorneys-in-fact, or his substitute or substitutes, may lawfully do or cause to be done by virtue hereof.

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, this report has been signed below by the following persons on behalf of the registrant and in the capacities indicated and on the dates indicated.

Signature	Title	Date
/s/ John S. Clendening **John S. Clendening**	President, Chief Executive Officer, and Director (Principal Executive Officer)	March 1, 2018
/s/ Davinder Athwal **Davinder Athwal**	Chief Financial Officer (Principal Financial Officer)	March 1, 2018
/s/ John Palmer **John Palmer**	Vice President - Accounting (Principal Accounting Officer)	March 1, 2018
/s/ William L. Atwell **William L. Atwell**	Chairman and Director	March 1, 2018
/s/ Steven Aldrich **Steven Aldrich**	Director	March 1, 2018
/s/ Lance G. Dunn **Lance G. Dunn**	Director	March 1, 2018
/s/ H. McIntyre Gardner **H. McIntyre Gardner**	Director	March 1, 2018
/s/ Georganne C. Proctor **Georganne C. Proctor**	Director	March 1, 2018
/s/ Christopher W. Walters **Christopher W. Walters**	Director	March 1, 2018
/s/ Mary S. Zappone **Mary S. Zappone**	Director	March 1, 2018

STOCK PERFORMANCE

Set forth below is a line graph comparing the cumulative total stockholder return of the common stock of Blucora, Inc. to the cumulative total return of (i) the NASDAQ Index and (ii) the NASDAQ Other Finance Index for the five-year period ending on December 31, 2017.



Safe Harbor Statement Under the Private Securities and Litigation Reform Act

This report contains forward-looking statements within the meaning of Section 27A of the Securities Act of 1933 and Section 21E of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. When used in this report, terms such as "believes," "estimates," "should," "could," "would," "plans," "expects," "intends," "anticipates," "may," "forecasts," "projects" and similar expressions and variations as they relate to the Company or its management are intended to identify forward-looking statements. Actual results may differ significantly from management's expectations due to various risks and uncertainties including, but not limited to: our ability to effectively implement our future business plans and growth strategy; our ability to effectively compete within our industry; our ability to attract and retain customers; the availability of financing and our ability to meet our current and future debt service obligations and comply with our debt covenants; our ability to generate strong investment performance for our customers and the impact of the financial markets on our customers' portfolios; political and economic conditions and events that directly or indirectly impact the wealth management and tax preparation industries; our ability to attract and retain productive financial advisors; our ability to successfully make technology enhancements and introduce new and improve on existing products and services; our expectations concerning the revenues we generate from fees associated with the financial products that we distribute; our ability to comply with laws and regulations, including, among others, those related to privacy protection and consumer data; our ability to successfully transition our wealth management business to a new clearing platform and our expectations concerning the benefits that may be derived therefrom; cybersecurity risks; our ability to maintain our relationships with third party partners; the seasonality of our business; litigation risks; our ability to attract and retain qualified employees; our assessments and estimates that determine our effective tax rate; the impact of new or changing tax legislation; our ability to develop, establish and maintain strong brands; our ability to protect our intellectual property; and our ability to effectively integrate companies or assets that we acquire. A more detailed description of these and certain other factors that could affect actual results is included in the Company's filings with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Readers are cautioned not to place undue reliance on these forward-looking statements, which speak only as of the date of this report. The Company undertakes no obligation to update any forward-looking statements to reflect events or circumstances after the date of this report.

BLUCORA™

Directors

Steven Aldrich
Chief Product Officer, GoDaddy, Inc.

William L. Atwell, Chairman of the Board
Managing Director of Atwell Partners

John S. Clendening
Director, President and Chief Executive Officer of Blucora, Inc.

Lance G. Dunn
Former Co-Founder & Former CEO of TaxAct

H. McIntyre Gardner
Private Investor and Former Senior Executive at Merrill Lynch & Co. Inc.

Georganne C. Proctor
Former Chief Financial Officer of TIAA-CREF

Christopher W. Walters
Chief Executive Officer of Encompass Digital Media

Mary S. Zappone
Chief Executive Officer of Brace Industrial Group

Executive Officers

John S. Clendening
President and Chief Executive Officer

Davinder S Athwal
Chief Financial Officer and Treasurer

Ann J. Bruder
Chief Legal Officer and Secretary

Sanjay Baskaran
President of TaxACT, Inc.

Robert D. Oros
Chief Executive Officer of HD Vest

Mathieu F. Stevenson
Chief Marketing Officer

Stockholder Information

Investor Information

To request copies of Blucora's Annual Report on Form 10-K or other financial information free of charge, please call Investor Relations at 972.870.6000 or make a request in writing to Investor Relations at our corporate address shown below. You may also access these documents on our corporate Web site at www.blucora.com

Securities

Blucora common stock is traded on the NASDAQ Global Select market under the symbol "BCOR".

Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

Ernst & Young LLP
2323 Victory Ave., Suite 2000
Dallas, TX 75219

Transfer Agent

Computershare Shareowner Services LLC
480 Washington Boulevard
Jersey City, NJ 07310-1900
888.581.9372

Corporate Headquarters

Blucora, Inc.
6333 State Highway 161, 4th Floor
Irving, TX 75038
972.870.6000
www.blucora.com